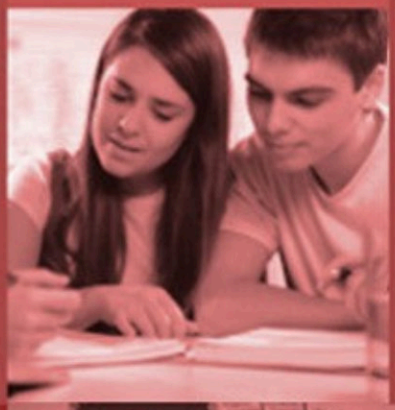
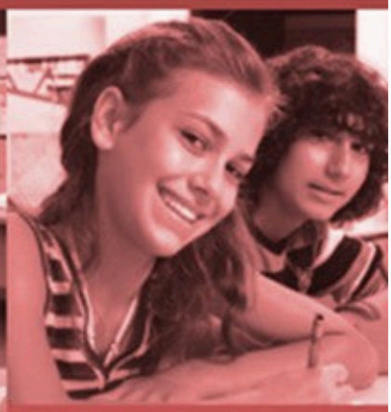
TEACHING GRAMMAR, USAGE, AND MECHANICS



RIGOROUS GRADE-LEVEL and REMEDIAL INSTRUCTION
A FULL YEAR OF LESSONS and TESTS



HIGH SCHOOL

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Aligned to Common Core Standards

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics High School

Following are the separate PDF program files:

Teacher's Guide Components	**Pages**
Program Components	1
Terms of Use	2
Introduction	3
Program Directions	4
Table of Contents Lessons 1–64	5–7
Spelling Rules and Parts of Speech Review Unit Lessons 1–8	8–39
Grade-level Standards Lessons 9–64	40–263
Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Tests and Answers	264–281
Common Core State Standards Alignment Documents	282–288

Student Lesson Components

Cornell Notes with Cue and Summary/Reflection, 3D Graphic Organizer, ... 1-192
Simple Sentence Diagram, Mentor Text Response,
Sentence Dictation Formative Assessment

Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment

Print Version
Self-Correcting Google Forms: Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment

Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment Recording Matrix

Independent Practice

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics (GUM) Worksheets. The 77 worksheets correspond with the test items from the **Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment.**
Answers included.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Terms of Use

Thank you for purchasing the **Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics High School** program. Your purchase entitles you to single teacher use only. Please be respectful of my work and don't share with colleagues. We do offer multiple user licenses at discounted prices.

All rights reserved Pennington Publishing © 2019, 2026. Permission is hereby granted to the individual purchaser to reproduce student materials in this book for noncommercial use only. Other than the heretofore specified limited permission for reproduction, the text of this publication, or any part thereof, may not be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronics or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, storage in an information retrieval system, or otherwise, without prior written permission of the publisher.

Permission is hereby granted to the individual purchaser to reproduce or digitally share (on password protected sites) components of this book for noncommercial educational use only. Google Classroom is fine. Book and accompanying resources are not for resale. License for use is limited to one teacher only and is non-transferrable.

The Publisher makes no representation or warranties of any kind, including but not limited to, the warranties of fitness for particular purpose or merchantability, nor are any such representations implied with respect to the material set forth herein, and the publisher takes no responsibility with respect to such material. The publisher shall not be liable for any special, consequential, or exemplary damages resulting, in whole or part, for the readers' or students' reliance upon, this material.

Portions of this book have been previously published in Teaching Grammar and Mechanics © 2003, 2011 Pennington Publishing and Grammar, Mechanics, Spelling, and Vocabulary (Teaching the Language Strand) Grades 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 © 2013 and © 2014 Pennington Publishing.

Many of the 3d Graphic Organizers from Tangstar
https://www.teacherspayteachers.com/Store/Tangstar-Science

Mark Pennington

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Introduction

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics High School is a full-year program with plenty of remedial practice to help your students catch up while they keep up with grade-level standards. The program features 64, twice-per-week, 30-minute lessons and plenty of varied practice to help you teach both mechanics (punctuation, capitalization, quotations, etc.) and grammar and usage skills and concepts.

What makes this program so effective?

▪ This no-prep and minimal-correction program has been designed for grade-level direct instruction with remedial independent worksheets for students who have not yet mastered previous grade-level standards.
▪ Each of the 64 lessons provides both teacher and student pages for a full year of grammar, usage, and mechanics instruction. The twice-per-week lessons take about 30 minutes to complete and include the following:

✓ Cornell Notes Lessons: Each with mechanics, grammar, and usage focus
✓ Practice and Sentence Dictations (formative assessments)
✓ Sentence Diagrams, Mentor Text and Response
✓ 3d Graphic Organizers (PDFs only)

▪ Aligned to the Common Core Anchor Standards for Language, Language Strand, and Progressive Skills Review with biweekly unit tests including definition, identification, and application.
▪ Clear directions with the same instructional procedures for each lesson. Minimal prep and correction. Perfect for both the beginning teacher and expert grammarians
▪ Helpful online links to songs, posters, skill worksheets, and more
▪ Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment with 77 corresponding remedial worksheets... each with formative assessments and answers (of course).

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Program Directions

1. Administer the Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment in self-correcting Google forms or the print-ready version (see separate file) to determine mastery of previous grade-level standards. Enter data on the recording matrix (see separate file).

2. Use the scripted lesson and lesson display in the Teacher's Guide to teach the paired mechanics and grammar and usage lessons. Note that the first 8 lessons include parts of speech and spelling rules review. The 56 lessons which follow focus on grade-level standards.

3. Print the Student Lessons (see separate file). Students add examples and additional information presented by the teacher on their Cornell Notes and complete the Cue and Summary/Reflection sections. Students complete and self-correct the guided practice, 3d Graphic Organizer activities, simple sentence diagram, mentor text response, and sentence dictation formative assessments.

4. After completing four of the lessons, administer the biweekly unit test. Unit tests (pp. 264-281 in this Teacher's Guide) follow the lessons in both print-ready and Google form versions.

5. Assign additional independent practice with the Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics (GUM) Worksheets (see separate file), guided by the results of the diagnostic assessment. Complete directions are provided in the program file.

6. Administer the final exam.
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1r6TbrKDnfxvFcgOq1nbqVje6phnMWT41y3QhNipoQI/copy

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics High School Lessons

Lesson	Mechanics	Grammar and Usage
1	The i before e Spelling Rule	Proper Nouns Review
2	The Final y Spelling Rule	Common Nouns Review
3	The Silent *e* Spelling Rule	Pronouns Review
4	The Double the Consonant Spelling Rule	Adjectives Review
	Unit Test	
5	The Ending "an" or "en" Spelling Rule	Verbs Review
6	The "able" or "ible" Spelling Rule	Adverbs Review
7	The Ending "ion" Spelling Rule	Conjunctions Review
8	The Plurals Spelling Rule	Prepositions Review
	Unit Test and Diagnostic Assessments	
9	Periods in Latin Expression	Proper and Common Nouns
10	Periods in Names, Abbreviations, and Acronyms	Personal Pronouns
11	Periods in Indirect Questions and Intentional Fragments	Subject Case Pronouns
12	Periods in Decimal Outlines	Object Case Pronouns
	Unit Test	
13	Semicolons with Conjunctions	Possessive Pronouns
14	Apostrophes for Singular Possessive Nouns	Adjectives
15	Apostrophes for Plural Possessive Nouns	Transitive and Intransitive Verbs and *Subject-verb Agreement
16	Apostrophes in Compound Possessive Nouns	Adverbs
	Unit Test	
17	Apostrophes in Contractions	Coordinating Conjunctions
18	Comma Misuse	Correlative Conjunctions
19	Commas for Dates	Subordinating Conjunctions
20	Commas for Letters	*Prepositional Phrases
	Unit Test	
21	Commas in Addresses	Subjects and Predicates
22	Commas for Names	Direct and Indirect Objects
23	Commas for Geographical Places	Phrases and Clauses
24	Commas for Tag Questions	**Fragments and Run-ons
	Unit Test	

*** Denotes Language Progressiv**

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

penningtonpublishing.com

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics High School Lessons

Lesson	Mechanics	Grammar and Usage
25	Commas for Direct Speech	Sentence Forms: Simple, Compound, Complex, and Compound-complex
26	Commas in a Series	Types of Sentences
27	Commas after Introductory Words and Phrases	*Noun Phrases
28	Commas after Introductory Clauses	*Noun Clauses
	Unit Test	
29	Commas and Quotation Marks with Speaker Tags	Gerunds
30	Commas before Conjunctions in Compound Sentences	Gerund Phrases
31	Commas in Complex Sentences	Reflexive, Intensive, and Reciprocal Pronouns
32	Commas with Parenthetical Expressions	Indefinite Pronouns
	Unit Test	
33	Commas with Coordinate Adjectives	*Pronoun Antecedents
34	Commas with Hierarchical Adjectives	*Pronoun Number and Person Shifts
35	Punctuation with Appositives	*Vague Pronoun References and Demonstrative Pronouns
36	Commas with Nonrestrictive Clauses	*Nonrestrictive Adjective Clauses and Relative Pronouns
	Unit Test	
37	Punctuation in Restrictive Clauses	*Restrictive Adjective Clauses and Relative Pronouns
38	Dialogue and Direct Quotations	*Predicate Adjectives and Adjectival Phrases
39	Punctuation of Direct Quotations	Past Participles
40	Ellipsis	Past Participial Phrases
	Unit Test	
41	Quotations within Quotations	*Present Participles
42	Punctuation of Non-standard Usage	Present Participial Phrases
43	In-text Citations and Indirect Quotations	Comparative Modifiers
44	MLA Works Cited Page	Superlative Modifiers
	Unit Test	

*** Denotes Language Progressiv**

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

penningtonpublishing.com

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics High School Lessons

Lesson	Mechanics	Grammar and Usage
45	Italics and Underlining: Book, Website, Newspaper, and Magazine Titles	*Misplaced Modifiers
46	Italics and Underlining: Play, Television Show, Movie, and Works of Art Titles	*Dangling Modifiers
47	Quotation Marks: Song, Poem, and Book Chapter Titles	Squinting Modifiers
48	Quotation Marks: Newspaper, Magazine, and Blog Article Titles	*Verb Phrases
	Unit Test	
49	Quotation Marks: Short Story and Document Titles	*Shifts in Verb Tenses
50	Capitalization of Named People and Places	Progressive Verb Tense
51	Capitalization of Named Things and Products	Perfect Verb Tense
52	Capitalization of Holidays and Dates	*Infinitives
	Unit Test	
53	Capitalization of Special Events and Historical Periods	Indicative Mood
54	Capitalization of Organizations and Businesses	Imperative Mood
55	Capitalization of Languages, Dialects and People Groups	Interrogative Mood
56	Question Marks	Conditional Mood
	Unit Test	
57	Exclamation Points	*Subjunctive Mood
58	Colons to Introduce Block Quotations	*Verb Voice and Mood Shifts
59	Parentheses with Complete Sentences	Subordinating Conjunctions and Adverbial Clauses
60	*Dashes to Indicate Relationships	Relative Adverbs and Adverbial Clauses
	Unit Test	
61	Brackets	Adverb Order
62	Hyphens: Compound Adverbs	Non-standard English Deletions
63	Slashes	Non-standard English Additions
64	Numbers	Non-standard Substitutions
	Unit Test	

*** Denotes Language Progressiv**

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penning

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The "ie" spelling can have the long /e/ sound as in chief or the long /i/ sound as in pie. The "ei" spelling can have the long /e/ sound as in ceiling or the long /a/ sound as in eight. **Exceptions to the Rule** caffeine, conscience, either, foreign, forfeit, height, neither, protein, seize, weird More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qRNpkl.	**i before e Song** http://bit.ly/2c8afAb (to the tune of "Rig 'a Jig Jig") **Spell i before e 'cause that's the rule** *Rig-a-jig-jig and away we go,* **that we learned back in school.** *Away we go, away we go!* **Examples:** believe, dried **But e before i comes after c,** *Rig-a-jig-jig and away we go,* **Examples:** receive, conceive **and when you hear long /a/, Hey!** *Hi-ho, hi-ho, hi-ho.* **Examples:** weight, neighbor
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
The parts of speech describe the function of words (the way they work) in a sentence. Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of a proper noun at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A proper noun is the name of a person, place, or thing and must be capitalized. A proper noun may be a single word, a group of words (with or without abbreviations), or a hyphenated word. Don't capitalize articles a, an, the, coordinating conjunctions for, and, or, and prepositions such as in, by, of, on, to, and with in the middle of titles. **Examples** **Person:** Mr. T.D. Jones **Person:** Ms. Doe-Thomas **Person:** Mack the Knife **Place:** Rough and Ready **Thing:** Bridge of Sighs
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I yeild to the researcher's conclusion that the supposed ancient documents were a hoax.

I yield to the researcher's conclusion that the supposed ancient documents were a hoax.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The concieted young man failed to keep his receipt.

The conceited young man failed to keep his receipt.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Our teacher tried to fiegn surprise, because her friend accidentally told her about the party.

Our teacher tried to feign surprise, because her friend accidentally told her about the party.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Let's have lunch at Eat An Apple in the food court at the Sunrise Mall.

Let's have lunch at Eat an Apple in the food court at the Sunrise Mall.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the proper nouns: The family visited Cardiff by the Sea on their vacation to see Uncle J. P. at his ranch.

Proper Nouns: Cardiff by the Sea, Uncle J.P.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: We saw the Statue Of Liberty and toured Ellis Island in New York city.

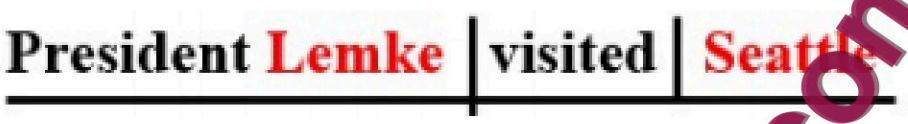
We saw the Statue of Liberty and toured Ellis Island in New York City.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Proper nouns can serve as subjects or objects. A subject is placed to the left of the main vertical line, and an object is placed to the right of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "Lemke" and "Seattle."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"'Aslan a man!' said Mr. Beaver sternly. 'Certainly not. I tell you he is the King of the Wood and the son of the great Emperor-Beyond-the-Sea. Don't you know who is the King of Beasts? Aslan is a lion—*the* Lion, the great lion.'"

C. S. Lewis (author of *The Chronicles of Narnia*)
(1898–1963)

This quotation includes a variety of proper nouns. Re-write a sentence, using your own proper nouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

I perceive that the weight of Santa, his sleigh, and the presents must be a struggle for the eight tiny reindeer.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

We stayed at the famous Inn on the Lake near the H.H. Johnson Bridge.

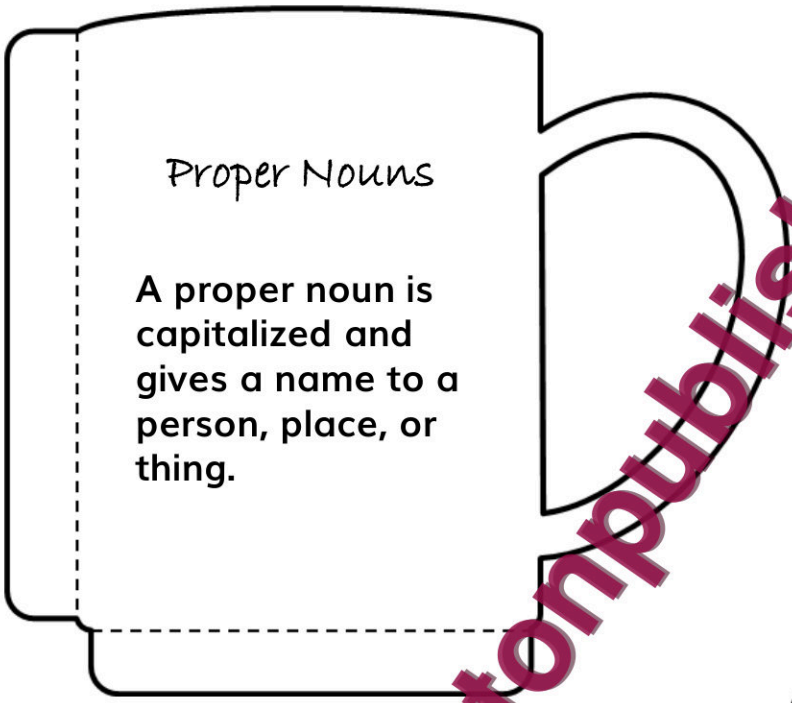
penningtonpublishing.com

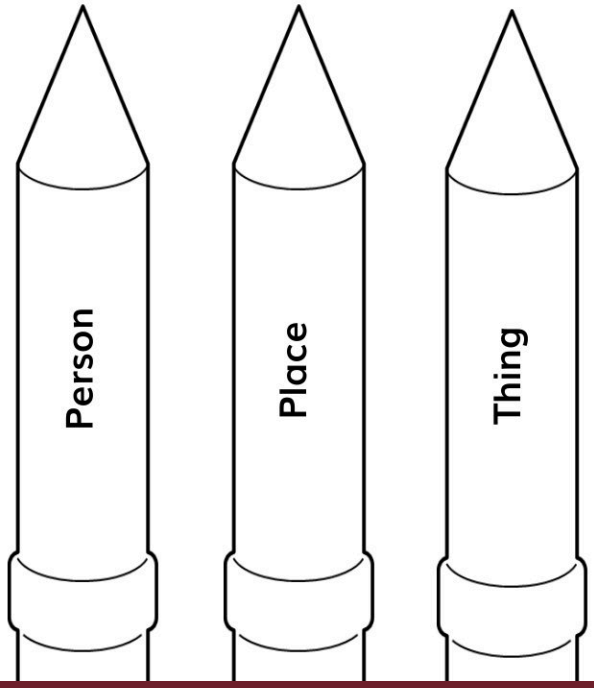
View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of proper noun on the back of the pencils and place the pencils in the mug.





penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The root is the meaning part of the word. If the root is a complete word, it is a *base word.* Remind students that a suffix is a syllable following the last root. If the final y is accented, it has a long /i/ sound, such as in "cyclone." If the final y is not accented, it usually has the long /e/ sound, such as in "baby." More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2rYjKL0.	**Hickory Dickory Y** http://bit.ly/2cvcZWl (to the tune of "Hickory Dickory Dock") **If a root ends in a vowel and after that a y,** *Hickory, dickory dock. The mouse ran up the clock.* **just keep the *y*–and then said I, "Add on the suffix to end."** *The clock struck one–the mouse ran down.* *Hickory dickory dock.* **Examples:** delay–delayed **But if a consonant then a *y* should end a word,** *Hickory, dickory dock. The mouse ran up the clock.* **just change the *y* into an *i*** *The clock struck two—the mouse ran down,* **except if the suffix has *i*.** *Hickory dickory dock.* **Examples:** copy–copying, pretty–prettiest
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of a common noun at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV. The articles are "a," "an," and "the." The "a" is used before words beginning with consonants, such as "a bear," while the "an" is used before words beginning with vowels, such as "an apple." "The" is more specific than "a" or "an."	A common noun can have an article before an idea, person, place, or thing. Common nouns are usually less specific than proper nouns. **Examples** **Idea:** the peace **Person:** an uncle **Place:** a school **Thing:** the rocks Some common nouns are *collective nouns* and refer to a group of people, animals, or things. Collective nouns act as one unit and so match with singular verbs, such as "That class *is noisy."* **Examples:** class, team, family, public
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The employees obeyed their emploiers' work safety rules.

The employees obeyed their employers' work safety rules.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: I hurryed to the art show. I was horrified to see her painting displayed next to the garbage can.

I hurried to the art show. I was horrified to see her painting displayed next to the garbage can.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly. The special needs child had a helper, who carried supplys and pushed her wheelchair.

The special needs child had a helper, who carried supplies and pushed her wheelchair.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The Math was due on Friday, so their Teacher could grade it during a holiday vacation.

The math was due on Friday, so their teacher could grade it during the holiday vacation.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the common nouns:

Her bravery and self-awareness make her a wonderful member of our team.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the common nouns. [Bracket] the collective common noun:

The [flock] of Canadian geese remained in the park despite efforts to remove the birds.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Common nouns can serve as subjects or objects. A subject is placed to the left of the main vertical line, and an object is placed to the right of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "bees" and "honey."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Self-respect is the fruit of discipline; the sense of dignity grows with the ability to say no to oneself."

Abraham Herschel (American rabbi and philosopher) (1907–1972)

This quotation includes a variety of common nouns. Respond to the text, using different types of common nouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Don't you find it annoying that she denied your request?

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the common nouns:

If society changes its views on the value of self-sacrifice, we are all in trouble.

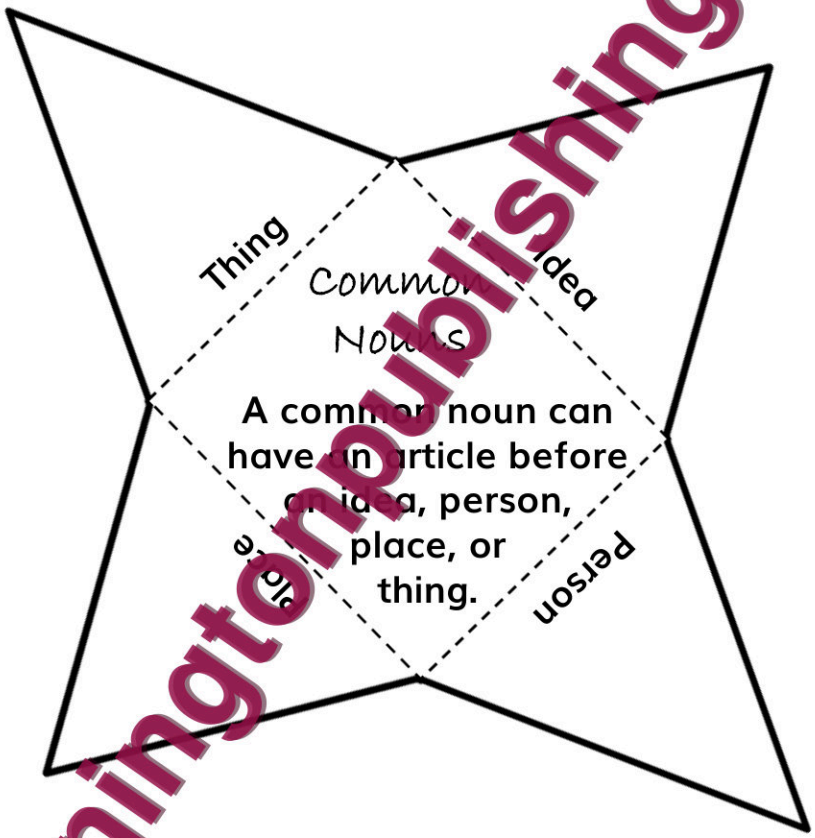
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of common noun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
If the final e follows just one consonant, the vowel before is usually a long sound, such as in "line." The root is the meaning part of the word. If the root is a complete word, it is a *base word.* Remind students that a suffix is a syllable following the last root. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qVq8Cs.	**Final e Memory Rap** http://bit.ly/2cuR5Fy Drop the final *e* when adding on an ending if it starts with a vowel up front. Keep the final *e* when adding on an ending if it starts with a consonant. **Examples:** have–having; close–closely Also keep the *e* when you hear soft */c/* or */g/* before "able" or "o-u-s." **Examples:** peace–peaceable, courage–courageous Mostly keep the *e* when the ending is "y-e", "e-e", or even "o-e". YEO! **Examples:** eye–eyeing, free–freedom, shoe–shoeing
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
If unsure whether a pronoun should be in the subject case or object case, rephrase the sentence with the pronoun at the start of the sentence and drop any connected nouns. **Example:** At five o'clock John and me always ate dinner. Me always ate dinner at five o'clock. Change to Subject Case Pronoun: I always ate dinner at five o'clock. English is a polite language. Always place *I* or *me* last in compound subjects or objects.	A pronoun is used to take a noun's place. Singular or plural pronouns are classified as first, second, or third person. A *subject case pronoun* acts as the subject of a sentence. **Examples:** I, we (first person); you (second person); he, she, it, who , they (third person) An *object case pronoun* receives the action of the verb. **Examples:** me, us (first person); you (second person); him, her, it, whom , them (third person) A *possessive case pronoun* shows ownership. **Examples:** my, our (first person); your (second person); his, her, its, their (third person) When a possessive pronoun is used without a noun, the verb must match the noun which the pronoun represents. **Examples:** mine, ours (first person); yours (second person); his, hers, its, theirs (third person)
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Is she agreable to letting me publish some of her writing in my journal?

Is she agreeable to letting me publish some of her writing in my journal?

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Tom was pursuing his goals, but he could not hide his discouragment sometimes.

Tom was pursuing his goals, but he could not hide his discouragement sometimes.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: She texts him, but he won't respond. It bothered hers, but she was quite used to them by now.

She texts him, but he won't respond. It bothered her, but she was quite used to it (or him) by now.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: They enjoyed yours book report, but you should let they revise its more.

They enjoyed your book report, but you should let them revise it more.

5. Re-write these sentences and underline the pronouns:

He doesn't understand whom you mean. Is it he or is it Pedro?

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the pronouns:

Who stole them and where did they hide the candy bars?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Personal pronouns can serve as subjects or objects. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "them" and "we."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"From pacifist to terrorist, each person condemns violence and then adds one cherished case in which it may be justified."

Gloria Steinem (women's rights advocate) (1934–)

This quotation includes pronouns to avoid repetitious nouns. Respond to the author's point with a subject, object, and possessive case pronoun.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

They placed the outrageous advertisement in the magazine, hoping that the shock value would sell more of their product.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the pronouns:

We liked the idea. It was all his, not hers or ours.

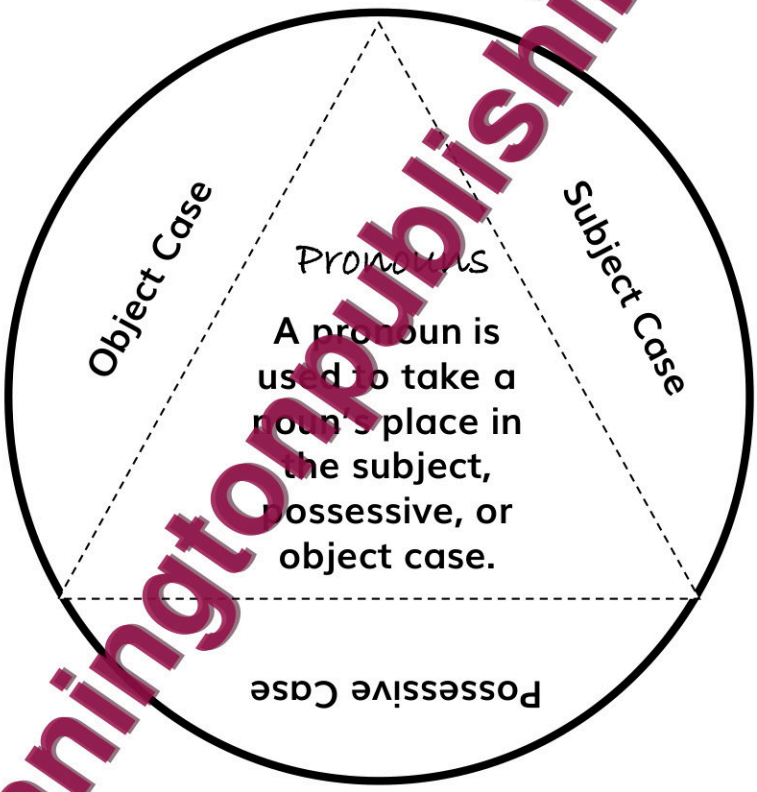
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The root is the meaning part of the word. If the root is a complete word, it is a *base word.* The root may be accented or unaccented. Remind students that a suffix is a syllable following the last root. **Exceptions to the Rule:** acquitted, busing, excellent, transferable More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qZZ0xp.	**Consonant Doubling Doodle** http://bit.ly/2bP2tHm (to the tune of "Yankee Doodle") **Double the last consonant when adding on an ending** *Yankee Doodle went to town 'a riding on a pony* **if these three do all agree (on this you'll be depending):** *Stuck a feather in his cap and called it macaroni.* **Is the accent at the end?** *Yankee Doodle keep it up!* **With a vowel then consonant?** *Yankee Doodle da-an-dy* **Does the ending you must add begin with a vowel?** *Mind the music and the step and with the girls be handy.* **Examples:** commit–com/mit–committed

Resources	Parts of Speech Notes
Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of an adjective at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV. Note that the song teaches adjectives in the proper written order.	An adjective modifies a noun with Which one? How many? or What kind? When using more than one adjective to modify the same noun in a sentence, follow this order of adjectival functions: Which One-How Many-What Kind. **Examples** **Which One:** blue **How Many:** few **What Kind:** great Place adjectives before nouns, even when they are compound adjectives. A compound adjective joins two or more adjectives with a hyphen (-) to modify a single noun or pronoun. Don't use a hyphen if you can use the word *and* between the two adjectives. **Examples:** good-looking shirt, part-time job Don't use redundant adjectives. Redundant means something that is unnecessary or repetitive. **Examples:** free gift, unexpected surprise, fast jet

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The students rejected the new cafeteria menu and stoped buying the school lunches.

The students rejected the new cafeteria menu and stopped buying the school lunches.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mr. Jones permited 30 minutes for the test, but accidentally allowed us 40 minutes to finish.

Mr. Jones permitted 30 minutes for the test, but accidentally allowed us 40 minutes to finish.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: It was at night late when I lay my head down on the soft two pillows.

It was late at night when I lay my head down on the two soft pillows.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: I don't want to go until I get my prize well-deserved, but we have to leave in five short minutes.

I don't want to leave until I get my well-deserved prize, but we have to leave in five short minutes.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectives:
It's a crazy idea, but it's the only real approach that just might work.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectives:
After ten weeks we were frustrated that we hadn't improved, but now we see that it takes more time than we thought to get better.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Adjectives are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "many," "five," "those," and "smart."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"There is always a well-known solution to every human problem—neat, plausible, and wrong."

H. L. Mencken (the American journalist and essayist) (1880–1956)

This quotations includes proper adjectival order. Respond to the author's point, using all three types of adjectives.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

We submitted our proposal for a beginning orchestra class.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the adjectives.

My first time eating well-cooked, grilled vegetables was at the fall carnival.

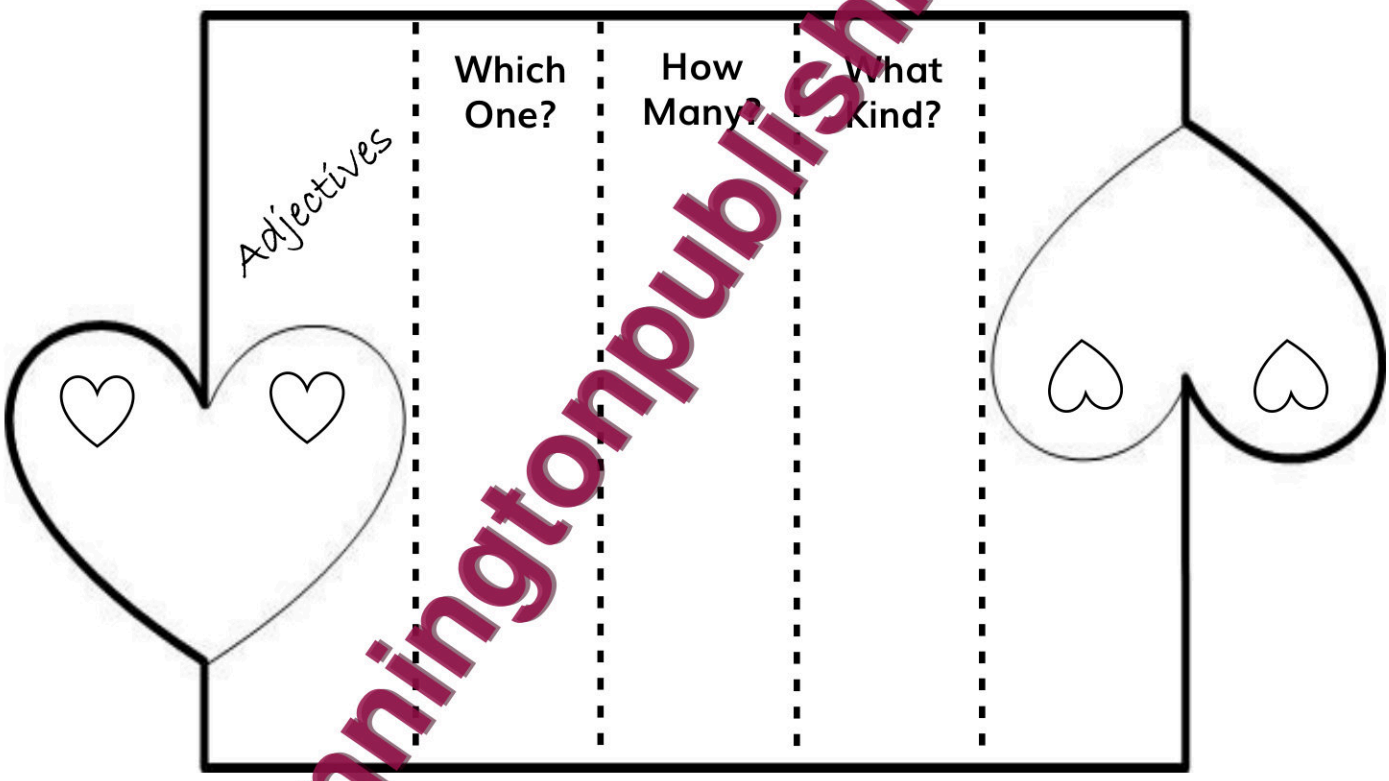
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of adjective on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Spelling Rule
The root is the meaning part of the word. If the root is a complete word, it is a *base word.* Remind students that a suffix is a syllable following the last root. **Exceptions to the Rule:** assistance, different, perseverance, resistance More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2sLthRR and http://bit.ly/2sxlere.	**This Old "an" or "en"** http://bit.ly/2bP2JWN (to the tune of "This Old Man") **If you see, "e-a-r", or there is a "u-r-e",** *This old man, he played one, he played nick-nack on my thumb* **in the root, or if you hear hard /c/ or /g/,** *With a nick-nack paddy-whack, give a dog a bone,* **then spell "ant", "ance", or "ancy".** **Examples:** vacancy, elegant, clearance, insurance *This old man came rolling home.* **If you see, "id" like "fid", or there is an "e-r-e"** *This old man, he played two, he played nick-nack on my shoe* **in the root, or if you hear soft /c/ or /g/,** *With a nick-nack paddy-whack, give a dog a bone,* **then spell "ent", "ence", or "ency".** *This old man came rolling home.* **Examples:** magnificent, emergency, confidence, reverence
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the three types of verbs and practice the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV. State of being verbs link a noun to something else in the sentence. State of being verbs include the "to be" verbs: *is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*, and others such as *become*, *seem*, *look*, *feel*, *smell*, and *appear*. Reference the **How to Eliminate "To Be" Verbs in Writing** article at http://bit.ly/29dyLwz. Print out the colorful poster.	A verb can mentally or physically act or states what a subject is to be. **Examples** **Mental:** thought, believe, will imagine **Physical:** run, jump, will swim **State of Being Verbs:** is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been When a "to be" verb or other verb links a noun to something else in the sentence to rename or describe it, it is called a *linking verb*. **Linking Verbs:** seem, look, feel, sound, taste The "to be" verb, the "to have" verb (have, has, had), and the "to do" verb (do, does, did, done) can be placed before a main verb as a *helping verb* to show verb tense (past, present, future). The *conditional* helping verbs (could, should, would, can, shall, will, may, might, must) show possibility. **Helping Verbs:** is running, had lived, did like, could help
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The young girl's appearence was different than that of her friends.

The young girl's appearance was different than that ofher friends.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: It may be significant to note that the detergant he used included bleach.

It may be significant to note that the detergent he used included bleach.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the mental verbs. [Bracket] the physical verbs: I can't conceive of a different way to communicate our company's vision.

I can't conceive of a different way [to communicate] our company's vision.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the "to be" verbs. [Bracket] the physical verbs: Being twelve years old means that you are in seventh grade and attend middle or junior high school.

Being twelve years old means that you are in seventh grade and [attend] middle or junior high school.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the linking verbs:
It sounds like he is willing to taste her appetizers.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the helping verbs:

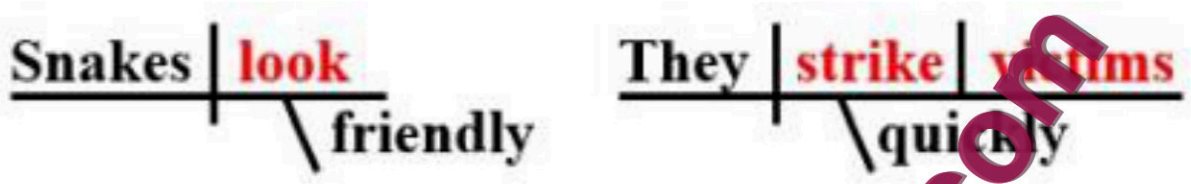
My friends did ask if they could come to the party.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Verbs are placed to the right of the main vertical line in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagrams: “strike,” “look,” and “victims.”



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Suddenly the storm hit. It came from all corners of the cavern at once, howling, shrieking, and raging."

Jules Verne (one of the first science fiction authors) (1828–1905)

This quotation includes strong action verbs to create suspense. Describe the reaction of the cavern explorers to the storm, using all three types of verbs.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Their urgent requests for a meeting in the elegant palace were denied, but no one had the decency to inform them.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the verbs:

I was surprised that you would rather have attended alone.

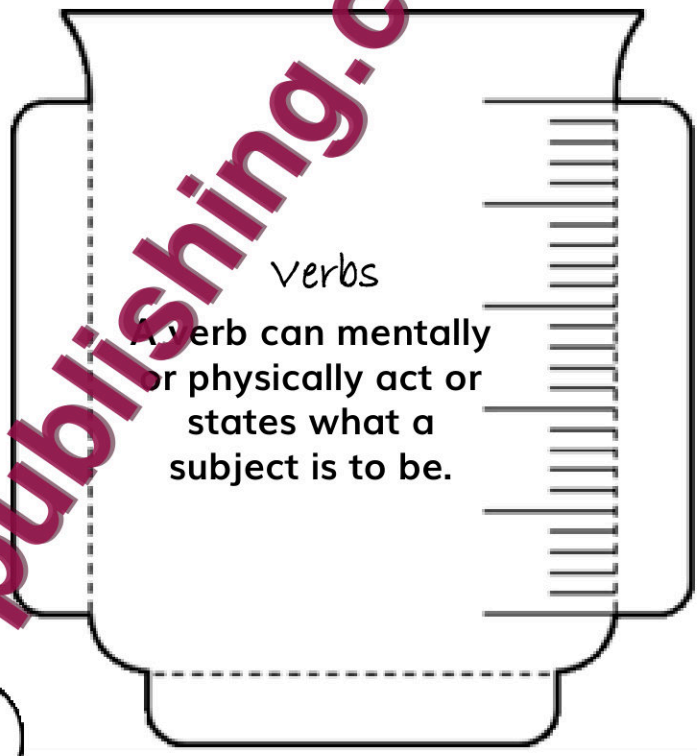
penningtonpublishing.com

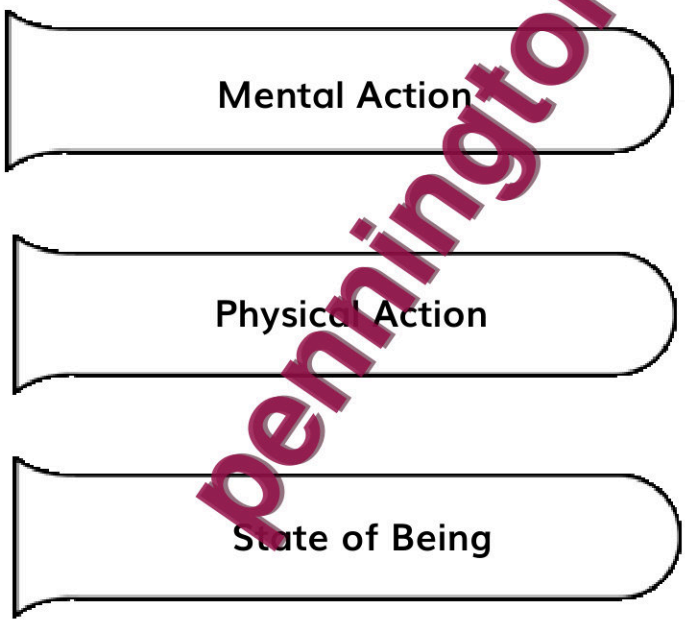
View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of verb on the back of the test tubes and place them in the beaker.





pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The root is the meaning part of the word. If the root is a complete word, it is a *base word.* Remind students that a suffix is a syllable following the last root. **Exceptions to the Rule:** collapsible, flexible, formidable, inevitable, irresistible, memorable, portable, probable More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qVbBqA and http://bit.ly/2rNxoQi.	**John "able" or "ible" Schmidt** http://bit.ly/2bZEuHG (to the tune of "John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt") **Base words add "able" to the end, as do word parts,** *John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt: that's my name, too.* **that end in silent *e* or with hard /*c*/or /*g*/,** *Whenever we go out, the people always shout,* **Examples:** despicable, navigable, teachable, likeable **but for all others add "i-b-l-e".** *Saying, "John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt"* **Examples:** reducible, eligible, visible, permissible

Resources	Parts of Speech Notes
Check out the four questions adverbs ask of adjectives, adverbs, or verbs in the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV. Note that the song teaches adverbs in the proper written order. Use specific, vivid verbs rather than weak verbs supported with adverbs. Avoid these overused adverbs: definitely, extremely, really, seriously, truly, and very.	An adverb modifies an adjective, adverb, or verb with What degree? How? Where? or When? Many adverbs end in "_ly." **Examples** **What Degree:** more **How:** slowly **Where:** there **When:** later **Modifying an Adjective:** He acts too emotional. **Modifying an Adverb:** She walks unusually slowly. **Modifying a Verb:** I walked here and there. Adverbs can be part of a phrase (a group of related words). Avoid stringing together adverbial phrases. **Example:** He walked like a turtle, slow as molasses.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Even though the television volume was barely audable, the woman talked unbelievably loud.

Even though the television volume was barely audible, the woman talked ubelievably loud.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The highway sign read, "Chains advisable" even though there was only a negligable amount of snow.

The highway sign read, "Chains advisable" even though there was only a negligible amount of snow.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs which answer *What Degree*.

Tom ultimately agreed with his wife that less is usually better.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs which answer *How*.

She acted secretively when she suspiciously dropped the letter on his desk.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs and adverb phrases which answer *Where*.

Somewhere in the woods, the children walked around looking for wild mushrooms.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs and adverb phrases which answer *When*.

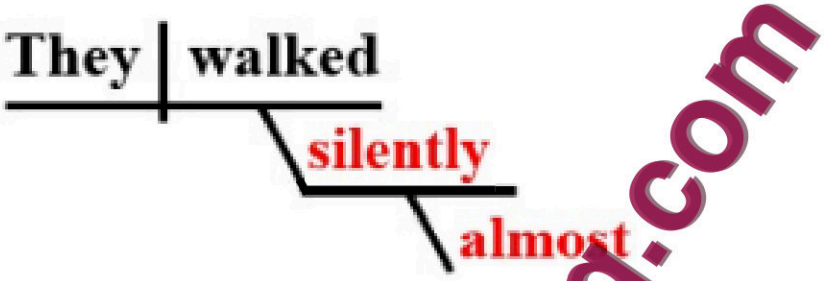
I can often tell when she wants to leave though she seldom will say so.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Adverbs are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "almost" and "silently."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"No one can speak well, unless he thoroughly understands his subject."

Cicero
(106 B.C.–43 B.C.)

This quotation includes adverbs before and after the words they modify. Respond to the author's point, using at least three types of adverbs.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

She needed a visible and tangible symbol of his love, and the two-carat diamond ring certainly met her expectations.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the adverbs:

I truly love running fast and far to where the road ends.

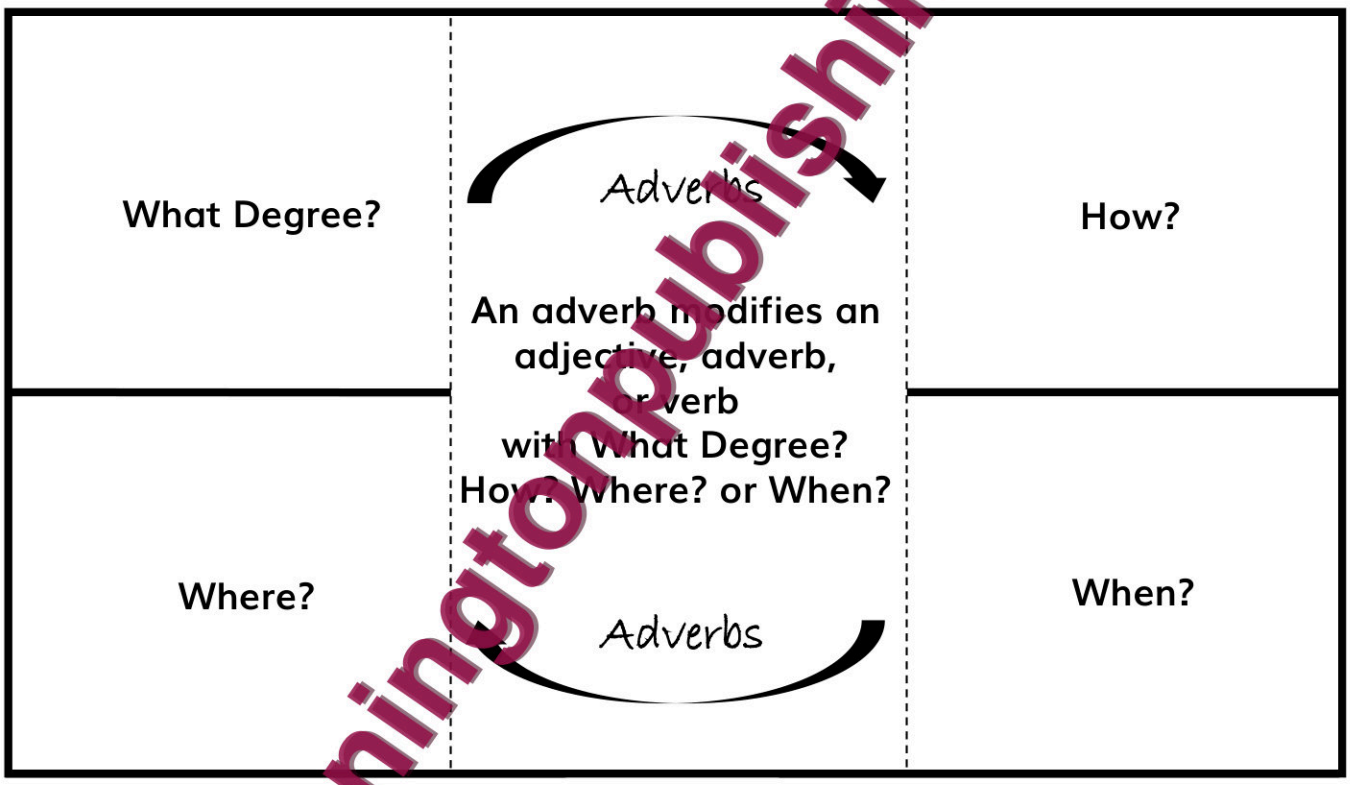
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of adverb on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The root is the meaning part of the word. If the root is a complete word, it is a *base word.* Remind students that a suffix is a syllable following the last root. **Exceptions to the Rule:** The "mit" root changes to "mis" and adds on "sion." Example: permit-permission More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2sbfxmR.	**Ending "ion" Twinkle** http://bit.ly/2c1tAjd (to the tune of "Twinkle Twinkle Little Star") **1. If the *shun* sound you do hear and it follows *l* or *s*,** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **or if you hear a *zyun* –for both spell "s-i-o-n".** *Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky.* **Both these rules will serve you well, learning all the ways to spell.** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **Examples:** expulsion, passion, ilusion **2. When a person you describe, you should spell "c-i-a-n".** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **In most every other case, simply spell "t-i-o-n".** *Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky.* **Both these rules will serve you well, learning all the ways to spell.** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **Examples:** musician, condition
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the conjunctions in the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV. Print these colorful posters for each of the three types of conjunctions: https://bit.ly/2VzBjiG	A conjunction joins words, phrases, or clauses to coordinate, correlate, or subordinate. The common coordinate conjunctions are F.A.N.B.O.Y.S. F = for; A = and; N = nor; B = but; O = or; Y = yet; S = so Correlative conjunctions are paired conjunctions. either–or, whether–or, both…and–but…also Subordinating conjunctions begin adverbial clauses. The **BUD IS WISE, BUT HOT AAA WWW** memory trick will help you memorize the subordinating conjunctions. A clause has a noun and a connected verb. BUD before, unless, despite (in spite of) IS in order that, so WISE, while, if, since, even though (if) BUT because, until, that HOT how, once, than AAA after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though) WWW whether, when (whenever), where (wherever)
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly:

The mathematician earned a commission on every sale of his long division product.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly:

Some compulsion drove her to respond in silence to his frequent aggression.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the coordinating conjunctions:

We ate breakfast and lunch together, not lunch, so we all planned on gathering for dinner.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the correlative conjunctions:

Both Mr. Lewis and Ms. Kinney's classes donated to the canned food drive.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the subordinating conjunctions:

As long as you practice daily, you will continue to improve despite what you may think.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the subordinating conjunctions:

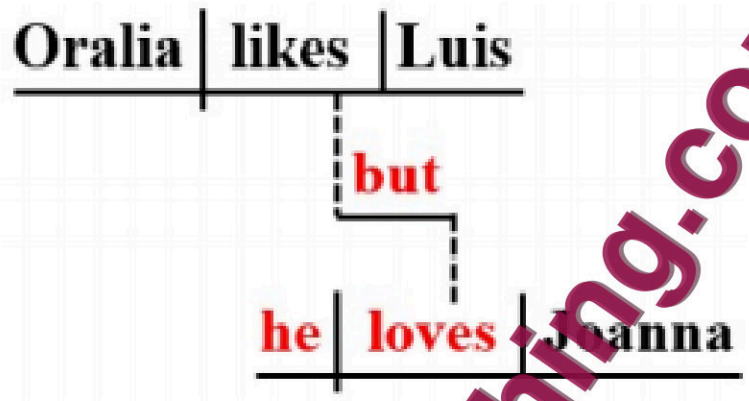
So we could get along, we tried to keep quiet while they talked in spite of their attempts to engage us in their conversation.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Coordinating conjunctions are placed on a dotted vertical line connecting parts of speech in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "he," "loves," and "but."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Sorrow is so easy to express and yet so hard to tell."
Joni Mitchell (Canadian singer-songwriter)
(1943–)

This quotation includes a coordinating conjunction to connect contrasting thoughts that include adverbs normally used as coordinating conjunctions. Respond to the author's point, using a least two types of conjunctions.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

The technician made a small incision in her left arm and implanted the computer chip.

Grammar and Usage– Re-write the sentence with coordinating conjunctions:
They like the rain though they enjoy the snow, but they would rather it be sunny or hot.

They like the rain and they enjoy the snow, but they would rather it be sunny or hot.

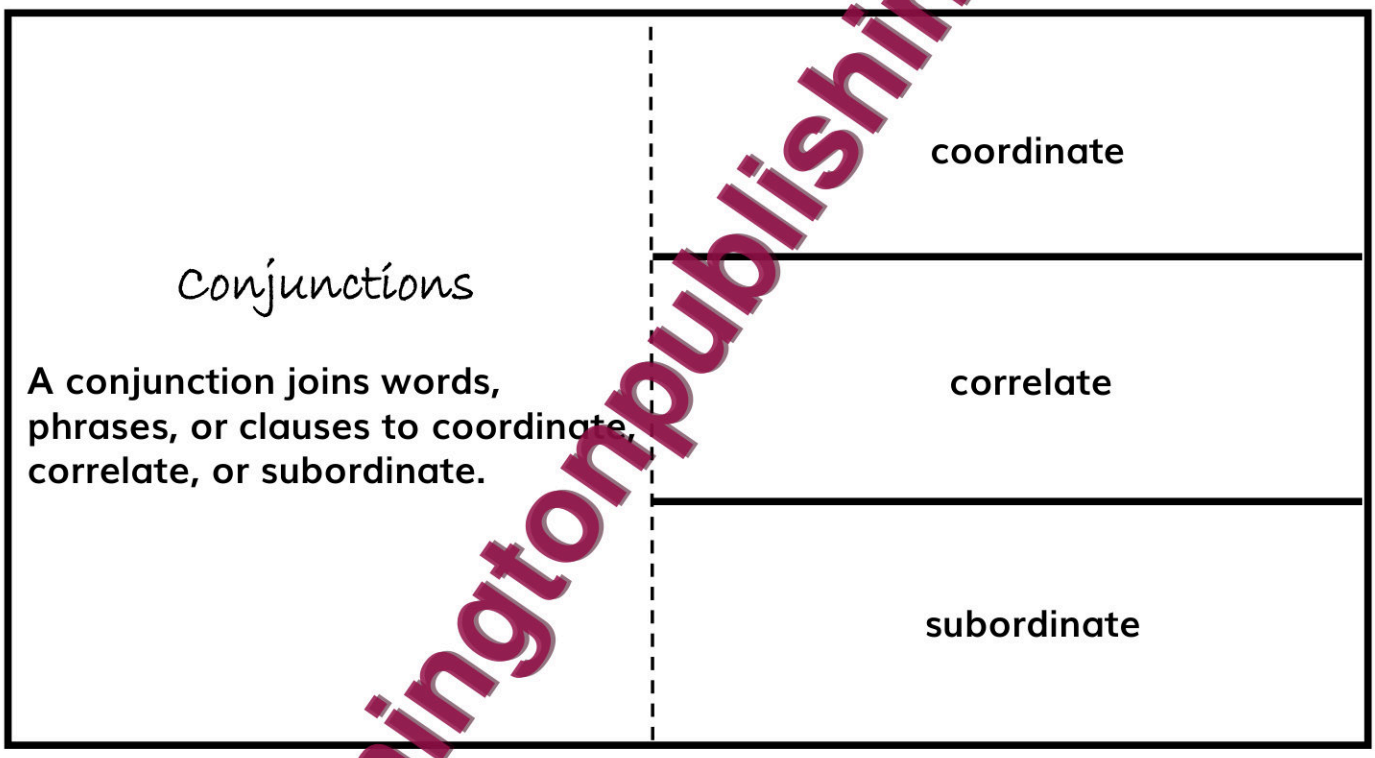
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of conjunction on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Exceptions to the Rule: The o forms "oes". **Example:** echo-echoes Vowel sound changes. **Example:** foot-feet The "is" forms "es". **Example:** oasis-oases Unchanged plurals. **Example:** deer-deer Latin plurals: **Example:** cactus-cacti More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2saVqFj.	**Plurals Had a Little Lamb** http://bit.ly/2caBN9u (to the tune of "Mary Had a Little Lamb") **1. If there is a vowel before the letters *o* or *y*,** Mary *had a little lamb, little lamb, little lamb.* **"Add an *s* onto the end and to most nouns," said I.** *Mary had a little lamb. Its fleece was white as snow.* **2. If there is a consonant before the *o* or *y*,** *And everywhere that Mary went, Mary went, Mary went.* **"Add "e-s" onto the end, but change the *y* to *i*."** *Everywhere that Mary went the lamb was sure to go.* **Examples:** stereos, days, potatoes, bunnies **3. "Add "e-s" onto an *x, to /ch/, /sh/, /s/, or z.*** *It followed her to school one day, school one day, school one day.* **Also add onto an *f*, but change the *f* to *v*."** *It followed her to school one day, which was against the rules.* **Examples:** boxes, inches, lashes, gases, prizes, knives
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the definition of a prepositional phrase in the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV. The subject of a sentence is never part of a prepositional phrase. Avoid these unnecessary prepositions: In connection with, In (With) regard to, In relation to, With respect to, In the case of, With reference to __.	A preposition shows some relationship, location, time, or position between the preposition and its object. The preposition is always part of a phrase and comes before its object. The preposition asks "What?" or "Whom?" and the object provides the answer. **Examples** **Relationship:** with the children **Location:** on the wall **Time:** at noon **Position:** through the window aboard, about, above, according to, across, after, against, along, among, around, as, as to, at, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between, beyond, but, by, despite, down, during, except, for, from, in, inside, instead of, into, in place of, in spite of, like, near, next, of, off, on, onto, outside, out of, over, past, since, than, through, throughout, to, toward, under, underneath, unlike, until, up, upon, with, within, without
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The house painters uses the same paintbrushs for each room to get perfect matches.

The house painters use the same paintbrushes for each room to get perfect matches.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: Their work portfolioes went to the wrong addresses. Fortunately, the security videos located them.

Their work portfolios went to the wrong addresses. Fortunately, the security videos located them.

3. Re-write this sentence and underline the *location* prepositions:

Beyond the river and over the mountains, we traveled throughout the countryside.

4. Re-write this sentence and underline the *position* prepositions:

Above the clouds the birds flew in their v-formation past hills and valleys.

5. Re-write this sentence and underline the *time* prepositions:

Since the last game we always cheered during the National Anthem.

6. Re-write these sentences and underline the prepositions:

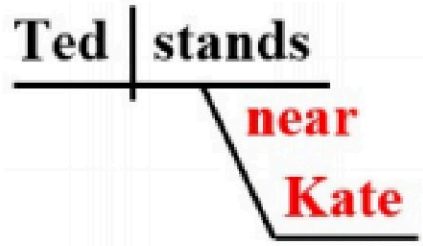
Everyone stays until the final out. During the earlier part of the season this was not the case.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Prepositions are placed to the right of slanted vertical lines and connect the predicate to the object of the preposition. Complete the sentence diagram: "Ted stands near Kate."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Every man, as to character, is the creature of the age in which he lives. Very few are able to raise themselves above the ideas of their times."

Voltaire (French philosopher and playwright)
(1694–1778)

This quotation includes a variety of prepositional phrases Respond to the author's point, using at least two types of prepositions.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The Hawaiian Islands are a series of dormant and active volcanoes. The island chain stretches over 1500 miles in the Pacific.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the prepositions:

With reference to social media, Twitter is helpful in emergencies of this kind.

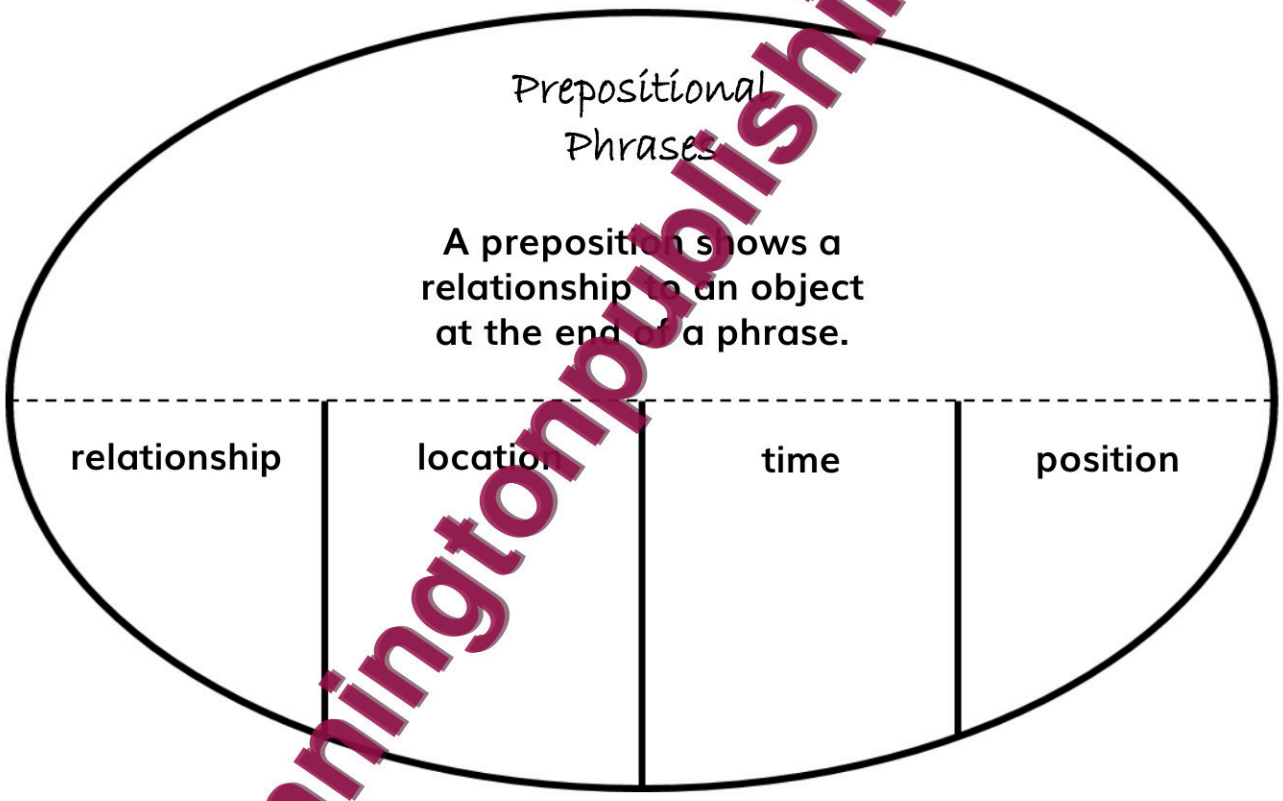
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of prepositional phrase on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
View the article about how to use the common Latin abbreviations in sentences at http://bit.ly/2cndJM6.	Use periods following the first letter of each key word in an abbreviated title or expression, and pronounce each of these letters when saying the abbreviation. Latin abbreviations are set off from the rest of the sentence by commas or parentheses. ▪ etc. (*et cetera*), which means and so on **Examples:** He likes them all: cake, cookies, etc. ▪ et al. (*et alii*), which means and others **Examples:** The six researchers (Jones, et al.) ▪ e.g. (*exempli gratia*), which means for example. **Examples:** I love ice cream, e.g., vanilla. ▪ i.e. (*id est*), which means that is. When using the i.e., think *in other words* to explain or define, not to signal examples. **Examples:** He is goofy, i.e., silly (i.e., silly).
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A proper noun is the name of a person, place, or thing and must be capitalized. A proper noun may be a single word, a group of words (with or without abbreviations), or a hyphenated word. **Examples:** Pedro, P.S., Stratford-upon-Avon A common noun is an idea, person, place, or thing. It can act or be acted upon and is capitalized only at the start of a sentence. **Examples:** liberty, human, capital, desk. Some common nouns are *collective nouns* and refer to a group of people, animals, or things. Collective nouns act as one unit and so match with singular verbs, such as "That class *is noisy.*" **Examples:** family, herd, company
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I eat green vegetables, i.e., kale, beans, and peas. I also exercise, drink plenty of water, etc.

I eat green vegetables, e.g., kale, beans, and peas. I also exercise, drink plenty of water, etc.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Tom read the research study by Dupont, Jones, et al., and responded with emails, texts, et al.

Tom read the research study by Dupont, Jones, et al., and responded with emails, texts, etc.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: I offered them drinks, e.g. sodas, and desserts, e.g., cake, pie, and cookies.

I offered them drinks, i.e. sodas, and desserts, e.g., cake, pie, and cookies.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Washington d.c. is our nation's capital, and Ms. Gibson-Lee lived there for two years.

Washington D.C. is our nation's capital, and Ms. Gibson-Lee lived there for two years.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the proper nouns:

I attended school at Balboa Elementary School where Ms. Lee-Smith was principal.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the common noun. [Bracket] the collective noun:

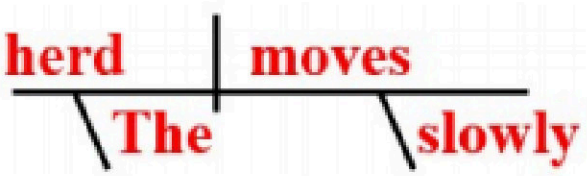
The [class] got to hear the vice-president.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Complete this sentence diagram: "The herd moves slowly."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Maybe Christmas, the Grinch thought, doesn't come from a store."

Dr. Seuss (pseudonym for children's author Theodor Seuss Geisel) (1904–1991)

This quotation includes specific proper noun and common noun placement to emphasize its point. Respond to the author's point, using a variety of common and proper nouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence with proper Latin abbreviations: Congress, that is, the Senate and the House of Representatives, makes laws, declares war, etcetera.

Congress, i.e., the Senate and the House of Representatives, makes laws, declares war, etc.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the nouns:

Most Americans know that President Washington never lived in the White House because the capital was in New York.

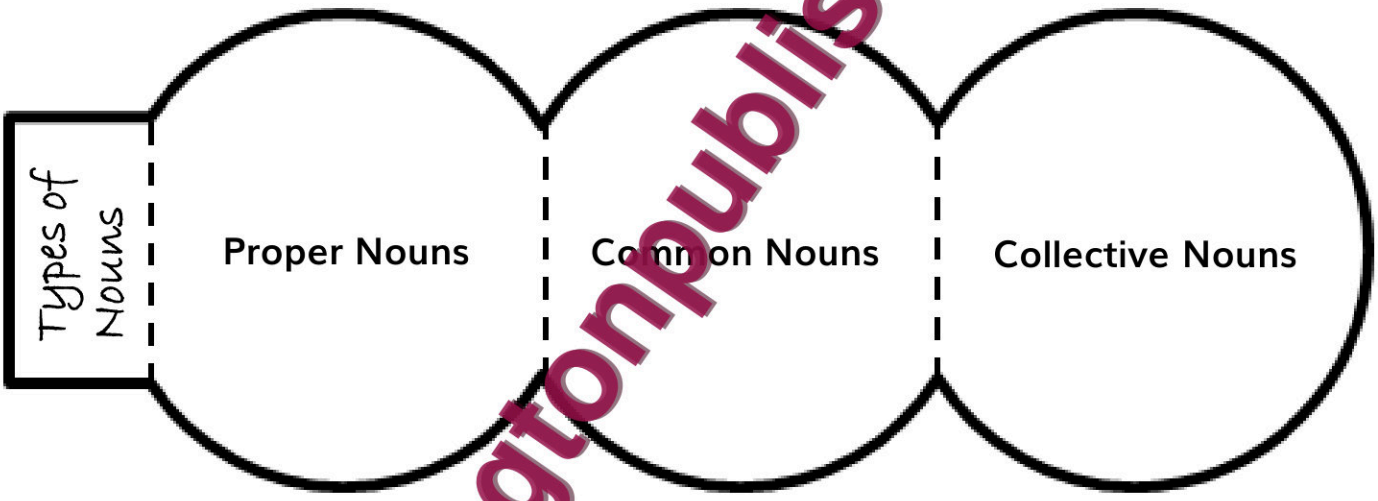
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of noun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Texting uses many abbreviations, initialisms, and acronyms. Following are 10 of the most common: brb = be right back btw = by the way bsf = best friends jk = just kidding lol = laughing out loud thx = thanks r u = are you	Place periods following shortened words. Pronounce these abbreviations as words, not as letters. **Examples:** Mr., Mrs., Ms., Gr. Britain Place periods following the first letter of each key word in most abbreviated titles or expressions, and pronounce each of these letters when saying the abbreviations. **Examples:** U.S., p.m. Don't use periods after some very common abbreviations known as *initialisms*. **Examples:** FBI, CIA, USC, NBC Also don't use periods or pronounce the letters in acronyms. Acronyms are special abbreviated titles or expressions that are pronounced as words. Most all acronyms are capitalized. **Examples:** NASA, POTUS, radar

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A personal pronoun is a word used in place of a proper or common noun. The *first person* personal pronouns are different in the singular and plural forms. **Examples:** Singular–I, me Plural–we, us The *second person* personal pronouns are the same in the singular and plural forms. **Example:** you The *third person* personal pronouns are different in the singular and plural forms. Avoid using gender-specific singular third-person pronouns to refer to males and females. Use plural third-person pronouns instead. **Examples:** Singular–he, him, she, her, it Plural–they, them

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Doct. Perez wrote me a prescription to take with me to W. Virginia.

Dr. Perez wrote me a prescription me to take with me to W. Virginia.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Tim B Lee learned about UNICEF on CBS News.

Tim B. Lee learned about UNICEF on CBS News.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: I visited U.C.L.A. and on my trip to So. Cal. I tried surfing lol.

I visited U.C.L.A. and on my trip to So. Cal. I tried surfing LOL.

4. Re-write this sentence and underline the first person pronouns:

I want to know if you would like to see it with us.

5. Re-write this sentence and underline the second person pronouns:

You should let me help you help while you and I have the time.

6. Re-write these sentences and underline the third person pronouns in these sentences:

They left her to explain to him how we gave away their bikes. She liked our answer, but he didn't.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence to avoid gender-specific pronouns. "He/she has to give enough materials."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Plenty of people miss their share of happiness, not because they never found it, but because they didn't stop to enjoy it."

William Feather (American author and publisher)
(1889–1981)

This quotation includes a variety of personal pronouns. Respond to the author's point, using at least three personal pronouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

General Sam F. Perkins, Jr. works for the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, better known as NATO.

Grammar and Usage– Replace each noun with third person pronouns:
Linda gave a pencil to the woman.

She gave it to her.

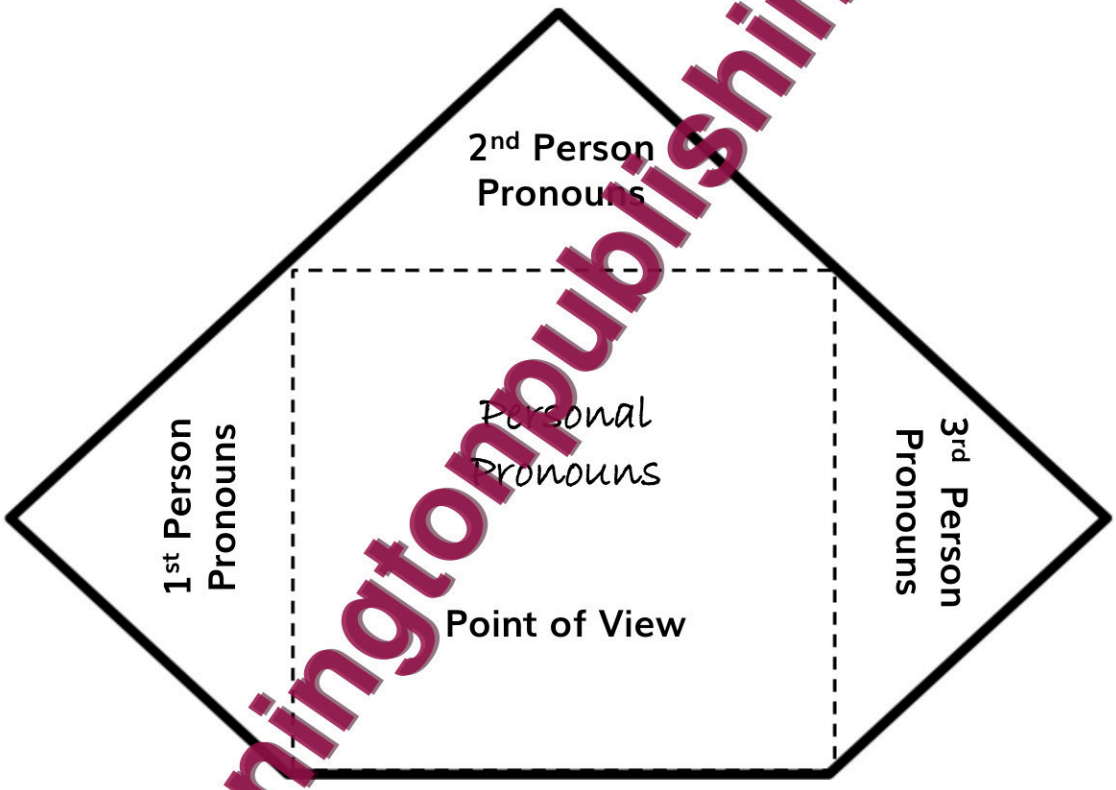
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each type of pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Intentional fragments are often used in narrative writing, but not in formal essays or research papers. Most teachers write FRAG to mark unintentional sentence fragments.	Indirect questions do not end with a question mark but with a period. Like direct questions they ask for a response, but they are written as declarative or imperative sentences. **Examples:** Everyone asks if you are new. Intentional fragments also end with periods. An intentional fragment is part of a sentence that is treated as a complete thought for literary effect. **Examples:** How crazy. Wow. An unintentional sentence fragment has a noun and connected verb, but does not express a complete thought. One way to correct a sentence fragment is to combine it with the sentence before or sentence after it. **Fragment Examples:** If you showed me. I could learn it. **Revision:** If you showed me, I could learn it.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	Writers use pronouns to take the place of nouns. One type of pronoun is called a *subject case pronoun* because it acts as the subject of a sentence. If unsure whether a pronoun should be in the subject case, rephrase the sentence with the pronoun at the start of the sentence. **Examples:** The winner was me. **Rephrase:** I was the winner. Use singular (*I, you, he, she, it, who*) or plural (*we, you, they, who*) subject case pronouns: ▪ As the subject of a sentence. ▪ As the last subject in compound subjects. ▪ After *than* or *as* (the rest of the thought is suggested). ▪ After a "to be" verb: (*is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*) to refer to the subject as a *predicate nominative*. ▪ *Who* (not *whom*). Check whether *who* is correct by substituting *he* in place of *who*. Rephrase, if necessary. The first person *I* and second person *you* pronouns do *not* match verbs ending in an *s*. **Examples:** I run, you smile
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I said, "John asked if you were leaving? "Certainly," he replied.

I said, "John asked if you were leaving. "Certainly," he replied.

2. Re-write these sentences and underline the intentional sentence fragment. [Bracket] the indirect question:

Nice. [I wonder if you knew.] You don't have to tell me though.

3. Revise the sentence fragment by combining with the other sentence: He was able. Because he listened to complete the work.

Options: Because he listened, he was able to complete the work. He was able to complete the work because he listened.

4. Re-write these sentences correctly: I wonder if them would like to see that movie. Whom is the one who wants to go?

I wonder if they would like to see that movie. Whom is the one who wants to go?

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: John, I, and Martha like to visit whom we want even though they are more insistent than me.

John, Martha, and I like to visit whom we want even though they are more insistent than I.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Them left our books next to the library; it wasn't I, but her and Mary remember it that way.

They left our books next to the library; it wasn't I, but she and Mary remember it that way.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Subject case pronouns are placed to the left of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Complete these sentence diagrams: "Who is going?" "I will attend."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"You have to promise not to touch the dear things for the rest of the trip or I won't go."

Jack London (American adventurer and author of *Call to the Wild*)
(1876–1916)

This quotation includes subject case pronouns to keep dialogue personal and realistic. Respond to the dialogue with at least two different uses of the subject case pronouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

Interesting. Everywhere I go people ask if I'm planning on having more parties.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly and change each noun to subject case pronouns: Charles and John are smarter than Rachel and me.

Options: They are smarter than she and I. They are smarter than we are.

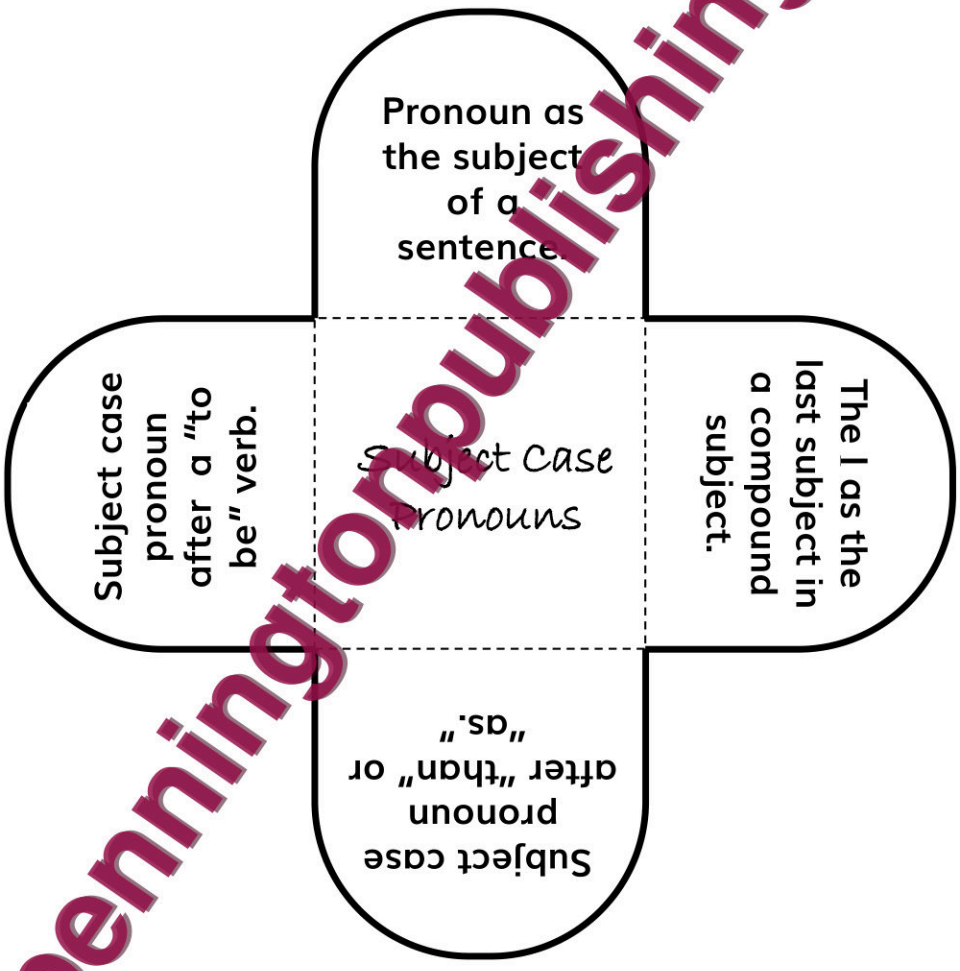
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of subject case pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
An alphanumeric outline uses Roman Numerals for the main points: I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. This outline uses capital letters (A, B, C) for major details and Arabic numerals (1, 2, 3) for minor details.	Decimal Outlines use numbers to organize information. The first letter of the word, group of words, or sentence that follows each symbol is capitalized. Decimal Outlines begin with an Arabic numeral followed by a period and then a zero to represent the first main idea. The first major detail is indented from the main idea. It repeats the Arabic numeral followed by a period and then a "1." The second major detail would end in a "2," etc. The first minor detail is indented from the major detail. It repeats all the symbols of the major detail followed by a period and then a "1." The second minor detail would end in a "2," etc. **Examples:** 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2, 1.2.1, 1.2.2
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	One type of pronoun is called an *object case pronoun* because it receives the action of the verb. Use singular (*me, you, him, her, it, whom*) or plural (*us, you, them, whom*) object case pronouns: ▪ As a direct or indirect object. **Examples:** I like it. She gave him a gift. ▪ As objects of prepositions. **Examples:** It's not for her. ▪ *Me* and *us* last in compound objects. **Examples:** Text Kyla and me. ▪ *Whom* (not *who*). Check whether *whom* is correct by substituting *him* in place of *whom*. Rephrase, if necessary. **Examples:** Whom did Joan love? Rephrase: Did Joan love him?
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The sixth main idea, fourth major detail, and second minor detail would be listed as 6.2.4.

The sixth main idea, fourth major detail, and second minor detail would be listed as 6.4.2.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The third main idea and third major detail were listed as 3.0 and its first minor detail was 3.3.1.

The third main idea and third major detail was listed as 3.3 and its first minor detail was 3.3.1.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: These were the main ideas: 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0. His fourth main idea was 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.22.

These were the main ideas: 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0. His fourth main idea was 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.2.1.

4. Re-write these sentences correctly: I sure would like he to help us. Who helped you, and who did you help?

I sure would like him to help us. Who helped you, and whom did you help?

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: Did he let you copy they? They gave it to me.

Did he let you copy them? They gave it to me.

6. Re-write these sentences correctly: Whom does Lacy like best: you or I? Me and Joanie let her watch we practice.

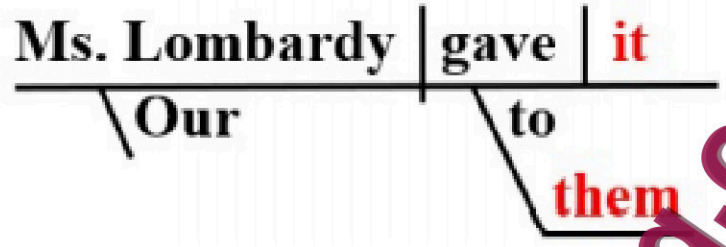
Whom does Lacy like best: you or me? Joanie and I let her watch us practice.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Object case pronouns are placed to the right of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "it" and "them."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"I don't know half of you half as well as I should like; and I like less than half of you half as well as you deserve."

J. R. R. Tolkien (the British author of *The Lord of the Rings*)
(1892–1973)

This quotation includes both subject and object case pronouns in some clever word play. Explain what the hobbit, Bilbo Baggins, means here, using at least two object case pronouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this decimal outline in correct order (Model the proper indentations). 2.2, 2.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.1, 2.0

2.0, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

The principal sent us a note, but to whom was it addressed?

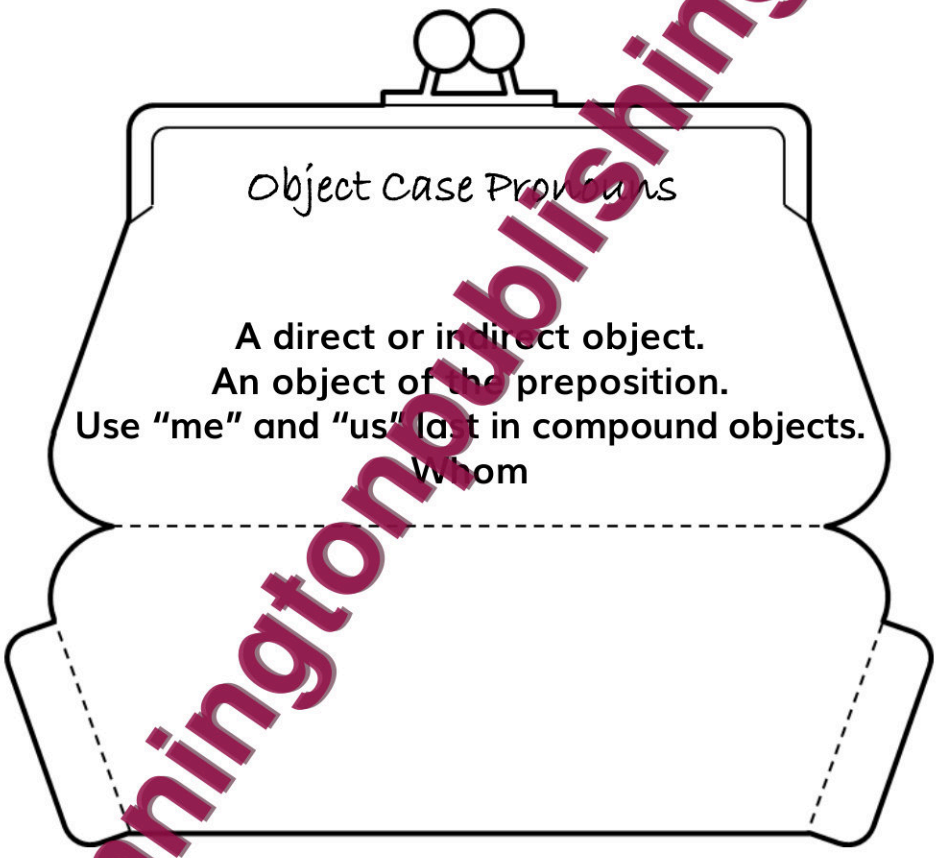
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of object case pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Use the memory trick, **FANBOYS**, to remember the coordinating conjunctions: F = for A = and N = nor B = but O = or Y = yet S = so	Use the semicolon between two sentences joined by a coordinating conjunction. **Examples:** John introduced me to his cousin from Orange County; his high school girlfriend; and his childhood friend. A semicolon (;) can be used to join a string of phrases. **Examples:** Ohio, Iowa, and Illinois in the Midwest; Idaho, Oregon, and California in the West; and Tennessee and Alabama in the South all have long rivers.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Possessive pronouns show ownership and may be used before a noun or without a noun. **Before a noun**—*my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their* When a possessive pronoun is used before a noun, it modifies the noun. The connected verb must match the noun, not the pronoun. **Examples:** Our house seems small. **Without a noun**—*mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs* When a possessive pronoun is used without a noun, the verb must match the noun which the pronoun represents. **Examples:** Mary said that my jacket is nice, but hers is nicer.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

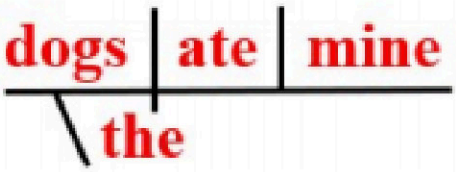
1. Re-write this correctly: Anna studied hard for her exam, Bob didn't study at all. Anna passed; Bob didn't.
Anna studied hard for her exam; Bob didn't study at all. Anna passed; Bob didn't.
2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Chocolate, strawberry, ice cream; cherry, berry, and lemon pies and cookies are my favorites.
Chocolate and strawberry ice cream; cherry, berry, and lemon pies; and cookies are my favorites.
3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Both boys love music they love sports even more.
Both boys love music; they love sports even more.
4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mine basket had sunflowers; her basket was filled with his roses; theirs had daisies.
My basket had sunflowers; her basket was filled with his roses; theirs had daisies.
5. Re-write these sentences correctly: That rose is your, not hers. Please give Bobby the jacket; it's his, not their.
That rose is yours, not hers. Please give Bobby the jacket; it's his, not theirs.
6. Re-write these sentences correctly: Sue's jewelry was her, not Amanda's. Ours was a reminder of what her could have been.
Sue's jewelry was hers, not Amanda's. Ours was a reminder of what hers could have been.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Possessive pronouns are placed below the nouns they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “our” and “their.”



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Life is like riding a bicycle. To keep your balance, you must keep moving."

Albert Einstein (famous physicist, noted for his Theory of Relativity) (1879–1955)

This quotation includes a possessive pronoun before a noun. Explain what Einstein means, using a possessive pronoun before a noun and a possessive pronoun without a noun.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

The boy in his sweatshirt; the girl in her jacket; and their grandfather in his coat were all prepared for the cold weather.

Grammar and Usage– Combine these sentences without a conjunction:
Their tacos had salsa. Ours had none.

Their tacos had salsa; ours had none.

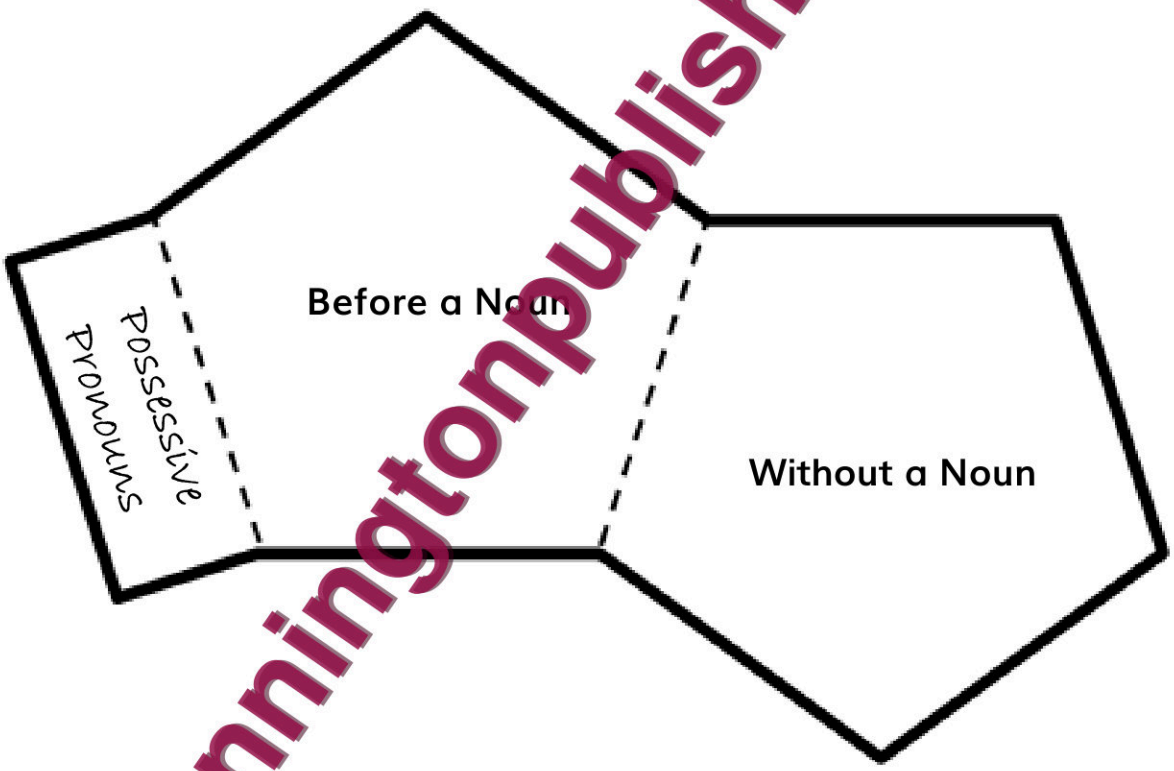
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for both types of possessive pronouns on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎	
Resources	**Mechanics Notes**
Apostrophes are only used for contractions, such as *can't* and possessives. Don't add an apostrophe before an *s* with plural nouns or pronouns such as 1950s or theirs.	A possessive noun shows ownership. To form a singular possessive noun, add an apostrophe then an *s* ('s) to the end of the noun. **Examples:** Tim's wallet For nouns ending in *s*, it is not necessary to add another *s* after the apostrophe. **Examples:** Charles' hat A singular possessive noun can also modify a ***gerund*** (a verb form ending in "ing" that serves as a noun). **Examples:** Len's training
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	An adjective modifies a noun or pronoun and answers Which one? How many? or What kind? When using more than one adjective to modify the same noun or pronoun in a sentence, follow this order of adjectival functions: Which One-How Many-What Kind. **Examples:** these (Which one?) two (How many?) handsome (What kind?) men Place adjectives before nouns, even when they are compound adjectives. A compound adjective joins two or more adjectives with a hyphen (-) to modify a single noun or pronoun. Don't use a hyphen if you can use the word *and* between the two adjectives. **Examples:** world-famous hot dogs; warm, comfortable coat (warm and comfortable)
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Chriss' coat was black and so was Mike's.

Chris' coat was black and so was Mike's.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Gus'es commitment and Kyle's training made them a dynamic duo.

Gus' commitment and Kyle's training made them a dynamic duo.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Karlas' wedding was wonderful, but Bess' wedding was incredible.

Karla's wedding was wonderful, but Bess' wedding was incredible.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The four friendly students drove this car to the park beautiful.

The four friendly students drove this car to the beautiful park.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: He ate two those crunchy cookies.

He ate those two crunchy cookies.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectives: This email that you already sent was mean, thoughtless and unnecessary.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Adjectives are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “pull-up,” “three-year-old,” and “these.”

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Men acquire a particular quality by constantly acting a particular way... you become just by performing just actions, temperate by performing temperate actions, brave by performing brave actions."

Aristotle (Greek philosopher)
(384 B.C.–322 B.C.)

This quotation includes the same four words as both nouns and adjectives. Explain how his use of these four adjectives emphasizes his point. Include one compound adjective in your response.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Tess’ (or Tess’s) job was challenging, but Lily’s job was boring.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

She read an interesting book to our English-language arts class.

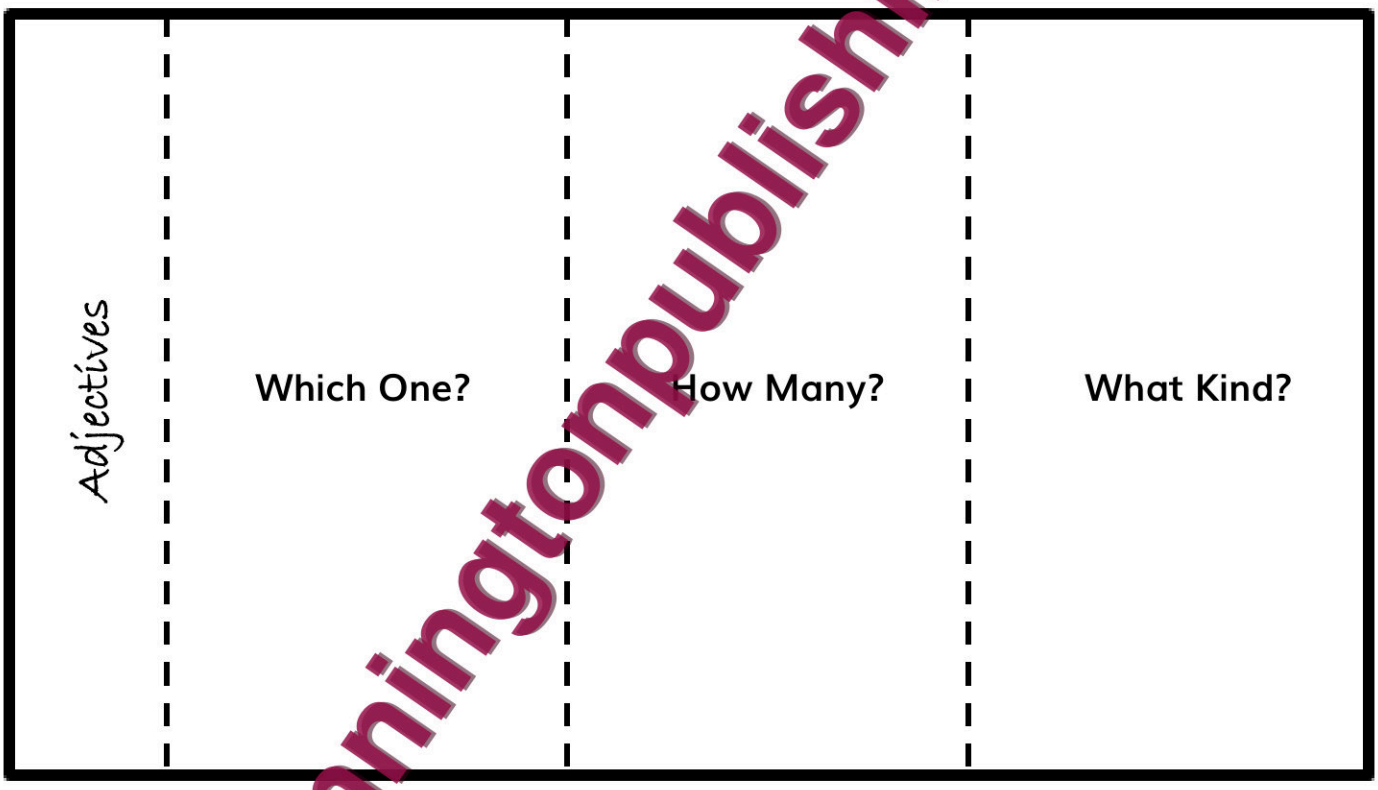
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of adjective on the back of the flaps.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Don't add an apostrophe before an "es" ending in plural nouns such as churches or bunches.	To form a plural possessive noun, place an apostrophe after the plural ending (usually "_s," "_es," or "_ves"). **Examples:** the Lees' dog, kids' hobbies, churches' windows, wives' addresses Add an apostrophe then an *s* to an irregular plural noun. **Examples:** women's, children's When family names ending in a /z/ sound are used as plural possessives, add on the apostrophe at the end of the plural name and pronounce as /zes/. Don't use an apostrophe when the family name is simply used as a plural. **Examples:** The Perez' cars are parked at the Juarezes.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
The first person *I* and second person *you* pronouns do *not* match verbs ending in *s*. **Examples:** I run, you smile	A *transitive* verb is a mental or physical action that acts upon a direct object. The direct object answers *Whom*? or *What*? from the verb. **Examples:** I like him. (Whom?) He gives candy. (What?) An *intransitive verb* acts without an object. Linking verbs are all intransitive verbs. Linking verbs include the "to be" verbs: *is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*, and others such as *become*, *seem*, *look*, *feel*, *smell*, and *appear*. **Examples:** They seem curious. We sing and dance. Singular verbs usually end in s and match singular nouns and third person singular subject case pronouns (he, she, it and who). **Examples:** Sam walks and he whistles. Plural verbs don't end in s and match plural nouns and the third person plural subject case pronouns (we, you, they, and who). **Examples:** Families laugh and they cry together.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girls' shoe colors match their dresses for the Gomez' wedding at the Jone's.

The girls' shoe colors match their dresses for the Gomez' wedding at the Joneses.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Is this the children's or your wive's cookies?

Is this the children's or your wives' cookies?
or Is this the children's or your wife's cookies?

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: I could see Liz' cats and Jimmy's dogs walk past the two church'es windows.

I could see Liz' cats and Jimmy's dogs walk past the two churches' windows.

4. Identify the types of verbs in this sentence: They are ready if they leave now, but they seem uncertain.

are: state of being leave: physical action

seem: mental action

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: John play basketball every day at lunch. He are trying out for the school team.

John plays basketball every day at lunch. He is trying out for the school team.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: They always complains that the dogs gets more attention than the cats.

They always complain that the dogs get more attention than the cats.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Both transitive and intransitive verbs are placed to the right of the main vertical line. Complete these sentence diagrams: "Athletic Samantha runs 10K races." "Mary watches."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Everything is funny as long as it is happening to somebody else."

Will Rogers (American humorist)
(1879–1935)

This mentor text uses a transitive "to be" linking verb to contrast with a "to be" helping verb. respond to the author's point, using both a transitive and intransitive verb.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Both birds' nests were filled with their babies' constant cries for more and more food.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the transitive verb. [Bracket] the intransitive verb:

She loves the idea, but her sisters always [disagree] with her.

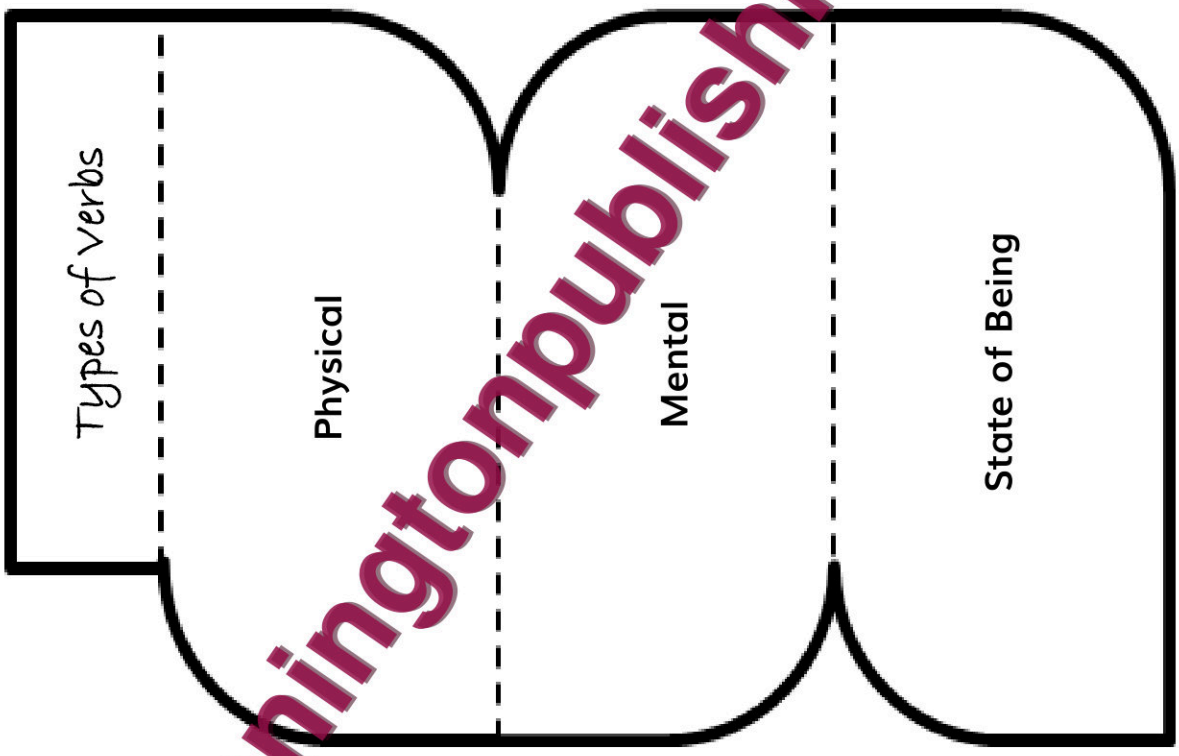
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using each type of verb, on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
A compound sentence joining two simple sentences (independent clauses) does not require a comma if one or both of the simple sentences is short. **Example:** I enjoy apples and I also enjoy eating many other types of fruit.	The word compound means two or more. For example, a compound word combines two words, such as in baseball, fireworks, and peppermint. With compound subjects or objects, if each of the nouns possesses the same type of item, use an apostrophe then an *s* at the end of each possessive noun. **Examples:** Eric's and Victor's backpacks If both or all of the nouns share ownership of the same item, place an apostrophe then an *s* at the end of the last noun listed. **Examples:** Kayla and Emma's pizza

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
	An adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb and answers What degree? How? Where? When? **Examples:** less, carefully, there, later Many adverbs end in "_ly." **Examples:** Quietly, the children sneaked stealthily into the room. Adverbs are very flexible in English. The adverb may be found before or after the words they modify to make verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs more specific. **Examples:** Slowly, the man climbed the stairs. The man slowly climbed the stairs. Most professional writers suggest using specific, vivid verbs rather than weak verbs supported with adverbs.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: My father-in-laws' golf clubs and my two sister-in-law's golf bags were at Tom and Sherry's house.

My father-in-law's golf clubs and my two sister-in-laws' golf bags were at Tom and Sherry's house.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Les's and Holly's hobbies were cooking and needlepoint.

Les and Holly's hobbies were cooking and needlepoint.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Her mother-in-law's house was always Linda, Bert, and Todds last stop.

Her mother-in-law's house was always Linda, Bert, and Todd's last stop.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: I drove quickly, but got very late there.

I drove quickly, but got there very late.

5. Re-order these adverbs as they should appear in a sentence: earlier, there, hopefully, less

less, hopefully, there, earlier

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Thomas and Suzanne drank there slowly more by the stream yesterday.

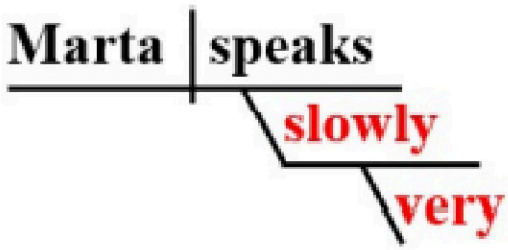
Thomas and Suzanne drank more slowly there by the stream yesterday.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Adverbs are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “almost” and “silently.”



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"One's dignity may be assaulted, vandalized and cruelly mocked, but cannot be taken away unless it is surrendered."

Morton Kondracke (journalist and author)
(1939–)

This quotation includes two well-chosen adverbs, "cruelly" and "away." Explain the author's point and offer your own opinion, using at least two different types of adverbs.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

When we last visited my mother-in-law’s, we took her to Joe and Bonnie’s restaurant. Joe’s and Bonnie’s jobs were quite different.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:
In her office she cautiously opened the package that afternoon.

She cautiously opened the package in her office that afternoon.

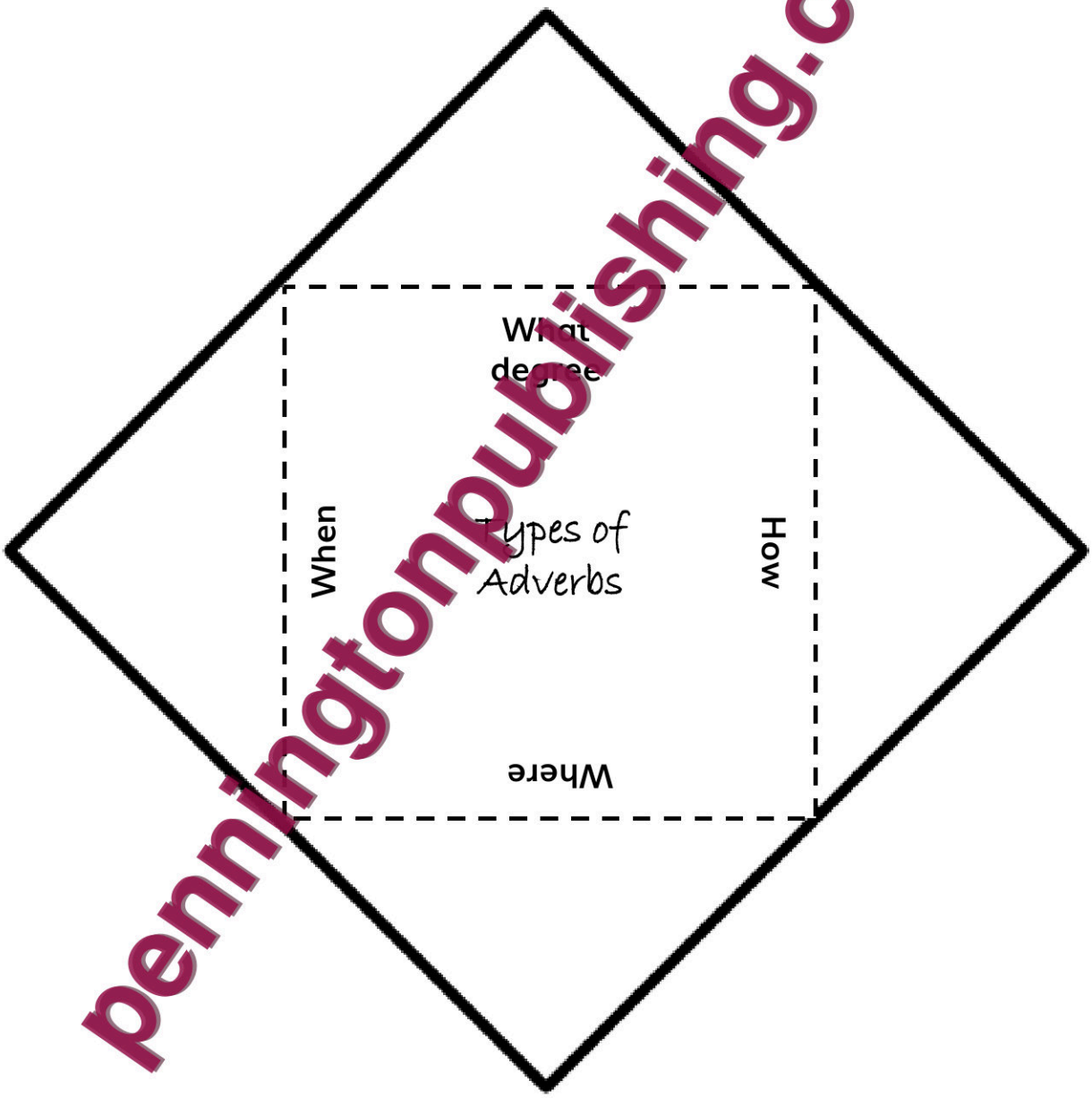
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of adverb on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Don't use contractions in formal essays. Remember that should've, would've, could've, and might've contract have, not of. Therefore, say "should have," not "should of," etc. in the uncontracted form.	These words can be contracted with apostrophes in the middle of words: *not*, *will*, *would*, *have*, *had*, and the forms of the "to be" verb (*is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*). **Examples:** isn't (is not), she'll (she will), he'd (he had or he would), should've (should have), she'd (she had or she would), they're (they are), o'clock (of the clock) Words can be contracted at the beginning or ending of words. **Examples:** 'twas (it was), 'til (until), jack-o'-lantern (Jack of the lantern) rock 'n' roll (rock and roll)

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Always place commas before *but* and *yet* to show clear contrast (the difference) between what is before and what follows in the sentence. However, don't place commas following these conjunctions if they begin sentences. **Examples:** But you did know him. Yet he found a way to visit. Print these colorful posters for each of the three types of conjunctions: https://bit.ly/2VzBiiG	A coordinating conjunction connects words, phrases, or clauses with related meanings. The memory trick FANBOYS (For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So) may help you remember the common coordinating conjunctions. A comma is placed before the conjunction if it joins two or more long independent clauses. A long independent clause would be five or more words. **Examples:** I walk about two miles, and then I run about a mile every day. I eat bread and I drink only water.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: He'd told us the secret, but we should've already known it.

He'd told us the secret, but we shouldv'e already known it.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Shel'l do whatever we ask, but she isn't happy.

She'll do whatever we ask, but she isn't happy.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Twas the night before Christmas and I tried to stay up 'til the reindeer arrived.

'Twas the night before Christmas and I tried to stay up 'til the reindeer arrived.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Iris and Mike like chocolate or vanilla, so they prefer strawberry or orange sherbet.

Iris and Mike like chocolate or vanilla, but they prefer strawberry or orange sherbet.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: It's late, and the players can't really see the ball very well.

It's late and (or so) the players can't really see the ball very well.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: They are either ready for the quiz, nor are they ready for the test.

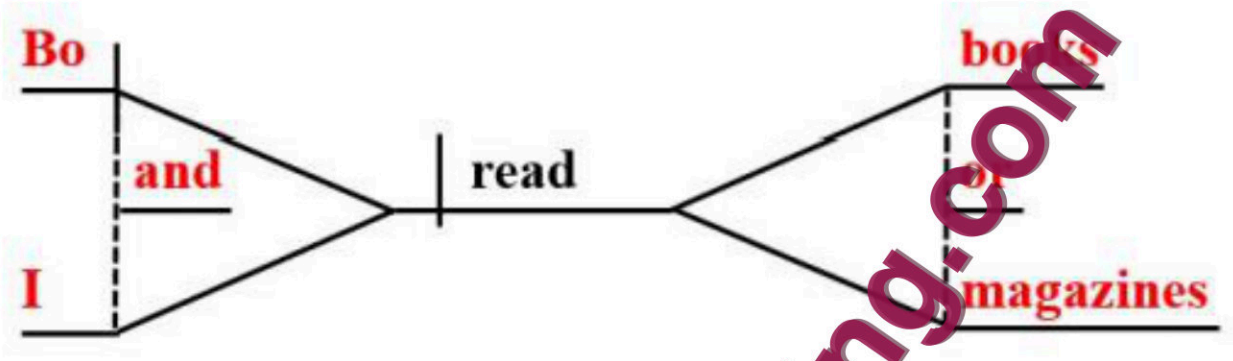
They are neither ready for the quiz, nor are they ready for the test.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Coordinating conjunctions are placed in the middle of a dotted vertical line to join words, phrases, and clauses. Complete this sentence diagram: "Bo and I read books or magazines."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"All I want is cake and ice cream, so you can have the rest."

Maya Angelou (poet and author)
(1928–2014)

This quotation includes two coordinating conjunctions. Share your priorities in life, including at least two coordinating conjunctions.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly using contractions whenever possible.
They will always remember us even though she had tried to forget.

They'll always remember us even though she'd tried to forget.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:
I decided to surprise my teacher, and my teacher wasn't surprised at all.

I decided to surprise my teacher, but my teacher wasn't surprised at all.

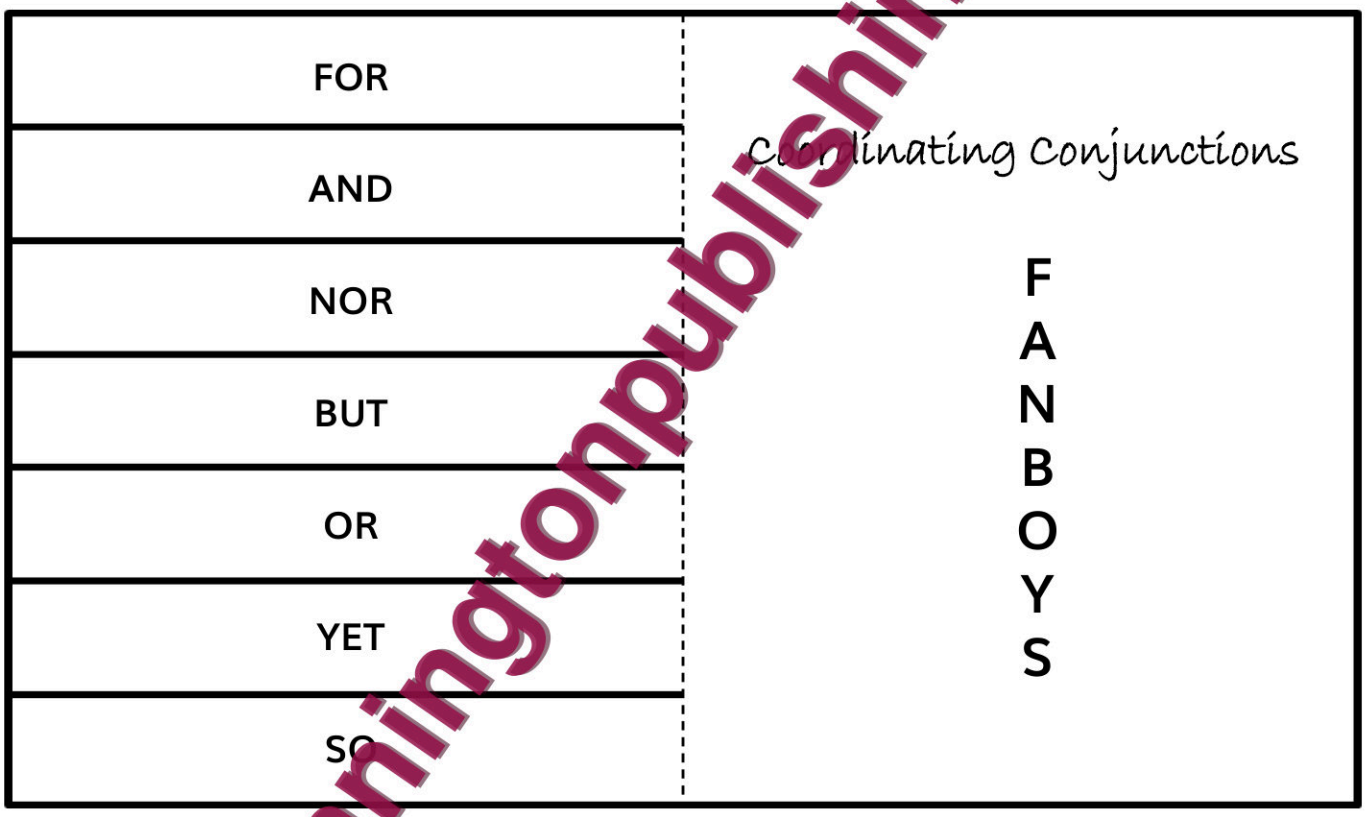
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of coordinating conjunction on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
All 22 comma rules in one place: http://bit.ly/2dtfyKH.	Don't use a comma to separate a subject from its verb. **Example:** Pete in Colorado, is a friend of mine. Now X-out the comma. Also, don't use a comma to separate compound subjects, compound objects, or compound predicates. **Examples:** Pete in Iowa, and Jim in Ohio went to see Tom, and Ben. I sent a check, and mailed a card to Pete. Now X-out the commas.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Correlative conjunctions join two parallel words, phrases, or clauses. *Parallel* means that the parts of the sentence are similar in length and grammatical structure. **Example:** Either you like her, or you do not. Note that each independent clause has three words and follows a subject-verb grammatical structure. *Correlative* is pronounced as cor/rél/lə/tive. Print these colorful posters for each of the three types of conjunctions: https://bit.ly/2VzBfjG	Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions used in the same sentence. **Examples:** both + and, either + or, whether + or, neither + nor, if + then If used within the same phrase or clause, don't use a comma to separate the correlative conjunctions. A comma is placed before the second of the paired conjunctions, if that conjunction begins a different independent clause. **Examples:** Either chocolate or vanilla is fine. Both girls like chocolate, and they also like vanilla. The verb which follows two subjects joined by "*or*" must agree with the second subject, not the first. **Examples:** Either Matthew or his mom wins the grand prize.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Wendy with her long blonde hair, and Sue with her beautiful eyes kept love-struck Rafael, and Miguel's attention.

Wendy with her long blonde hair and Sue with her beautiful eyes kept love-struck Rafael and Miguel's attention.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Noel and Bill gave Lulu, and Lester a surprise party.

Noel and Bill gave Lulu and Lester a surprise party.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Marta worked hard, and saved her money to buy Frances and Scott an expensive wedding present

Marta worked hard and saved her money to buy Frances and Scott an expensive wedding present.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The man with the beard, and the man with the mustache asked Amanda and I to leave.

The man with the beard and the man with the mustache asked Amanda and I to leave.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly. Both Julie or Chris want to help plan the party.

Options: Both Julie and Chris want to help plan the party. Either Julie or Chris wants to help plan the party.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Whether he stays nor he leaves does not matter.

Whether he stays or he leaves does not matter.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Correlative conjunctions are placed to the right of a dotted vertical line that connects the predicates of a compound sentence. Complete the sentence diagram: "Either they drink coffee, or they drink tea."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Either this man is dead or my watch has stopped."
Groucho Marx (American comedian and actor)
(1904–1991)

This quotation includes correlative conjunctions to set up the humorous punchline. Explain the joke or write your own, using your own pair of correlative conjunctions.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Most of the women and all of the men like watching football.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:
Either the children nor the parents needs to clean up the mess.

Either the children or the parents need to clean up the mess.

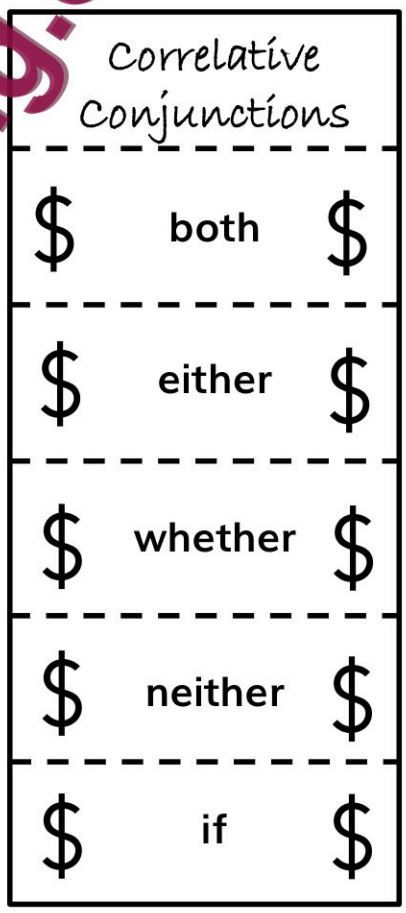
penningtonpublishing.com

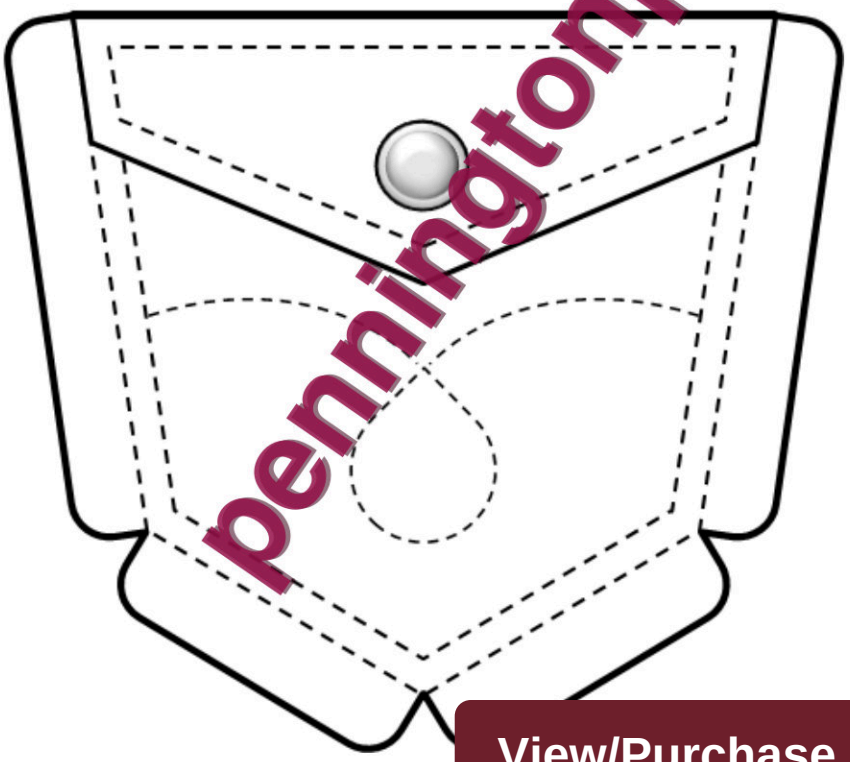
View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write the matching pair for each correlative conjunction on the back of the flaps and then put the pack in the pocket.





pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Lesson 18 ©2019 Pennington Publishing

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
All 22 comma rules in one place: http://bit.ly/2dtfyKH. Pronounce dates ending in "1" as "first"; dates ending in "2" as "second"; dates ending in "3" as "third"; and dates ending in 4 through 9 as the number + "th."	Use a comma to separate the day from the month and the date from the year. Use a comma after the last date or number unless it is placed at the end of the sentence. **Example:** She said the date was Wednesday, May 14, 2015, and then she left. If the parts of the date serve as the object of a prepositional phrase, no comma is needed. **Example**: On May 15 she quit her job.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Did you know? An adverbial clause is also known as a dependent clause or a subordinate clause. Most complex senteces include an adverbial clause. Improve your writing by combining two short simple sentences into a complex sentence. **Examples:** I dropped my ice cream. I still ate it. **Revision:** Although I dropped my ice cream, I still ate it. Print these colorful posters for each of the three types of conjunctions: https://bit.ly/2VzBjG1	A subordinating conjunction always introduces an adverbial clause. The subordinating conjunction signals the relationship between the adverbial clause and the independent clause. Use this memory trick to remember the subordinating conjunctions: **Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW** before, unless, despite (in spite of), in order that, so, while, if, since, even though (if), because, until, that, how, once, than, after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though), whether, when (whenever), where (wherever) Use a comma to set off an introductory adverbial clause, but not an adverbial clause that ends a sentence. **Example:** Although she was ready, Joe wanted to wait until he heard from Peter.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: She graduated on Wednesday June 3 2021, after years of study.

She earned graduated on Wednesday, June 3, 2021, after years of study.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: On March 4, 2017 we left on our vacation.

On March 4, 2017, we left on our vacation.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: On February 14 we got engaged and were married last May 5 2017.

On February 14 we got engaged and were married last May 5, 2017.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Until we finish our tests we can't talk even if we have questions.

Until we finish our tests, we can't talk even if we have questions.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Because the principal has an office, we can meet there, whenever we need to do so.

Because the principal has an office, we can meet there whenever we need to do so.

6. Combine these sentences into one by beginning with an adverbial clause: The song had ended. The audience continued to sing.

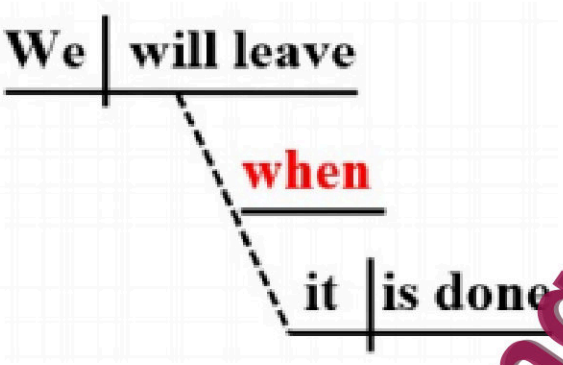
Even though (Although) the song had ended, the audience continued to sing.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Subordinating conjunctions are placed to the right of a dotted, slanted line that connects the verbs of a complex sentence. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "leave," "will," and "when."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Whenever people agree with me, I always feel I must be wrong."

Oscar Wilde (Irish writer and poet)
(1904–1991)

This quotation includes a general subordinating conjunction to contrast with a specific independent clause. Respond to the author's point, using a subordinating conjunction.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

We will celebrate our family reunion on Monday, April 14, 2020, one week after my birthday.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

When we return, we will study even though we won't have much time.

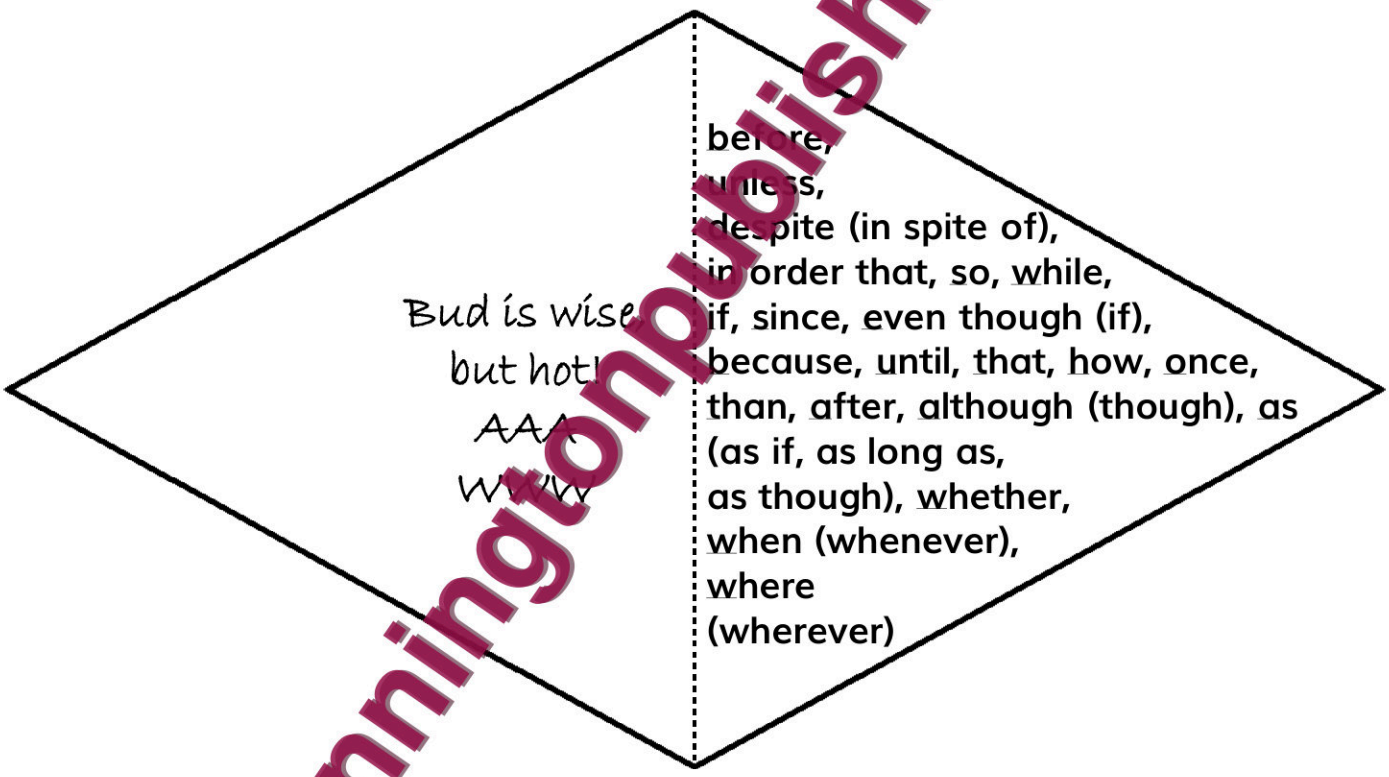
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write a sentence with an introductory adverbial clause and a sentence ending with an adverbial clause.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Check out friendly and business letter greetings and closings at http://bit.ly/2qYbKWf.	Each word in a letter greeting is capitalized. Place a comma after the greeting in a friendly letter. Place a colon (:) after the greeting in a business letter. **Examples**: Dear Mom, To Whom It May Concern: Only the first word of a letter closing is capitalized. Place a comma after the closing in both friendly and business letters. **Examples:** Hugs and kisses, Sincerely,

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Look how Abraham Lincoln ignored the rule about stringing together prepositional phrases in his "Gettysburg Address": "That we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom; and that government of the people, by the people, for the people shall not perish from the earth."	A preposition shows some relationship, location, time, or position between the preposition and its object. The preposition is always part of a phrase and comes before its object. The preposition asks "What?" or "Whom?" and the object provides the answer. **Examples:** with her, in a cloud, after two, next to him **Following are the most common prepositions:** aboard, about, above, according to, across, after, against, along, among, around, as, as to, at, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between, beyond, but, by, despite, down, during, except, for, from, in, inside, instead of, into, in place of, in spite of, like, near, next of, off, on, onto, outside, out of, over, past, regardless of, since, than, through, throughout, to, toward, under, underneath, unlike, until, up, upon, with, within, without Place a comma after introductory prepositional phrases with more than four words. **Example:** Into the deep and dark forest, I went. Avoid stringing together too many prepositional phrases. Don't end sentences with prepositions. **Examples:** Under the table, by the chair, to the couch the dog walked in.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

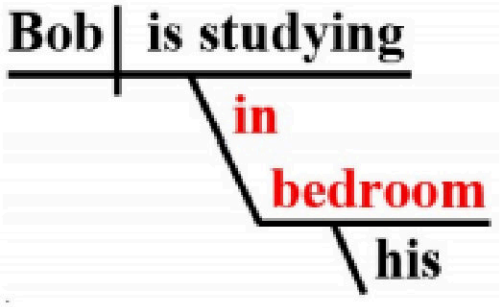
1. Re-write this sentence with the correct types of letters: He signed his friendly letter "Sincerely," and his business letter "Yours truly,".
He signed his friendly letter "Yours truly," and his business letter "Sincerely,".
2. Re-write this sentence correctly: His business letter greeting was "To Whom it may Concern,"
His business letter greeting was "To Whom It May Concern:".
3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mom's friendly letter greeting was "Dear Ken," and her closing was "Sincerely, Mom".
Mom's friendly letter greeting was "Dear Ken," and her closing was "Love, Mom."
4. Re-write this sentences correctly: Near the light and fluffy cloud, the sun shone brightly. With him, I run every afternoon.
Near the light and fluffy cloud, the sun shone brightly. With him I run every afternoon.
5. Re-write this sentence correctly: After all I don't know where you're going to visit.
After all I don't know where you're going to visit.
6. Re-write this sentence without the prepositional phrase strings: The rabbit in the story, ran under the fence, under the log, into his burrow, and finally in his bed he went to sleep.
The rabbit in the story ran under the fence, under the log, and into his burrow. Finally, he went to sleep in his bed.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Prepositions are placed to the right of slanted vertical lines and connect the predicate to the object of the preposition. Complete the sentence diagram: "Bob is studying in his bedroom."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"It is not unseemly for a man to die fighting in defense of his country."

Homer
(800 B.C. ?)

This quotation includes three prepositional phrases. Respond to the author's point, using at least two prepositional phrases.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

She began her letter with Dear Dad, and closed with Love, Jenny.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

Under the park bench the ice chest set on a rock.

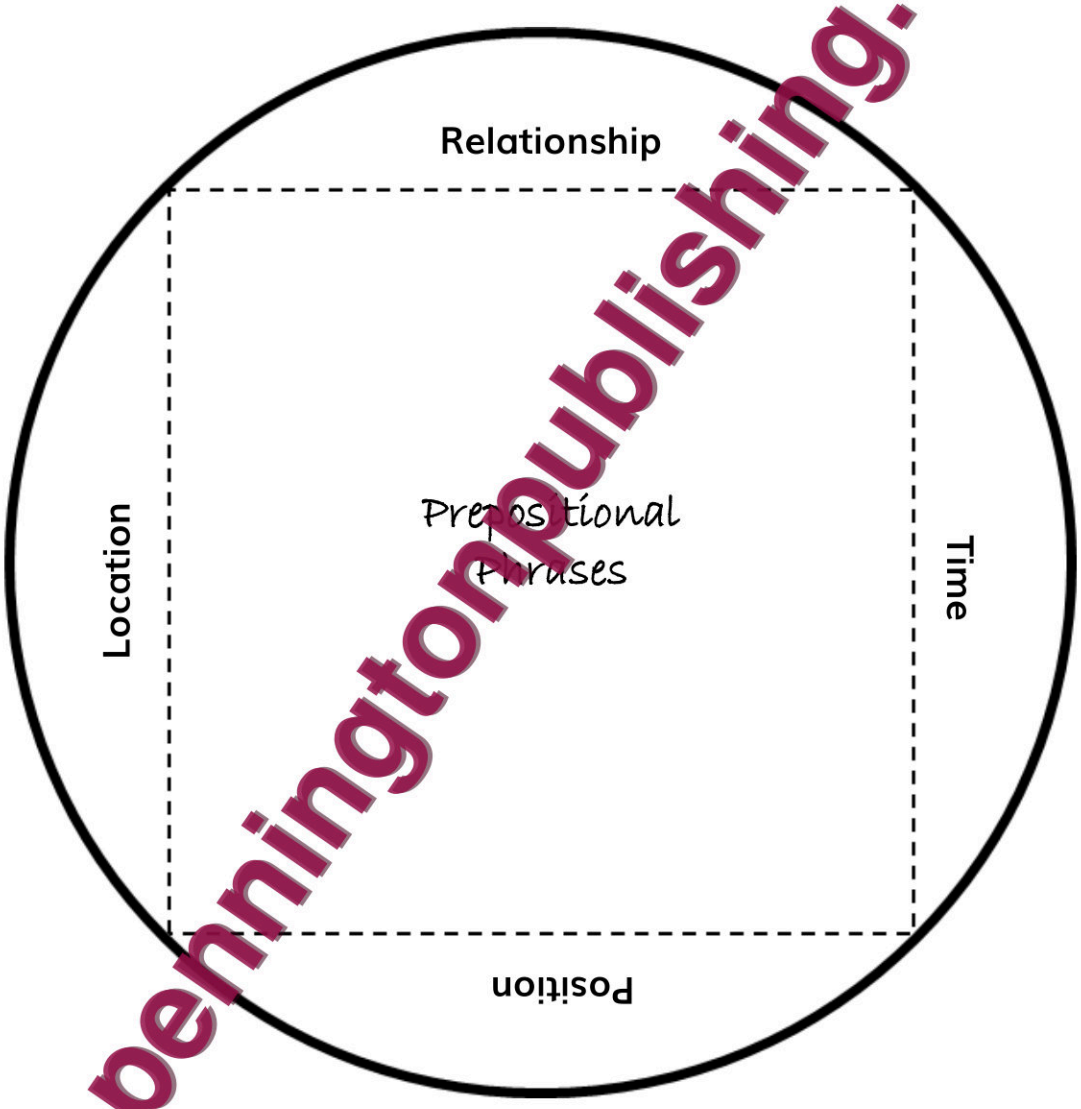
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of prepositional phrase on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Always place the return address in the upper left corner of the letter or package. The USPS (the United States Postal Service) accepts both upper case (capital) and lower case letters. How to properly address a letter or package to be mailed by USPS (the United States Postal Service): http://bit.ly/2pTm43L (usps.com)	To properly address a letter or package, the top line(s) identifies the name and/or company. The middle line includes the street number and name. The bottom line(s) contains the city, state or province (two-letter abbreviation), zip code, and country (if other than that of the addressee). No punctuation is preferred. **Examples:** Bluebell Toys Inc 3712 Ivy Rd. Suite 123 Baltimore MD 21201 Don't use abbreviations when addresses are listed in formats other than on letters and packages. Commas follow the name and/or company, the street name, the city, and the state or province. Commas are never placed before zip codes. **Examples:** She works at Bluebell Toys, Incorporated, 3712 Ivy Road Suite 123, Baltimore, Maryland 21201.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Try beginning sentences with other grammatical sentence openers other than the subject for sentence variety. **Example:** I walked through the snowy meadow. **Revision:** Through the snowy meadow I walked. Print off these grammatical sentence openers at http://bit.ly/2pVoXzm.	To identify the subject and predicate in a sentence, first look for the main verb and then ask 'Who?' or 'What?' The answer is the subject and the main verb is the predicate. The subject is never part of a prepositional phrase or dependent clause. Both the subject and predicate must be part of an independent clause. The subject is the "do-er" of the sentence. It tells whom or what the sentence is about. The simple subject is the noun or pronoun that acts or is acted upon. The complete subject includes additional words which describe the simple subject. The compound subject has two or more nouns or pronouns. **Examples:** men, the sad men, she and the sad men The predicate does the work of the "do-er" of the sentence. It shows a physical or mental action or describes a state of being. The simple predicate is the main verb that acts upon the subject. The complete predicate includes additional words which modify the predicate. The compound predicate has two or more verbs. **Examples:** danced, had danced skillfully, danced and sang
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: He sent the letter to Mabel Mosely 124 Post St., Beverly Hills, California, 91201.

He sent the letter to Mabel Mosely 124 Post St., Beverly Hills, California 91201.

2. Write your own mailing address as you would on a letter:

Review the address format as students correct their own addresses.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the simple subject:

On the lake the boat sailed despite the lack of wind.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the complete subject:

Across the classroom sat an antagonistic young man.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the simple predicate:

Racing into the wind, the bikers kept their heads close to the handlebars.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the compound predicate:

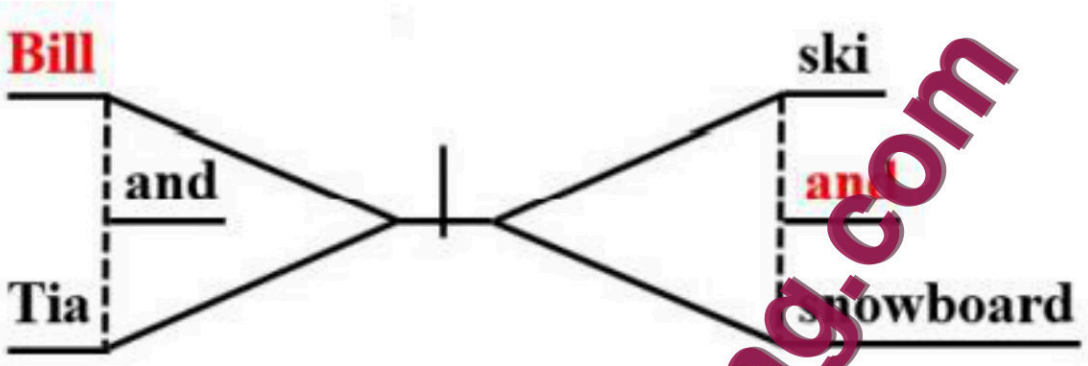
Kendra and Luis whistled and cheered for every contestant.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Compound subjects are connected by coordinating conjunctions and a dotted vertical line. Compound predicates connect predicates with a coordinating conjunction and a dotted vertical line. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "and," "snowboard," and "Bill."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

Indifference and neglect often do much more damage than outright dislike."

J.K. Rowling (British author of the Harry Potter series) (1965–)

This quotation includes a compound subject and compound predicate. Respond to the author's comment, using a compound predicate.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this address correctly:

Doctor Kim So
1852 Pacific Avenue
Carson City, Nevada 89701

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the complete subject. [Bracket] the compound predicate:

Kind and gentle Bobby [fed and walked] both of the dogs.

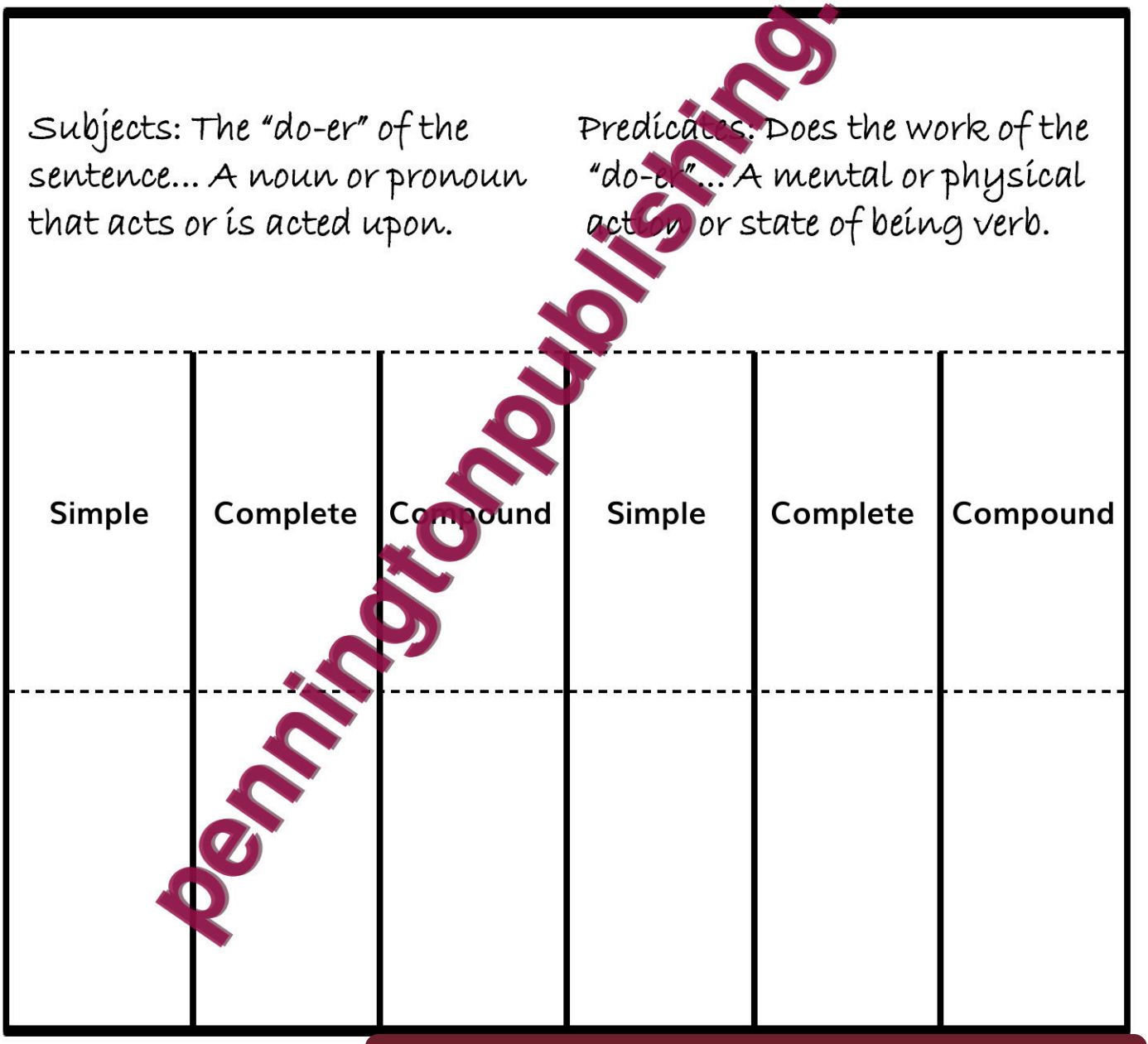
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each of these forms of subjects and predicates on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Colleges may offer Associate of Arts (A.A. degrees) for a two-year program and Bachelor of Arts or Sciences (B.A. or B.S. degrees) for a four-year program. A university has more than one college. Universities offer B.A. and B.S. degrees, as well as Masters of Arts or Science degrees (M.A. or M.S.). Some universities offer additional advanced doctoral degrees.	Place a comma before and after any educational degrees and special qualifications which follow peoples' last names. Educational degrees and special qualifications are often abbreviated. **Examples:** M.A. for Master of Arts, M.D. for Medical Doctor Family titles that follow first names, such as Jr. for Junior or IV for the fourth family member with the same first name, are not set off by commas, but family titles that follow first and last names are set off by commas. **Examples**: John Jr. and Maurice Small, IV, are here.

Resources	Parts of Speech Notes
	A direct object tells whom or what receives the action of the verb. **Examples:** I saw it. I saw her. A linking verb (a verb that expresses no action) doesn't signal a direct object. **Example:** He seems nice. The word *nice* is not a direct object. Also, an object of a preposition or a possessive pronoun isn't a direct object. **Examples:** He lied to me and said it was his. The words *me* and *his* are not direct objects. An indirect object answers To whom? For whom? To what? or For what? the action of the verb is completed. A sentence with an indirect object must also have a direct object. Usually, the indirect object is found between a verb and a direct object. **Examples:** I gave him a gift, We gave it a home.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The dentist's name on the door was Maureen Solom, D.D.S. so I had found the right place.

The dentist's name on the door was Maureen Solom, D.D.S., so I had found the right place.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lucas, Jr. had an appointment with Michael Gadsen, M.D.

Lucas Jr. had an appointment with Michael Gadsen, M.D.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: If Jonathan Smith, III, had a son with the same first name, he would be Jonathan Smith IV.

If Jonathan Smith, III, had a son with the same first name, he would be Jonathan Smith, IV.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the direct objects:

I dropped him on the couch and left money for the babysitter to buy pizza for him.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the direct objects. [Bracket] the indirect object:

I loaned [him] a dollar, but he spent it.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the direct object. [Bracket] the indirect object:

She told her [mother] a lie.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Direct objects are placed after the second vertical line. Indirect objects are placed below the predicates they modify. Add these objects to the sentence diagram: "him" and "money."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Great minds discuss ideas; Average minds discuss events; small minds discuss people."

Eleanor Roosevelt (First Lady and Committee Chair of the United nations committee which authored the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*)
(1884–1962)

This quotation includes parallel direct objects to build toward her key point. Respond to her point, using both a direct and indirect object.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

John Lo, Jr., and Sam Ming, III, met Professor Jim Lewis, Ph.D., to discuss their proposal.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the direct object. [Bracket] the indirect object:

Laura sent her [brother] a card.

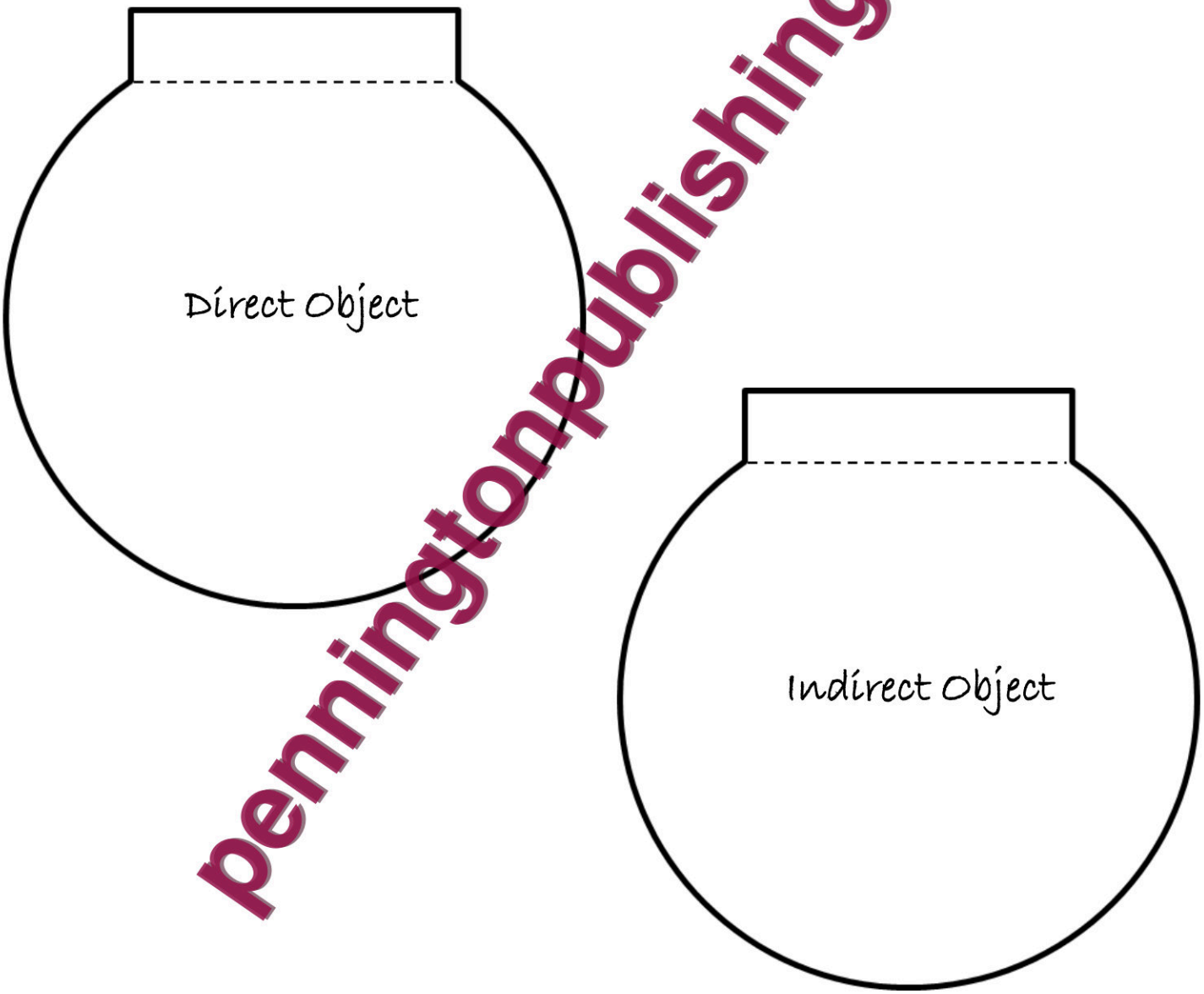
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. 3. Write sentences to show examples of each type of object on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Add commas to these weird town names and their states. All of them are real names. Dicatate these sentences and have students self-correct for comma usage: On my trip I visited Accident, Maryland, and Embarrass, Minnesota. I stayed with friends in Imalone, Wisconsin, before moving on to Pee Pee, Ohio. Kickapoo, Kansas was a favorite stop, but nothing could beat Nothing, Arizona.	When a geographical reference has two or more places, use a comma after each place (town or city, region, state or province, country) and place a comma after the last place name, unless it is placed at the end of the sentence. **Example:** I visited Tasco, Mexico, on my last vacation.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Idiomatic phrases are commonly used expressions that mean something different when used together than the the dictionary meanings of the individual words. **Examples** We walked *through the door.* They talked *up a storm*. People say things *in the heat of the moment*.	A phrase is a group of related words without a noun and connected verb. **Examples:** handsome men (adjectival phrase), had always known (verb phrase), before the flood (prepositional phrase) A noun and connected verb forms a clause. A clause is either *independent* or *dependent*. An independent clause is a sentence or part of a sentence that expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause has a noun and verb, but does not express a complete thought. **Examples**: Most people enjoy desserts, although not everyone has a sweet tooth.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Orlando, Florida is a popular vacation destination.

Orlando, Florida, is a popular vacation destination.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lake Tahoe Nevada, has a number of famous ski resorts and casinos.

Lake Tahoe, Nevada, has a number of famous ski resorts and casinos.

3. Re-write this sentence and underline the phrase.

During the game I munch peanuts and popcorn.

4. Re-write this sentence and underline the phrase.

The detective has been looking everywhere.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the dependent and [bracket] the independent clause:

Unless you ask politely, [I will not answer you.]

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the dependent and [bracket] the independent clause:

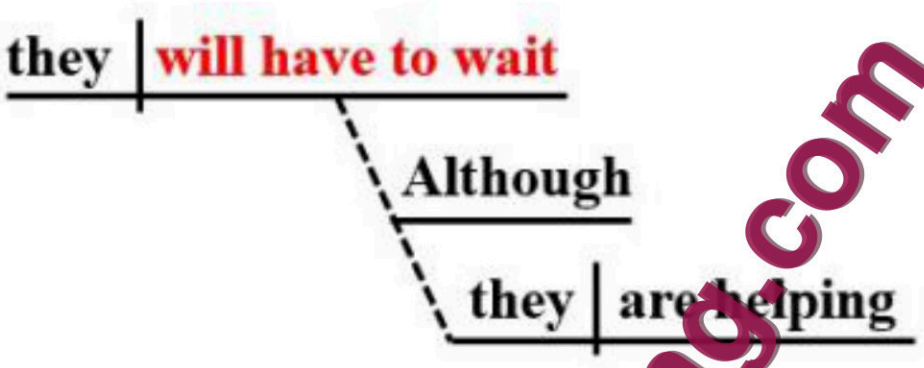
[His reaction was startling,] although she had warned us about his outbursts.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Dependent clauses are placed below the main horizontal line and connect with a dotted and slanted line to the predicates they modify. Complete the sentence diagram: "Although they are helping, they will have to wait."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"When the winter months arrived, he wrote in his study and he read the great masters."

Dave Hood (Canadian naturalist and blogger) (1965–)

This quotation includes a dependent clause and two independent clauses, forming a compound-complex sentence. Write a compound-complex sentence to describe what you do during the summer months.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

I visited her in Detroit, Michigan, before I traveled to Ontario, Canada, last fall.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the dependent clause. [Bracket] the independent clause:

Even though I asked her twice, [she would not respond.]

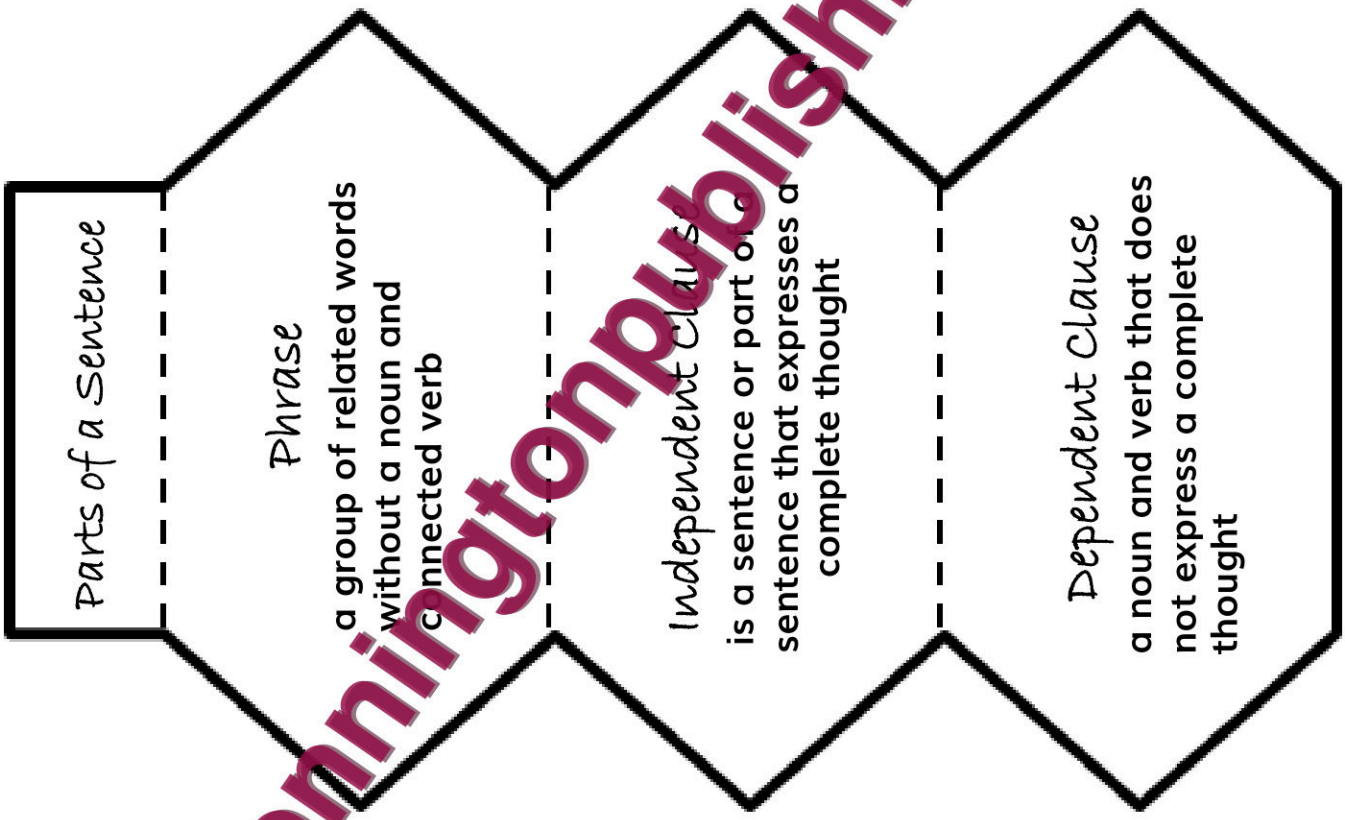
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences in which you underline these parts of sentences on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Many tag questions can be positive or negative. English uses contractions for negative tag questions. **Positive–Negative Examples:** is he? isn't he? will she? won't she? would they? wouldn't they	A tag question is a brief question added to a declarative sentence. Remember that a declarative sentence makes a statement. Use commas to set off tag questions. Place a question mark at the end of the sentence, even though most of the sentence is a statement. **Example:** I don't think he will finish, will he?

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
In declarative, imperative, and exclamatory sentences, the voice drops down on the last syllable. Try saying these types of sentences out loud to hear the ending voice drop: She went to the store. Go straight home. That shocked me! In interrogative sentences the voice goes up on the last syllable. Try saying this question out loud: Did you really mean that?	A complete sentence has three characteristics: 1. It tells a complete thought. 2. It has both a subject and a predicate. 3. It makes the voice drop down at the end of a statement or go up at the end of a question. **Example:** Karen enjoys chocolate. A fragment is only part of a complete sentence. A sentence fragment is usually a dependent clause (a noun and verb that does not express a complete thought). To fix a sentence fragment, combine the dependent clause with an independent clause to form a complex sentence. **Example:** If I asked for help. A run-on connects independent clauses without expressing a complete thought. When the run-on connects the independent clauses with a comma, it is called a *comma splice*. To fix a run-on, join the independent clauses with a comma-conjunction or semicolon or add a dependent clause to form a compound-complex sentence. **Example:** I asked for help, I really needed it.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Ian will complete his project won't he?

Ian will complete his project, won't he?

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The fireworks were great. Weren't they!

The fireworks were great, weren't they?

3. Identify the following as a complete sentence, a fragment, or a run-on: Even though we tried to pay attention to details.

Answer: fragment

4. Identify the following as a complete sentence, a fragment, or a run-on: Ariel left school early, she did not have a note from her parents.

Answer: run-on

5. Identify the following as a complete sentence, a fragment, or a run-on: Because the students failed to follow the rules, the dance was cancelled.

Answer: complete sentence

6. Revise the sentence fragment by combining the fragment with an independent clause. Since the husband had tried to help with the housework. His wife forgave him.

Options: Since the husband had tried to help with the housework, his wife forgave him. His wife forgave him since the husband had tried to help with the housework.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Complete the sentence diagram with the complete sentence found in this song lyric: "Because of it. He never gave me a chance, he didn't even try. I should have stopped him."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"I do not want people to be agreeable, as it saves me the trouble of liking them."

Jane Austen (the author of *Pride and Prejudice*)
(1775–1817)

Note that "As it saves me the trouble of liking them'" would be a fragment and "I do not want people to be agreeable, it saves me the trouble of liking them" would be a run-on. Respond to the author's comment with an intentional fragment and a complete sentence.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

I would be willing to try some, wouldn't you?

Grammar and Usage– Revise to form a complete sentence. Because it snowed. The road was dangerous it was icy.

Options: Because it snowed, the road was dangerous and icy. The road was dangerous and icy because it snowed. The road was dangerous because it was icy and it snowed.

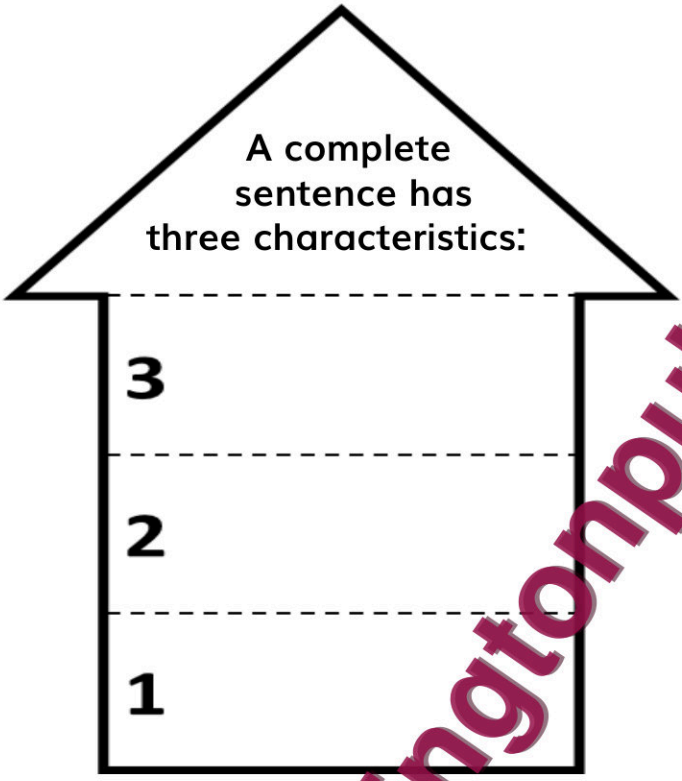
penningtonpublishing.com

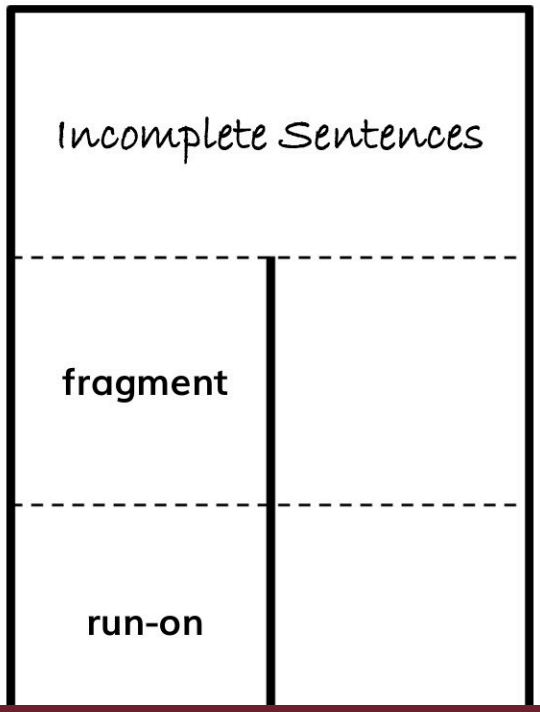
View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. List the complete sentence characteristics and write a fragment and a run-on on the back of the flaps.





pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
A surname is a person's last name. We often use titles before surnames. **Examples** Mr. Jones (a man) Ms. Jones (a woman) Miss Jones (an unmarried woman) Mrs. Jones (a married woman) Dr. Jones (a medical doctor)	When we talk to a person in our speech or writing, that person is a *noun of direct speech*. The person could be a proper noun or a common noun. Place a comma after nouns of direct speech used at the beginning of a sentence. Place commas before and after nouns of direct speech used in the middle of sentences. Place commas before nouns of direct speech used at the end of sentences. **Examples: "Barbara, please listen to me," I said. "Can't you wait, Sandy?" I asked. "Don't cry, Chelsea, you will get your share," the teacher said.**

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
	English has four basic types of sentence structures: 1. A simple sentence has one independent clause and no dependent clause. **Example: I enjoy baseball.** 2. A compound sentence has two or more independent clauses, but no dependent clauses. **Example: I enjoy baseball, but it is boring sometimes. I enjoy baseball; it is boring sometimes.** 3. A complex sentence has an independent clause and at least one dependent clause. **Example: Although I enjoy baseball, it is boring sometimes.** 4. A compound-complex sentence has two or more independent clauses, and a dependent clause. **Example: I like him and he likes me, even if we don't see each other very much.**

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Pedro you should listen to your mother. She knows what's best for you, son.

Pedro, you should listen to your mother. She knows what's best for you, son.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: If you would pay attention, Camille I'm sure that you would enjoy the performance.

If you would pay attention, Camille, I'm sure that you would enjoy the performance.

3. Identify this type of sentence: When I can, I like to help my neighbor with her yard and her shopping.

Answer: complex

4. Identify this type of sentence: Despite the fact that it's cold, I walk the dog, and I always take time to play fetch with him.

Answer: compound-complex

5. Identify this type of sentence: In the morning my dad plans to cut down the oak tree and chop it up for firewood.

Answer: simple

6. Identify this type of sentence: Let's go home and let's build a fire.

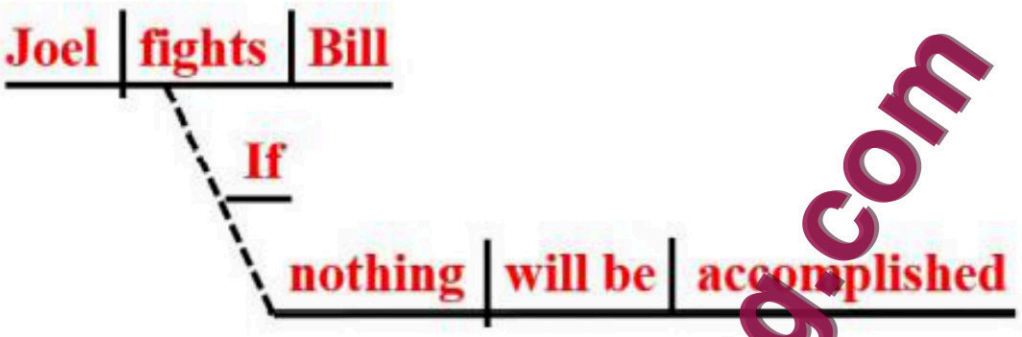
Answer: compound

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Subordinating conjunctions are placed to the right of a dotted, slanted line that connects the verbs of a complex sentence. Complete this sentence diagram: "If Joel fights Bill, nothing will be accomplished."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Nearly all men can stand adversity, but if you want to test a man's character, give him power."

Abraham Lincoln (the 16th President of the United States and author of *The Gettysburg Address*)
(1809–1865)

This quotation begins with an independent clause, follows with a dependent clause, and ends with another independent clause—an interesting compound-complex sentence. Respond to Lincoln's point with a compound-complex sentence.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Harry, take a look when you can. It's all there, friend, but you have to search a bit.

Grammar and Usage– Write each sentence and list the types of sentences in parentheses:

That is nice. [declarative]

Because they love me, they will let me stay. [complex]

I am here and so is she though you wouldn't know it. [compound-complex]

Unless you listen, you won't learn. [complex]

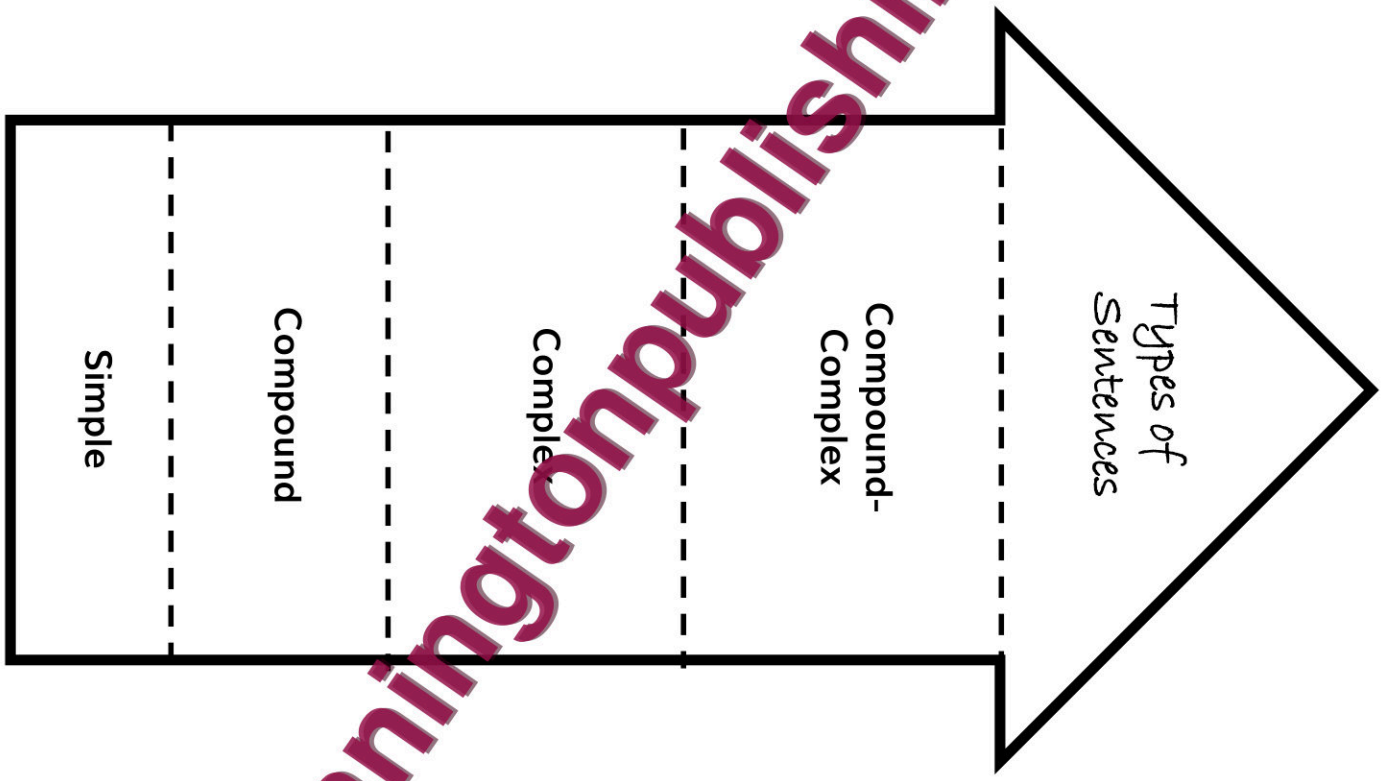
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using each of these types of sentences, on the back of the flaps.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The last comma before a conjuncton in a list of items is known as the serial comma. Although newspapers and magazines generally omit this comma, using it saves confusion. **Example:** *with* the serial comma: I brought my parents, the monkey, and the clown. (He brought all three.) **Example:** *without* the serial comma: I brought my parents, the monkey and the clown. (He brought both of his strange parents.)	Use commas after each item in lists, except the last one. Newspapers, magazines, and documents omit the comma before the coordinating conjunction that joins the last item in the list. **Example:** My favorite classes are art, Spanish, and computers at this school.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
We often overuse exclamation points. Use only one exclamation point. To avoid overuse of the exclamation point, use strong, vivid verbs. Check out these strategies to help students revise verbs: Revise with "ify" verbs http://bit.ly/2rCAiEO and verbing at http://bit.ly/2qFaEEp to form strong, vivid verbs.	Sentences can be classified in four ways: 1. A *declarative* is a statement and ends in a period. **Example:** I am crying. 2. An *interrogative* is a question and ends in a question mark. **Example:** Are you crying? 3. An *imperative* is a command and ends in a period. **Example:** Stop crying. 4. An *exclamatory* expresses surprise or strong emotion and ends in an exclamation point. **Example:** I am shocked!
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: At the store I bought two liters of soda, a king-size candy bar and a pack of gum.

At the store I bought two liters of soda, a king-size candy bar, and a pack of gum.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: This year I plan to play baseball soccer, and lacrosse.

This year I plan to play baseball, soccer, and lacrosse.

3. Identify this type of sentence: What should you do if you get lost on a hike?

interrogative

4. Identify this type of sentence: I'm amazed that she doesn't remember!

exclamatory

5. Identify this type of sentence: Please give me more time to complete the project.

imperative

6. Identify this type of sentence: I've heard it said that the apple doesn't fall far from the tree.

declarative

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Interrogative pronouns, such as *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *why*, and *how* are placed below the predicate in sentence diagrams. Remember that sentence diagrams do not include punctuation. Complete the sentence diagram: "Why are you leaving?"

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Ratty, is that really you?" came a weak voice from inside a hollow in the tree. "I've been so frightened!"

Kenneth Grahame (the author of *The Wind in the Willows*)
(1859–1932)

This quotation includes different types of sentences for variety. Add additional dialogue with at least two different types of interrogative pronouns.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

While watching the baseball game, I finished off a bag of popcorn, a bag of salted peanuts, and a diet soda before the end of the first inning.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and after each identify the type of sentence:

What is it? interrogative
I don't know. declarative
I just can't believe it! exclamatory
Get rid of it, please. imperative

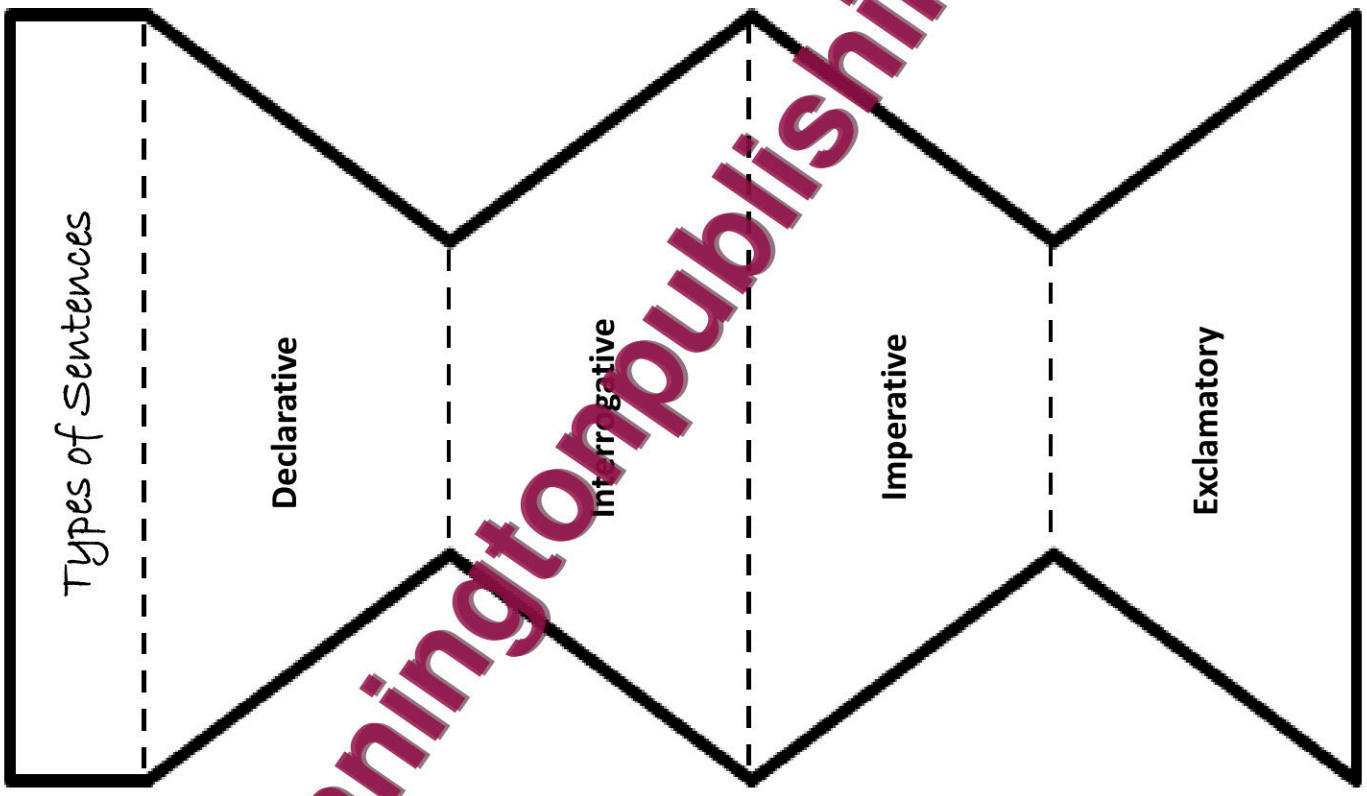
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using each of these types of sentences, on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
In the English language we place the most important part of the sentence at the beginning. This allows us to emphasize certain words more than others. **Examples to Compare:** Slowly, the popular girl walked to the podium. The popular girl walked slowly to the podium.	Use commas after introductory words which receive special emphasis. **Example:** Happily, I was wrong. Use comma after introductory words that modify other words in the main clause or to avoid confusion. **Example:** Smart and funny, the girl was quite popular. Place a comma after introductory prepositional phrases with more than four words and after each phrase in a prepositional phrase string. **Examples:** Under the broken garden fence, I escaped. Over the rocks, across the stream, I hiked.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A noun phrase consists of a named or unnamed person, place, thing, or idea and any words which modify or identify the noun. It acts as a single part of speech and can be referred to with a single pronoun. **Examples:** The tired young man (he) asked all his friends (them) to leave.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Afterwards, we went out for ice cream. Usually I would agree to go.

Afterwards, we went out for ice cream. Usually, I would agree to go.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Before the show, I climbed under the ropes beneath the chairs to get a view of the stage.

Before the show I climbed under the ropes, beneath the chairs, to get a view of the stage.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrase:

We sat down next to the dog on the couch.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrase:

They stayed in the cabin by the lake.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrases:

Freedom and liberty are such key rights.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrases:

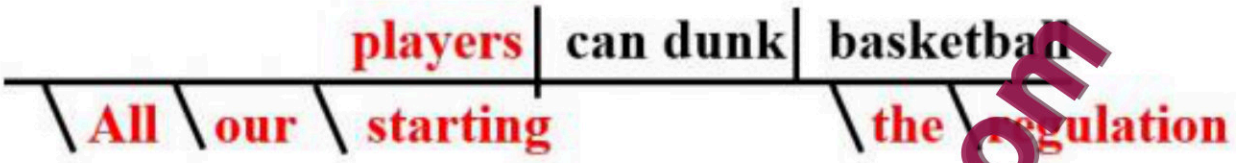
The mine workers hurried to clean up the muddy mess of the landslide.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Complete the sentence diagram: "All our starting players can dunk the regulation basketball."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"After she wrote the letter, she handed it to Constance along with a bag containing one thousand pistoles [gold coins]."

Alexandre Dumas (the author of *The Three Musketeers*)
(1802–1870)

This sentence diagram uses noun phrases to avoid using excessive verbs and relative clauses. Continue the narrative with a noun phrase of your own.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

In the early afternoon they walked around the fence, past the gate, to the theater. However, they forgot their money.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the noun phrases:

The tiny green men in their aluminum spacecraft traveled the star-filled galaxy searching for perfect peace.

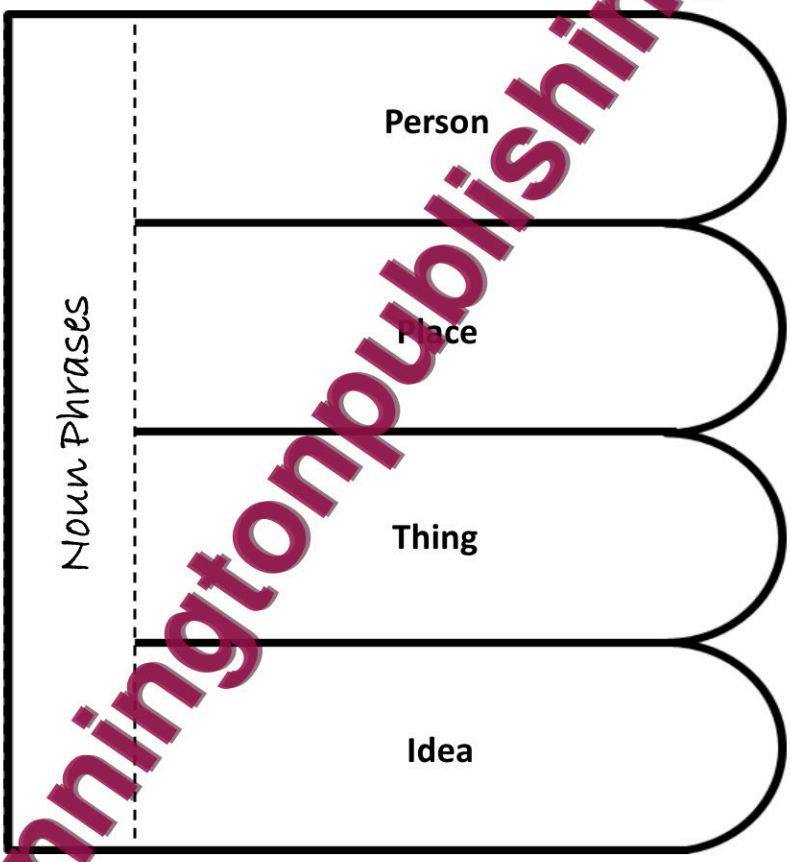
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of noun phrase on the back of the flaps.



pennningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The subordinating conjunction signals a dependent clause which *depends upon* a connected independent clause (a noun and a connected verb that expresses a complete thought). The dependent clause makes clear or limits the meaning of the independent clause. Both terms: *subordinate* and *subordinating* conjunctions are proper, as are *coordinate* and *coordinating* conjunctions.	Use commas after introductory clauses. An introductory clause is a dependent clause (a noun and connected verb that *does not* express a complete thought). The introductory clause usually begins with a subordinating conjunction and ends with a comma. **Example:** **If I had remembered her name, I would not have had to ask.** **Subordinating Conjunctions** Use this memory trick to remember the subordinating conjunctions: **BUD IS WISE BUT HOT! AAA WWW** **BUD** before, unless, despite (in spite of) **IS** in order that, so **WISE,** while, if, since, even though (if) **BUT** because, until, that **HOT!** how, once, than **AAA** after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though) **WWW** whether, when (whenever), where (wherever)

Resources	Parts of Speech Notes
Note: The other two types of clauses are adjectival clauses, also known as relative clauses, and adverbial clauses.	A noun clause is one type of a dependent clause and begins with *if*, *how*, *however*, *that*, the "wh" words: *what*, *when*, *where*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *why*, or the "wh"-ever words: *whatever*, *whenever*, *wherever*, *whichever*, *whoever*, or *whomever*. Place a comma following an introductory noun clause if a noun or pronoun follows. **Examples:** **Whatever you wish, I will do. Whatever you wish seems fine to me.**

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Because the movie has some violence, and foul language, it was rated PG-13.

Because the movie has some violence and foul language, it was rated PG-13.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: After I take a long walk I take an even longer shower.

After I take a long walk, I take an even longer shower.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: Where I should go next, I'm not sure.

Where I should go next, I'm not sure.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: Whichever way you want to go, seems fine with me.

Whichever way you want to go seems fine with me.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: I would be rich if I had a dollar, for every time I told you.

I would be rich if I had a dollar for every time I told you.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: Whoever started the fire, will be in some serious trouble.

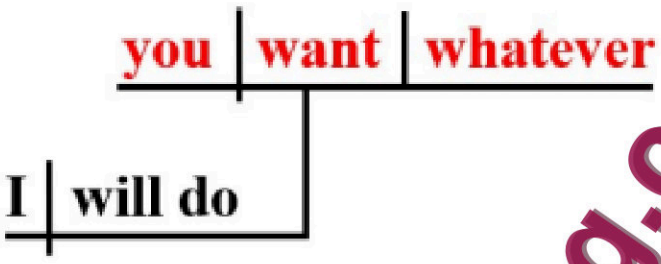
Whoever started the fire will be in some serious trouble.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Noun clauses are placed above the main horizontal line and the verb connects to the predicate of the independent clause. Add this noun clause to the sentence diagram: "whatever you want."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Well, all I know is what I read in the papers."
Will Rogers (20th Century American humorist)
(1879–1935)

This short quotation includes two noun clauses. Explain what Will Rogers means, using your own noun clause.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

Whenever those two get together, something crazy always happens. Whereveryou choose is fine with me.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the noun clauses:

I was willing to provide whatever you asked to whomever you wished.

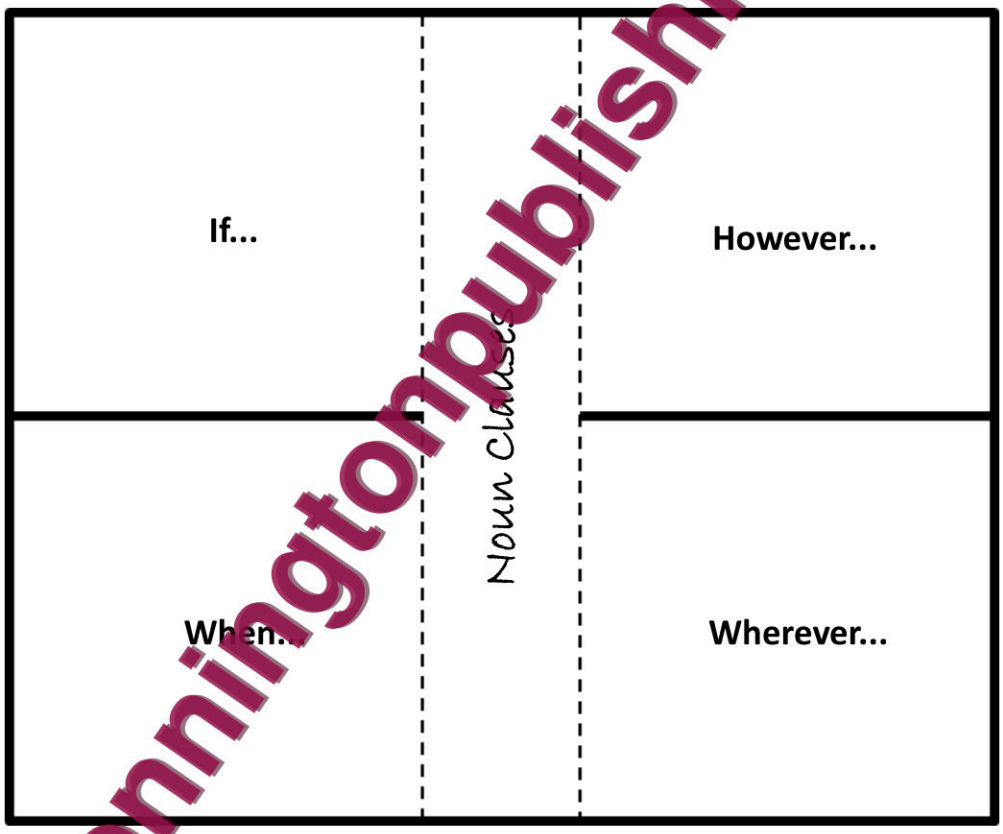
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these words to begin noun clauses, on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
For each new speaker, begin a new paragraph. **Examples** "Why aren't you helping me more? asked John. Joanna replied, "I didn't think you wanted my help." "Where in the world," yelled John, "did you get that idea?"	In dialogue sentences, place commas: After a beginning speaker tag to the left of the quotation marks. **Example:** I said, "Let's go!" Before and after a middle speaker tag to the left of both quotation marks. **Example:** "We must go," I explained, "before it's too late." Before an ending speaker tag to the left of the quotation marks. **Example:** "They must go," I pleaded.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Gerunds are types of verbals: other parts of speech masquerading as nouns. Gerunds look like verbs, but act as nouns.	A gerund is an "_ing verb" that is used as a noun. **Examples:** Skiing makes me happy. I enjoy dancing. A possessive pronoun can connect to a gerund. **Example:** His cooking is not the best. A possessive noun can connect to a gerund. **Example:** Joe's cooking is not the best.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Matt replied, "That's really not funny." I responded "I know, but you did laugh."
Matt replied, "That's really not funny." I responded, "I know, but you did laugh."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: "If you were ready," she whispered "We would be half way there by now."
"If you were ready," she whispered, "We would be half way there by now."

3. Re-write these sentences correctly:
"I wonder why you care" she mumbled.
"She must be hiding something," he added.
"I wonder why you care," she mumbled.
"She must be hiding something," he added.

4. Re-write these sentences and underline the gerunds:
Writing helps me sort out my thoughts.
However, reading gives me new ones.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the possessive pronoun. [Bracket] the gerund:
I hear their [singing] is simply the best of any junior competitors.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the possessive noun. [Bracket] the gerunds:
Rafael's [pitching] still keeps those hitless wonders winning.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

The "_ing" endings of gerunds are placed under the base forms of the verb. The gerund is placed above the main horizontal line and connects to the subject or object place. Complete the sentence diagram: "Driving has become a necessary skill."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Gardening was becoming a serious hobby for me, and the better I got at it, the more I wanted to grow."

John Grogan (the journalist and author) (1957–)

This quotation includes a gerund connected to a present participle. Write a sentence or two with a gerund to describe your own hobby.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this dialogue correctly:

She said, "Call me at home."
"If I do call," he explained, "it will be late."
"Then just text me," she replied.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the possessive noun. [Bracket] the gerunds:

Texting has become a necessary skill, but Jane's typing is filled with mistakes.

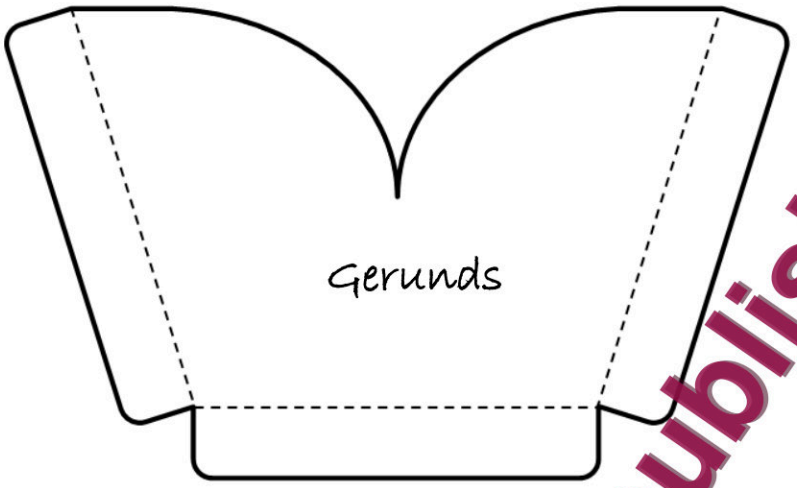
pennigtonpublishing.com

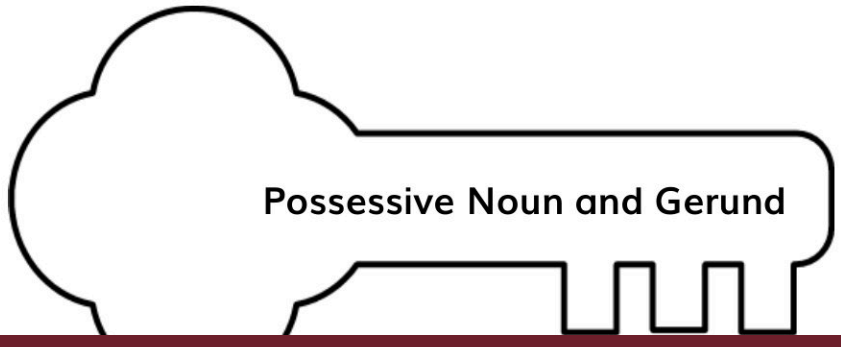
View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences on the back of the keys, using both types of gerunds, and place them in your pocket.





penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Never use a comma before an *and*, *or*, or *nor* to join two nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, or prepositions. **Examples** Josie **and** Pedro love to dance. She **or** her sister will serve. The dog was **neither** mean **nor** vicious. Deb walked **and** ran the mile. They asked politely **or** assertively, depending upon the situation. My parents never went down **nor** up the stairs.	Place a comma before the coordinating conjunction(s) to join independent clauses if one or both of the independent clauses is long and always before *but* or *yet*. If one of the independent clauses has 5 or more words, use the comma. The memory trick **FANBOYS** (For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So) may help you remember the common two or three-letter coordinating conjunctions. **Examples**: My parents used to eat plenty of fresh fish and they also ate rice. I know my limitations, but I still love to play.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Gerund phrases can add parallelism to one's writing.	A gerund phrase is a noun phrase with a gerund serving as the noun. A possessive pronoun can be placed before a gerund phrase. **Example:** His playing golf all the time... A singular possessive noun can connect to a gerund phrase. **Example:** That terrific singing of Martha's...
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: He enjoys the blues band, so he always attends the show. I want to go, and she does, too.

He enjoys the blues band, so he always attends the show. I want to go and she does, too.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: I wish we would attend yet I know we won't go. I shouldn't have left and I knew it.

I wish we would attend, yet I know we won't go.
I shouldn't have left and I knew it.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: Love is wonderful, but it takes commitment. Love can change people, and often it does.

Love is wonderful, but it takes commitment. Love can change people, and often it does.

4. Re-write these sentences and underline the gerund phrases:

Staying on top of things requires plenty of time and effort.

When walking away from a problem won't work, try running.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the possessive pronoun. [Bracket] the gerund phrase:

Our [producing the play] turned out to be the wrong decision.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the singular possessive noun. [Bracket] the gerund phrase:

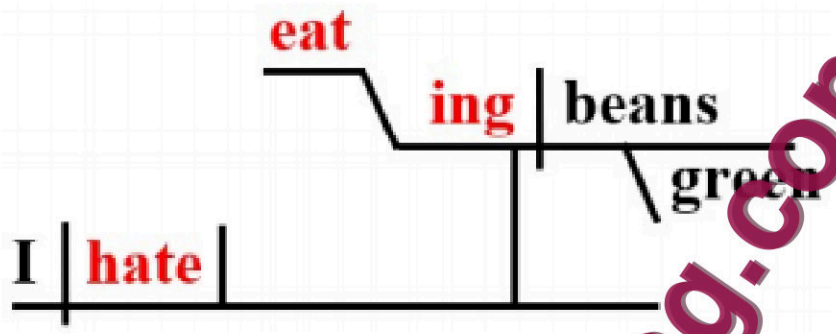
Bob's [failing to arrive] left us one player short for the game.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

The "_ing" endings of gerunds are placed under the base forms of the verb. Gerund phrases are placed above the main horizontal line and connect to the subject or object. Complete the sentence diagram: "I hate eating green beans."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Not by his calm, lazy spouting was he seen, but rather by his wondrous breaching—the tossing of his entire body out of the water and high into the air. This breaching was Moby Dick's act of defiance!"

Herman Melville (the American author of *Moby Dick*) (1819–1891)

The quotation includes a gerund connected to a present participle. Write a sentence or two, using a gerund to describe your hobby.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The fans were ready for a victory, but the team was not. I don't watch so I really don't care.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and underline the gerund phrases:

Talking with her friends makes Leticia happy.
Leticia's wonderful cooking makes her friends happy.

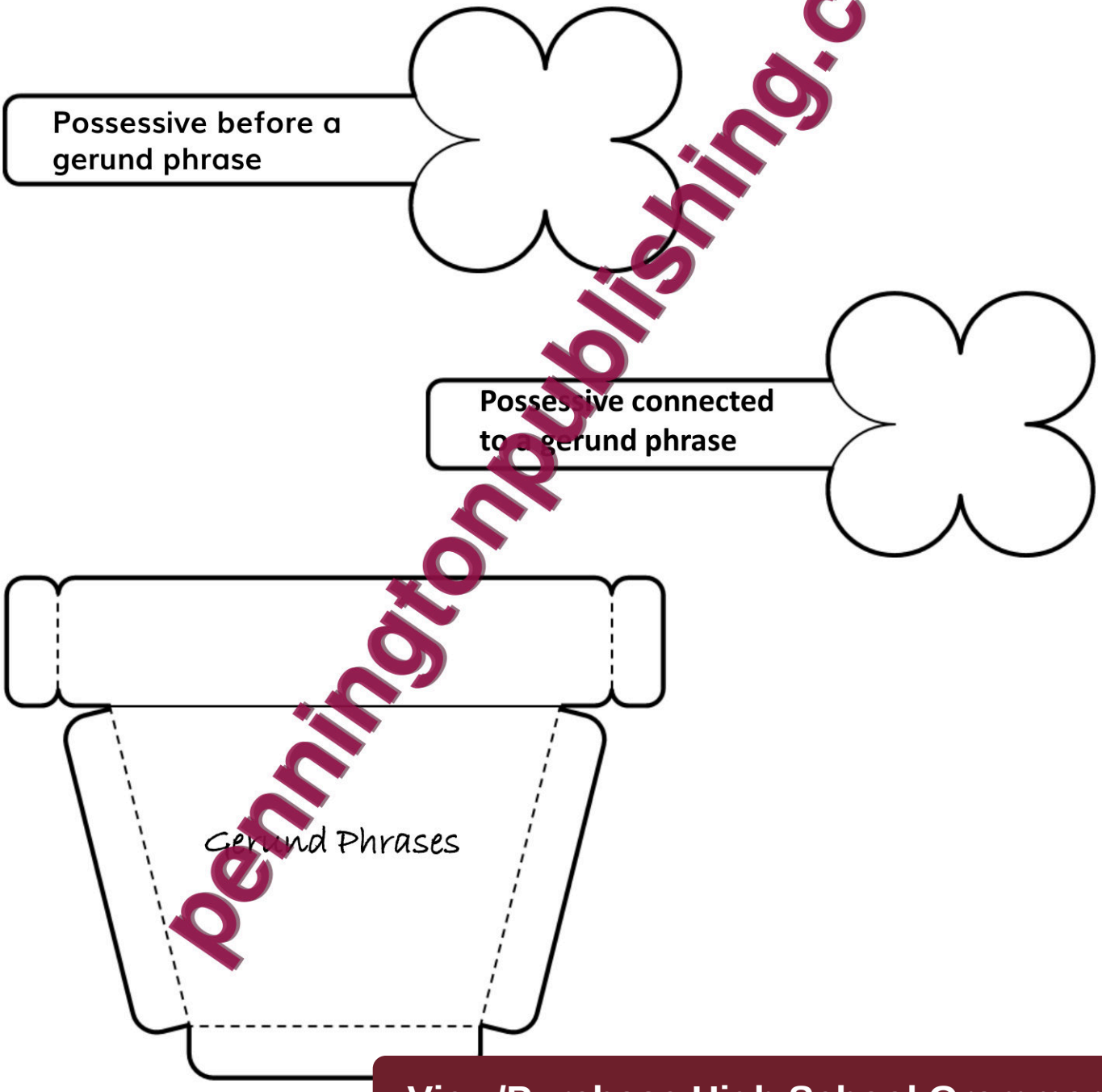
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences on the back of the flowers, using these types of gerund phrases, and plant them in your flower pot.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
A dependent clause *depends* upon being connected to an independent clause to form a complex sentence. As a matter of writing style, avoid stringing together more than two dependent clauses.	Remember to place a comma after a dependent clause that begins a sentence. Also place commas before and after a dependent clause in the middle of the sentence. Don't place a comma before a dependent clause that ends a sentence. **Examples:** After I sneeze, I blow my nose. I blow my nose, after I sneeze, and then I cough. I blow my nose after I sneeze.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Use a personal pronoun, not a reflexive pronoun after prepositions which show location or position. **Examples:** I walked beside her. NOT I walked beside herself.	Reflexive pronouns end in "self" or "selves" and refer to the subject of a sentence. The reflexive pronoun cannot serve as the subject of the sentence. Reflexive pronouns are necessary to the meaning of the sentence and usually follow verbs or prepositions. **Examples:** Pete gave himself a break and grabbed a cookie for himself. These are the reflexive pronouns: myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself (not hisself), herself, itself, and themselves. Intensive pronouns are used to emphasize subject or object case nouns or pronouns. Unlike reflexive pronouns, removing the intensive pronoun does not change the meaning of the sentence. Intensive pronouns generally follow nouns or pronouns in the sentence and are not separated by commas. These pronouns take the same form as reflexive pronouns Example: He himself had never studied for a test. The two reciprocal pronouns, *each other* and *one another*, are used to describe the same action shared by two or more things or people. Usually, *each other* is used to refer to two people; *one another* is used to refer to more than two people. **Examples:** Jenna, Rosie, and Tanya love one another. Leo and Viktor irritate each other.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Before I leave I'll need to eat. Unless Paul releases the rope, you will have to stay where you are.

Before I leave, I'll need to eat. Unless Paul releases the rope, you will have to stay where you are.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I enjoy playing guitar, even if I don't practice enough and I'm not that talented.

I enjoy playing guitar, even if I don't practice enough, and I'm not that talented.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The cat crawled away, despite the fact that she was severely injured.

The cat crawled away despite the fact that she was severely injured.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the reflexive pronouns:

Alexa asked herself if she were ready to make the commitment for herself.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the intensive pronouns:

They themselves signed up for the class, but she herself did not.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Ariel, Misty, and Jillian do enjoy each other's company.

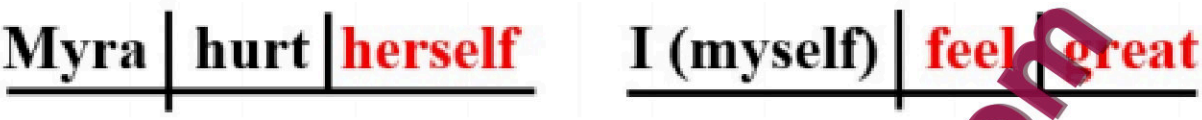
Ariel, Misty, and Jillian do enjoy one another's company.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Intensive pronouns are placed within parentheses following the subjects or objects. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "great," "feel," and "herself."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"And since you know you cannot see yourself,
so well as by reflection, I, your glass,
will modestly discover to yourself,
that of yourself which you yet know not of."
William Shakespeare (the famous poet and playwright)
(1564–1616)

The quotation includes a clever use of reflexive pronouns. Explain the author's meaning, using a reflexive, intensive, or reciprocal pronoun.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write the sentences with commas in the proper locations:

Unless you remind me, I just won't remember. I don't mean to forget, but I do, and your whiningdoesn't help despite the fact that you continue to do so.

Grammar and Usage – Write these sentences correctly:
Pete hurt hisself during the game. I myself sat out with an injury.
The two teams play well against one another, but they all enjoy playing each other.

Pete hurt himself during the game. I myself sat out with an injury. The two teams play well against each other, but they all enjoy playing one another.

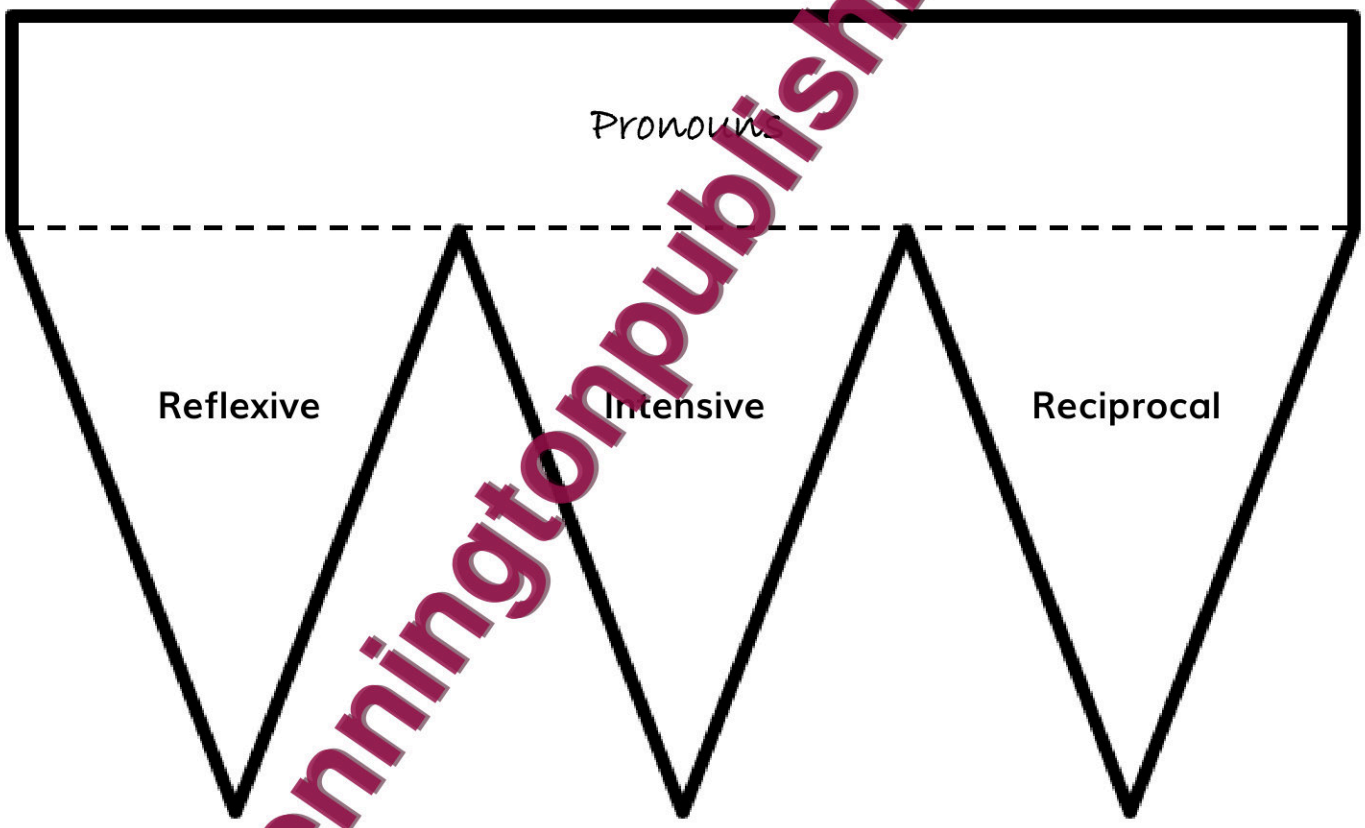
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Transition words in writing are followed by commas. Check out this list of writing transition words: http://bit.ly/2q58UgE You may also want to use the transition words lesson plan in this post.	Place commas following transitions or contrasts at the beginning of a sentence. **Examples:** Additionally, the students cleaned the classroom. However, they did not vacuum. Place commas before and after parenthetical expressions used in the middle of a sentence or before a parenthetical expression used at the end of a sentence. **Example:** The dinosaurs, scientists think, died out due to climate change.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
This is a story about four people named **Everybody**, **Somebody**, **Anybody**, and **Nobody**. An important job needed to be done and Everybody was sure that Somebody would do it. Anybody could do it, but Nobody did it. Somebody was angry about that, because it was Everybody's job. Everybody thinks Anybody could do it, but Nobody realizes that Everybody will not do it. In the end Everybody blames Somebody when Nobody does what Anybody could do.	An indefinite pronoun does not refer to a specific noun. Indefinite pronouns ending in "_body" or "_one" are singular. **Examples**: Anybody is welcome. Everyone works hard. These indefinite pronouns are plural: *both*, *few*, *many*, and *several*. Indefinite pronouns that express quantity or measurement may be singular or plural depending upon the surrounding word clues. **Examples**: all, any, half, more, most, none, other, and some

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Furthermore, the movie was not over. Although you could have waited for me.

Furthermore, the movie was not over although you could have waited for me.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: Moreover I could have won probably if I wanted to do so. However, I did not.

Moreover, I could have won, probably, if I wanted to do so. However, I did not.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the indefinite pronouns:

Everybody is here, but no one is there.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the indefinite pronouns: All are helping the teacher, but few seems to know what they are doing.

All are helping the teacher, but few seem to know what they are doing.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the indefinite pronouns: Several remains behind the curtain, but everyone takes a bow at the end of the performance.

Several remain behind the curtain, but everyone takes a bow at the end of the performance.

6. Re-write these sentences and underline the indefinite pronouns: Half of them show up for all of my parties. None of the class help clean up the mess afterwards.

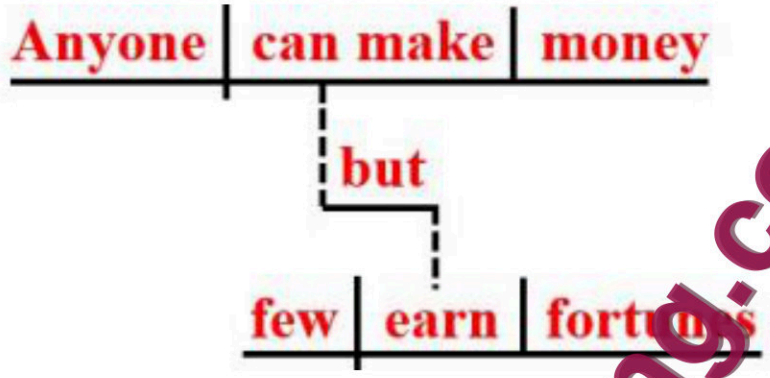
Half of them show up for all of my parties. None of the class helps clean up the mess afterwards.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Indefinite pronouns can serve as subjects and objects in sentences. Complete the sentence diagram: "Anyone can make money, but few earn fortunes."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"All would live long, but none would be old."
Benjamin Franklin (one of our nation's founders)
(1706–1790)

The quotation includes indefinite pronouns to generalize the author's comment. Explain Franklin's point, using at least one indefinite pronoun.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

Additionally, the Golden Gate Bridge is painted year-round. In fact, some argue that it looks orange, not gold.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: Everybody is here and ready to go. Any of this candy are tasty as are all of these desserts.

Everybody is here and ready to go.
Any of this candy is tasty as are all of these desserts.

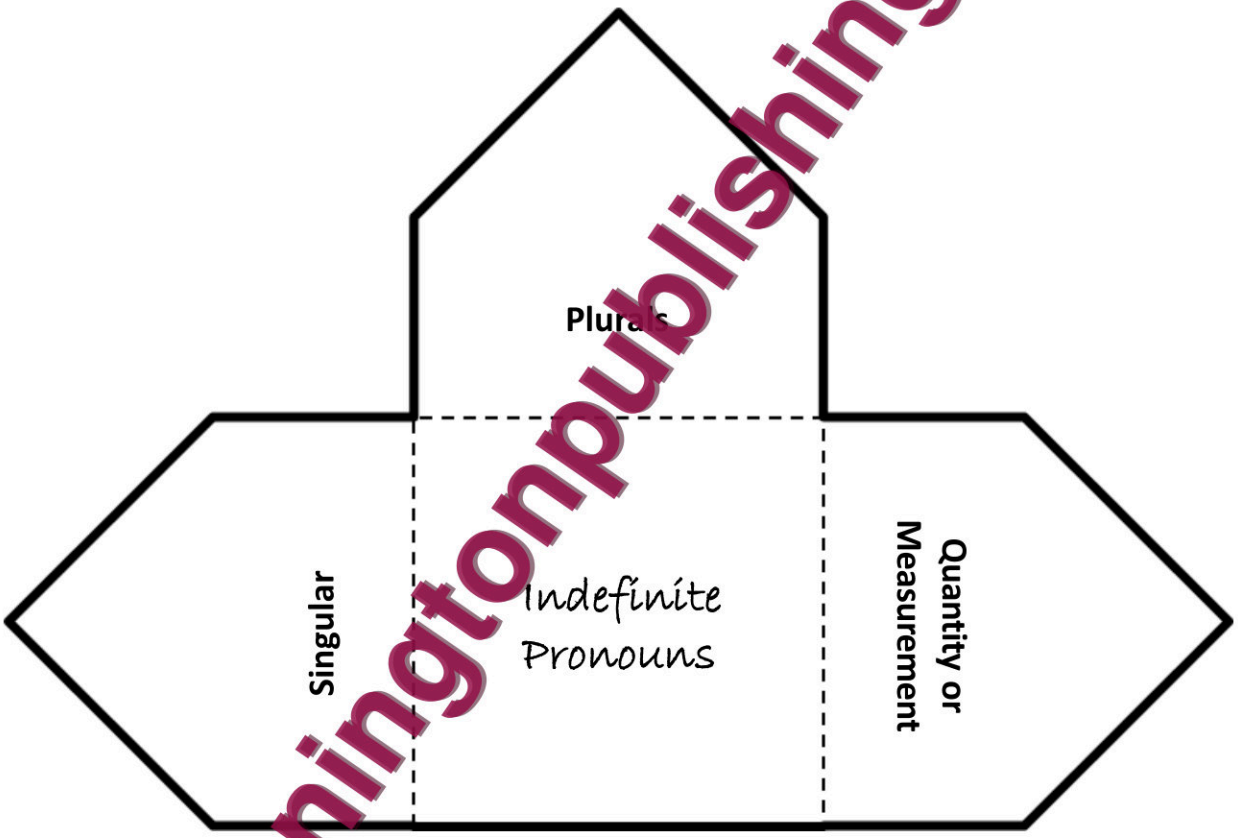
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write three examples for each type of indefinite pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Coordinate Adjectives Limerick When writing a series of adjectives, Think *and* between each and reverse The adjective order and if they sound fine, Use commas between every time.	To determine whether adjectives are coordinate adjectives, try placing the word *and* between the adjectives. Second, try reversing them. If, the phrases sound fine both ways, the adjectives are coordinate adjectives and require commas between each. **Example:** A large, angry dog

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
A phrase or clause between the subject and predicate does not change the number of the antecedent. **Examples** **Correct:** A bowl of peanuts sits by itself on the coffee table. **Incorrect:** A bowl of peanuts sits by themselves on the coffee table. **Explanation:** The *bowl* is a singular subject and antecedent. It is not made plural by adding "of peanuts" between the subject and predicate.	A pronoun must clearly and specifically refer to just one noun or pronoun (the antecedent). Generally, the pronoun refers to the noun or pronoun immediately before the pronoun. **Example:** I listen to my teacher (the antecedent) and follow her (the pronoun) advice. To avoid pronoun antecedent problems: 1. Keep pronouns close to their references or use synonyms. 2. Don't have a pronoun refer to the object of a prepositional phrase. **Example:** The box *of pencils* was found in *their* place. **Revision:** The *box* of pencils was found in *its* place. 3. Don't have a pronoun refer to a possessive antecedent. **Example**: Are *theirs* the best cookies? They certainly are. **Revision:** Are their *cookies* the best? They certainly are.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Bill jumped into the large, deep, swimming pool.

Bill jumped into the large, deep swimming pool.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: She wore a green silk scarf over her black, v-neck sweater.

She wore a green silk scarf over her black v-neck sweater.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Let's order a pizza with red peppers, black olives and ranch dressing.

Let's order a pizza with red peppers, black olives, and ranch dressing.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The company of soldiers was lined up in their proper position.

The company of soldiers was lined up in its proper position.

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: Are theirs the dark chocolate bars? They might be.

Options: Are the dark chocolate bars theirs? The chocolate bars might be theirs. They might be their dark chocolate bars.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: The ants' hill was next to the fence post, but I still had to paint it.

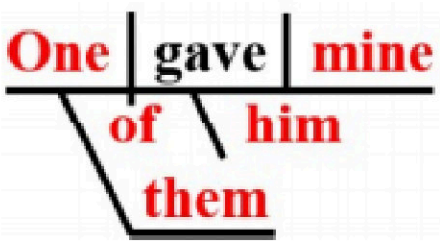
The ants' hill was next to the fence post, but I still had to paint the fence.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise the pronoun antecedent problem and Complete the sentence diagram by using a proper noun to refer to the object of the prepositional phrase: "One of them gave him mine."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Cleanliness and order are not matters of instinct; they are matters of education, and like most great things, you must cultivate a taste for them."

Benjamin Disraeli (the Nineteen Century British Prime Minister) (1804–1881)

The quotation includes properly matched pronoun antecedents and clever pronoun placement. Respond to the author's point, using a properly matched pronoun and antecedent.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

James hopes it will be a sunny, bright, and warm day after today's cold March wind.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: If the children don't eat the ice cream bars, put them back in the freezer.

If the children don't eat the ice cream bars, put the ice cream (bars) back in the freezer.

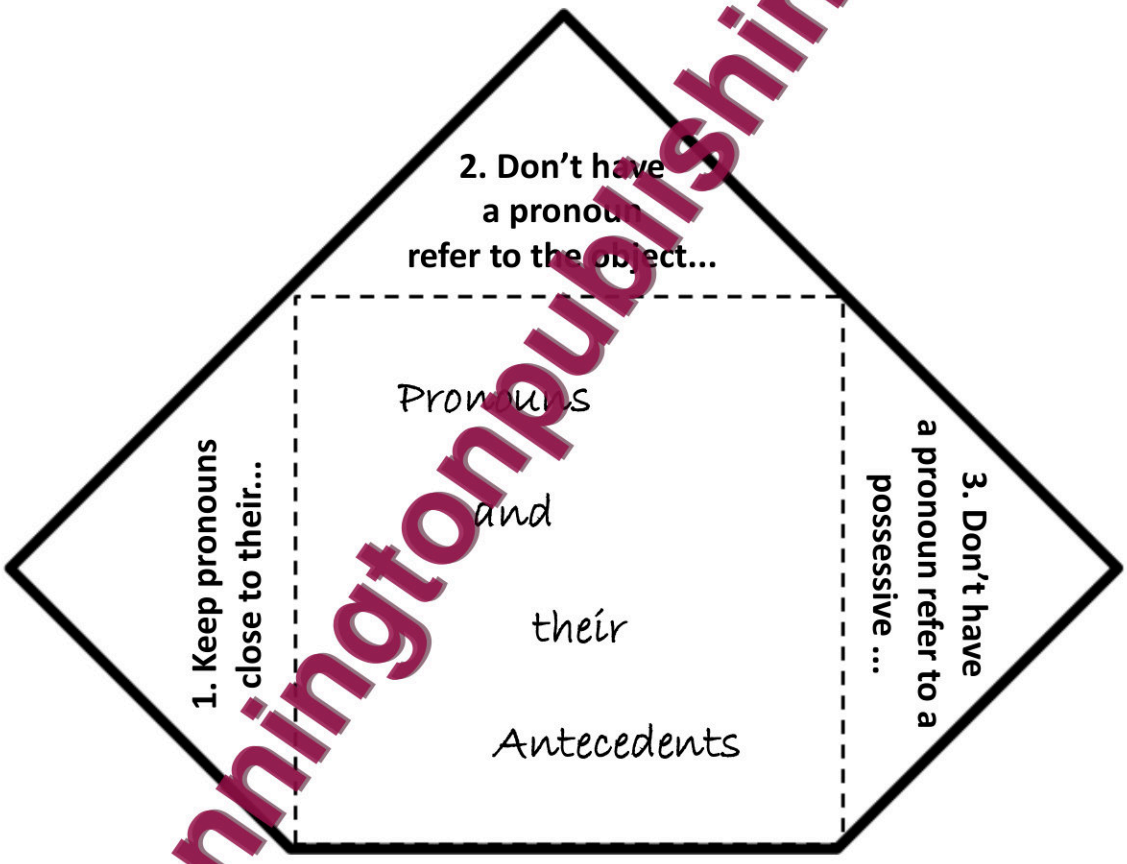
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Finish the sentences on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Hierarchical Adjectives Limerick When writing a series of adjectives, Think *and* between each and reverse The adjective order and if they sound bad, Commas you should never add.	Hierarchical adjectives build upon each other with different levels or degrees to modify the same noun. Hierarchical adjectives are not separated by commas. If the adjectives make no sense when placing the word *and* between them or reversing their order, the adjectives are hierarchical. **Example:** Let's order a hot thick-crust sausage pizza.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Grammarians have two basic views about language. The traditional view is that grammar consists of a set of consistent rules. The other view is that grammar is flexible and changeable. These views of grammar differ regarding usage of the *their* possessive. The traditional grammarian would argue that because *their* is a plural possessive, it can only refer to or replace plural nouns. Those grammarians holding the other view would argue that because there is no singular possessive pronoun which isn't gender specific, the *their* is permissible to refer to or replace singular nouns.	A personal pronoun must match singular pronouns to singular nouns or pronouns and plural pronouns to plural nouns or pronouns. **Example:** Julie (She) has ~~their~~ own style. **Revision:** Julie (She) has her own style. Often number errors are made when trying to avoid gender-specific pronouns. Revise by making the antecedent nouns plural. **Example:** The ~~student~~ ate their lunch. **Revision:** The students ate their lunches. Or revise the sentence without the pronouns. **Revision:** The students ate lunch. A personal pronoun must also be in the same person as its antecedent. Pronouns are in the first, second, or third person. Revise pronoun person problems by matching the pronoun person to its antecedent. **Example:** Julie (She) has ~~your~~ own style. **Revision:** Julie (She) has her own style.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lois was a smart, happy woman, but she was the worst dressed, employee at her workplace.

Lois was a smart, happy woman, but she was the worst dressed employee at her workplace.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The band concert was well-attended, crowd-pleasing, fun and as good as the last, spring concert.

The band concert was well-attended, crowd-pleasing, fun, and just as good as the last spring concert.

3. Re-write this sentence to avoid using the gender pronoun by changing the singular pronoun antecedent to a plural noun: Everybody in class has his own ideas about the party.

Students have their own ideas about the party.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly by removing the pronoun reference: Parents should pick up her fundraising packets after school.

Parents should pick up fundraising packets after school.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Anyone should know your solo part by now.

Options: Everyone should know (his, her, his or her) part by now. All should know their parts by now. You should know your part by now.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Robert has their own ideas about decorating his room.

Robert has his own ideas about decorating his room.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Personal pronouns serve as subjects or objects. Complete the sentence diagram: "They should tell him their problems."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"But we in our green youth have to settle the eternal questions first of all. That's what we care about."

Fyodor Dostoyevsky (a Russian novelist and essayist)
(1821–1881)

This quotation includes a pronoun number shift to change a plural into a singular idea. Respond to the author's statement with at least two pronouns, matching in number and person.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

She wore a navy blue top to match the coat of her tall, dark, and handsome husband.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: People should help theirselves. Each doctor should send his nurses to the conference.

People should help themselves. Doctors should send the nurses to the c

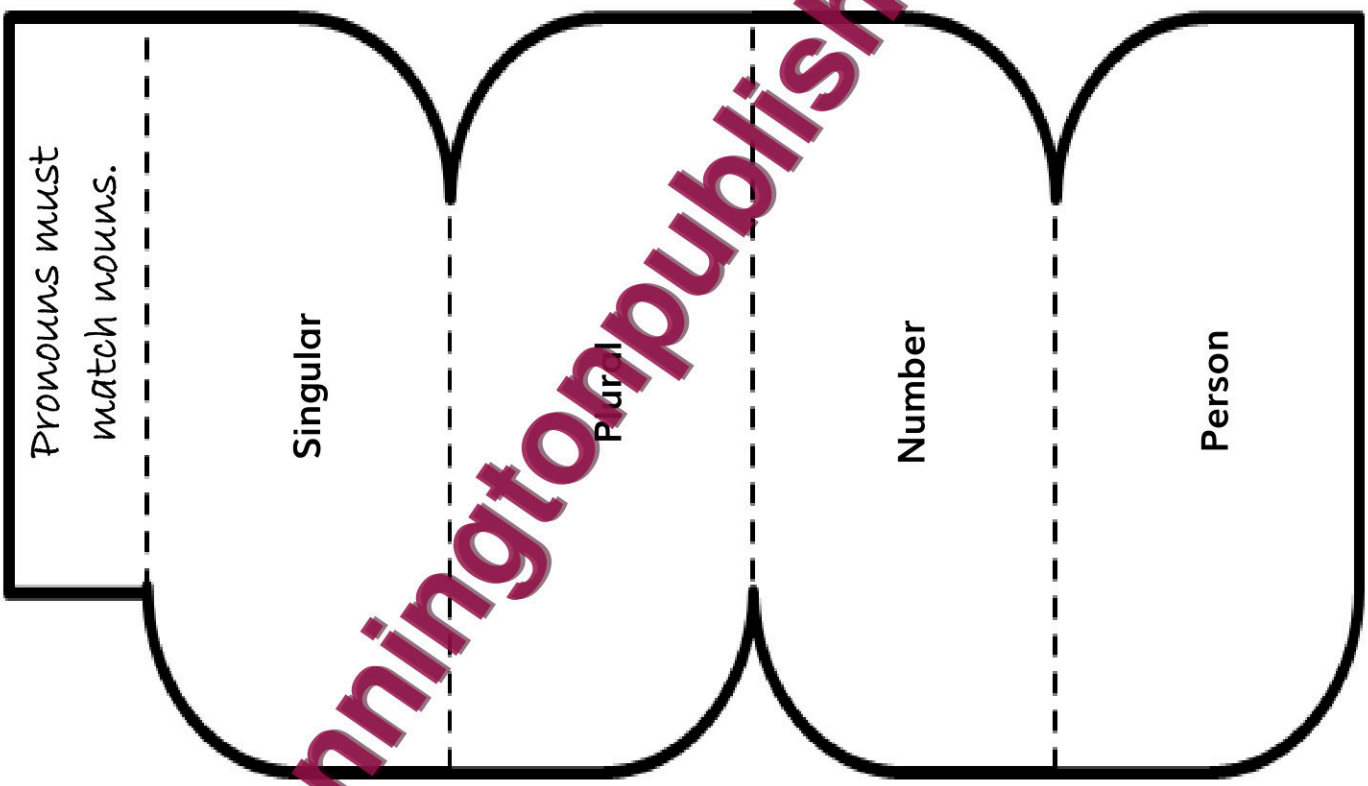
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences for each type of pronoun on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Most writers use commas for appositives in formal writing, such as in essays.	An appositive is a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase that identifies or explains another noun or pronoun before or after it. If the appositive is non-essential to the meaning of the sentence, commas, parentheses, or dashes are used to signal and separate this identification or explanation. **Examples:** **An actress, Marta, knew how to cry. Jane (the girl with red hair) acted childishly.** If the appositive is essential to the meaning of the sentence, no punctuation is used. **Example:** **The U.S. president Ronald Reagan died in 1989.**
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
The *this* and *these* demonstrative pronouns refer to an object within an arm's reach. The *that* and *those* demonstrative pronouns refer to an object beyond an arm's reach.	Four types of vague pronoun references have pronouns which do *not* clearly identify their antecedents: 1. Demonstrative pronouns (*this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*) are used on their own without a clear location. Revise by adding a noun following the pronoun. **Example**: ~~**That is beautiful.**~~ **That painting is beautiful.** 2. More than one antecedent could match the pronoun. Revise by repeating the noun. **Example**: ~~**Dishes were on the tables, but we didn't need them.**~~ **Dishes were on the tables, but we didn't need the dishes.** 3. The antecedent is an adjective. Revise by changing the antecedent from an adjective to a noun. **Example**: ~~**I called Jesse's office but no one answered.**~~ **I called Jesse at his office, but he did not answer.** 4. The pronoun has no antecedent. Revise by adding the antecedent. **Example**: ~~**Although he was extremely rich, he didn't spend it.**~~ **Although he had money, he didn't spend it.**
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The gentleman the one in the black raincoat, waited outside of the store.
The gentleman, the one in the black raincoat, waited outside of the store.
2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Myra Bannecker (the famous) English ballerina performed for the queen.
Myra Bannecker (the famous English ballerina) performed for the queen.
3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The rock star, Bruce Springsteen sold out three concerts.
The rock star, Bruce Springsteen, sold out three concerts.
4. Re-write this sentence correctly: I love art galleries, especially paintings. This seems to be from the Italian artists.
I love art galleries, especially paintings. These paintings seem (or This painting seems) to be from the Italian artists.
5. Re-write this sentence correctly: The books were already on the students' desks, but we didn't need them.
The books were already on the students' desks, but we didn't need the books.
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: I asked to speak to Maribel's father, but she would not talk to me.
I asked to speak to Maribel's father, but he would not talk to me.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence diagram by adding a noun or pronoun: "This fits those screws."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Anyone who goes to a psychiatrist ought to have his head examined."

Samuel Goldwyn (a motion picture producer and studio executive)
(1882–1974)

The quotation includes a vague pronoun for comedic effect. Explain the humor in this remark, using a properly matched pronoun and antecedent.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Re-write the sentence, underline the appositives, and punctuate correctly:

The store sold me the bike that I did not want. My brother, Joe, took it back.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: Please get your paper out of your backpack and pass it forward.

Please get your paper out of your backpack and pass the homework forward.

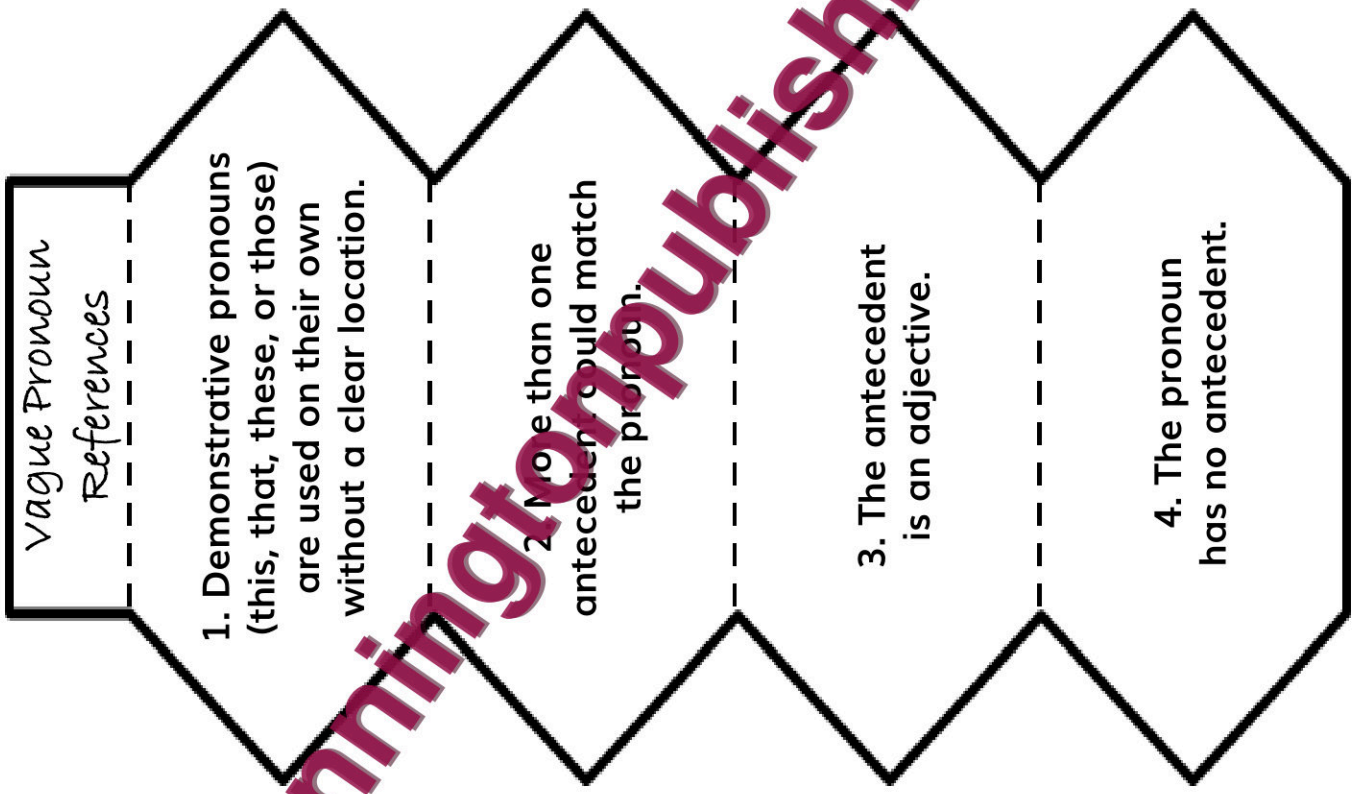
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these types of vague pronoun references, on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	The relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *which*, but not *that*, begin nonrestrictive relative clauses. Use commas to set off nonrestrictive relative clauses from the noun or pronoun before the clause. **Example:** The girl, who sits in the corner, is sleepy.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
The resource above has additional examples of nonrestrictive relative clauses.	Nonrestrictive relative clauses serve as adjectives to modify the preceding noun or pronoun, but they do *not* limit, restrict, or define the meaning of that noun or pronoun. The clause could be removed without changing the basic meaning of the sentence. The relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *which*, but not *that*, begin nonrestrictive relative clauses. The *who* is a subject case pronoun and refers to a specific person. **Example**: The girl, who works here, is helpful. The *whom* is an object case pronoun and also refers to a specific person. **Example**: The baby, whom I take care of, acts so cute. The *whose* is a possessive case pronoun. **Example**: The man, whose watch is gold, asked me for. The *which* pronoun refers to a specific thing. **Example**: The chair, which reclines, is comfortable.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The teacher whose article was published in the New York Times, was thrilled.

The teacher, whose article was published in the New York Times, was thrilled.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: That chocolate layer cake, which I want to order is delicious.

That chocolate layer cake, which I want to order, is delicious.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Joshua and Curtis whom we know, plan on leaving as soon as the show is over.

Joshua and Curtis, whom we know, plan on leaving as soon as the show is over.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girl, whose would not stop talking, sat down right behind us in the movie theater.

The girl, who would not stop talking, sat down right behind us in the movie theater.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: The boy, which liked the red-haired girl, was the one who arrived early but left late.

The boy, who liked the red-haired girl, was the one who arrived early but left late.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: That man, who left town, who went to Chile, and which disappeared, is back.

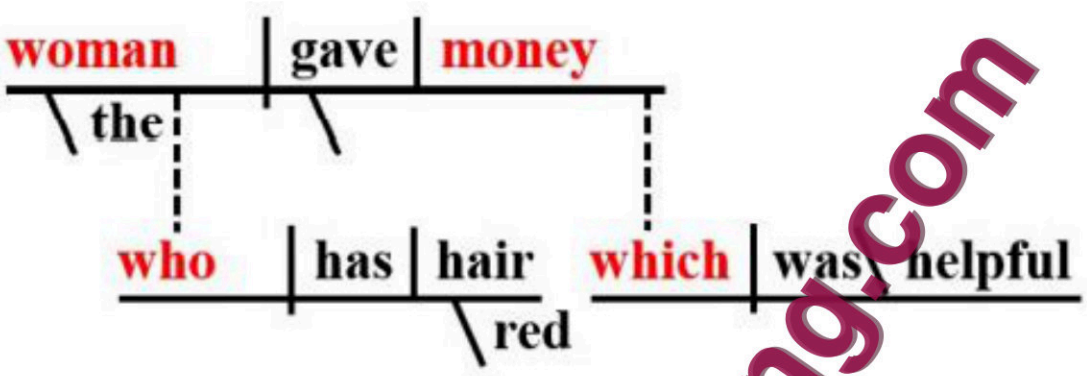
That man, who left town, who went to Chile, and who disappeared, is back.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Relative clauses are connected to subjects and objects by vertical dotted lines. Complete the sentence diagram: "The woman who has red hair gave him money, which was helpful."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Roger Chillingworth made his advent to the town... What could he, whose sphere was in great cities, be seeking in the wilderness?"

Nathaniel Hawthorne (the author of *The Scarlet Letter*)
(1804–1864)

The quotation includes a nonrestrictive clause to contrast the two locations. Write a sentence, contrasting two locations, in which you use a different relative pronoun to begin each nonrestrictive clause.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly: The store sold me the bike that I did not want.

The store sold me the bike, which I did not want.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: That man, which is funny, told a joke about our town.

That man, who is funny, told a joke about our town.

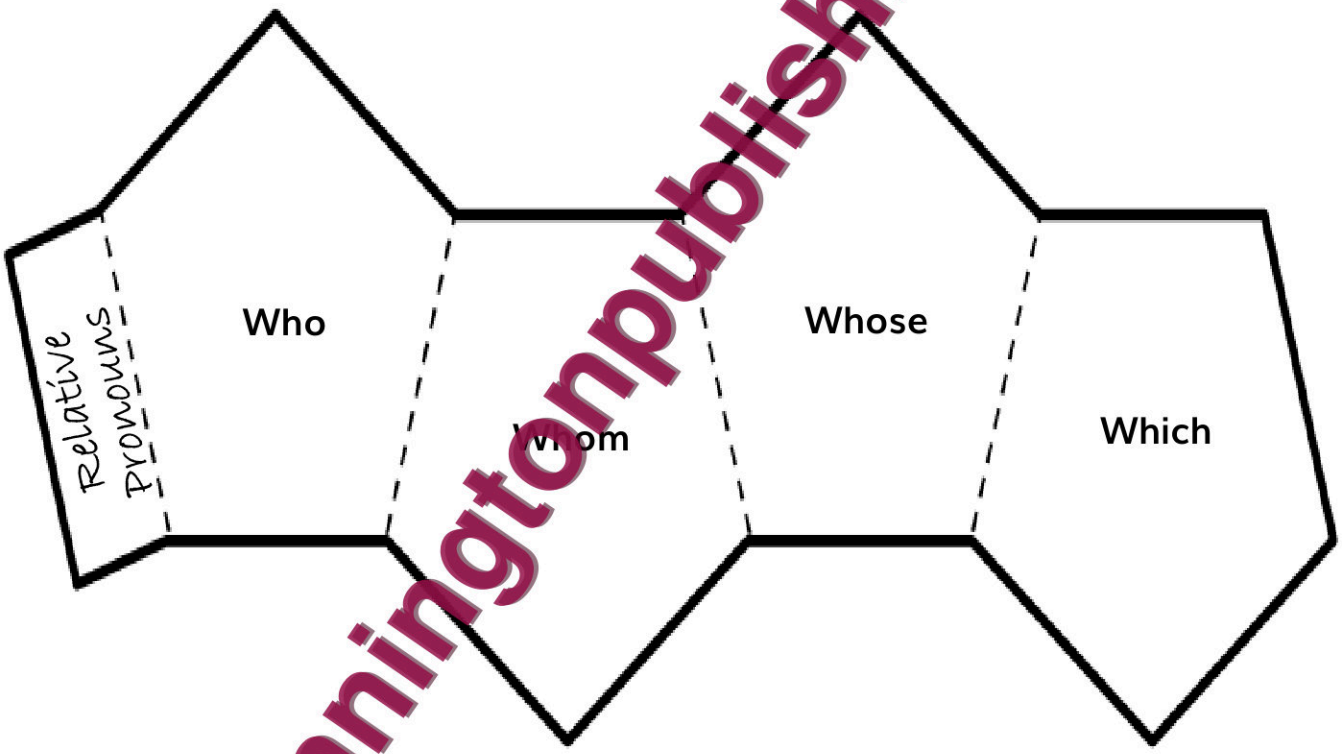
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write an example sentence, using nonrestrictive clauses for each relative pronoun, on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	The relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *that*, but not *which* introduce restrictive clauses. Do *not* use commas, dashes, or parentheses between nouns and relative pronouns. **Examples:** The girl that dropped the dollar is looking for it.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
The resource above has additional examples of restrictive relative clauses. The *who* is a subject case pronoun and acts upon a verb. The *whom* is an object case pronoun and receives the action of the verb.	Restrictive relative clauses serve as adjectives following a noun to limit, restrict, or define the meaning of that noun. The clause could *not* be removed without affecting the basic meaning of the sentence. A restrictive relative clause begins with the relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *that*, but not *which*. The *who* refers to a specific person or group of people. **Example**: Students who study will pass the test. The *whom* is an object case pronoun and also refers to a specific person. **Example**: The girl whom I like sits next to me. The *whose* is a possessive case pronoun. **Example**: People whose jobs are boring have my sympathies. The *that* refers to things or people in general. **Example**: I like a lemonade that is not too sweet.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The child, who sits up front needs your help.

The child who sits up front needs your help.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: A medal that I won in second grade, was for second place.

A medal that I won in second grade was for second place.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The student who's house was destroyed in the flood came back to school today.

The student whose house was destroyed in the flood came back to school today.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The mean waiter which served us was also rude.

The mean waiter who served us was also rude.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: My friend who we all know is ill.

My friend whom we all know is ill.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: No team which I like is playing tonight.

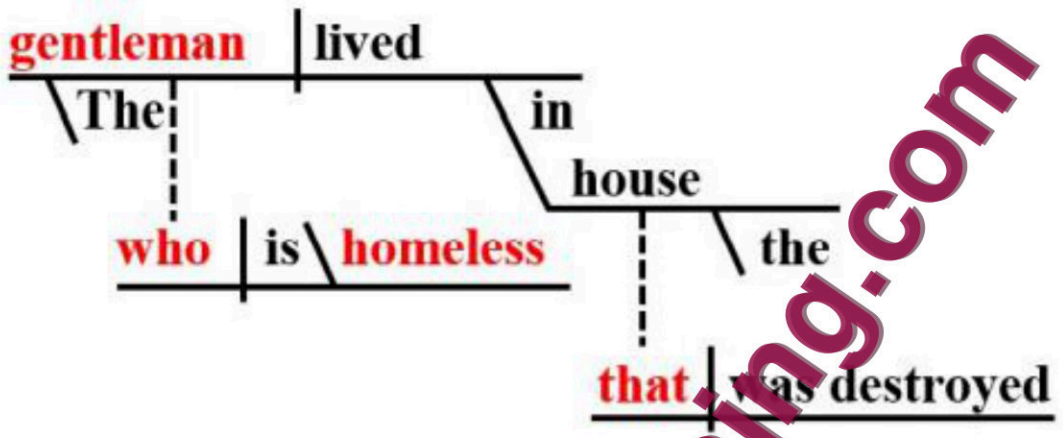
No team that I like is playing tonight.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Relative clauses are connected to subjects and objects by vertical dotted lines. Complete the sentence diagram: "The gentleman who is homeless lived in the house that was destroyed."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"A flatterer is a friend who is your inferior, or pretends to be so."

Aristotle (the Greek philosopher and scientist)
(384 B.C.–322 B.C.)

The quotation includes a restrictive clause to define the subject. Explain what the author means, using a different relative pronoun to begin a restrictive clause.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly: Class bullies which make fun of others, are cruel. The author who's story I just finished won a prize.

Class bullies who make fun of others are cruel.
The author whose story I just finished won a prize.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: The Smiths which I've met are a nice family.

The Smiths whom I've met are a nice family.

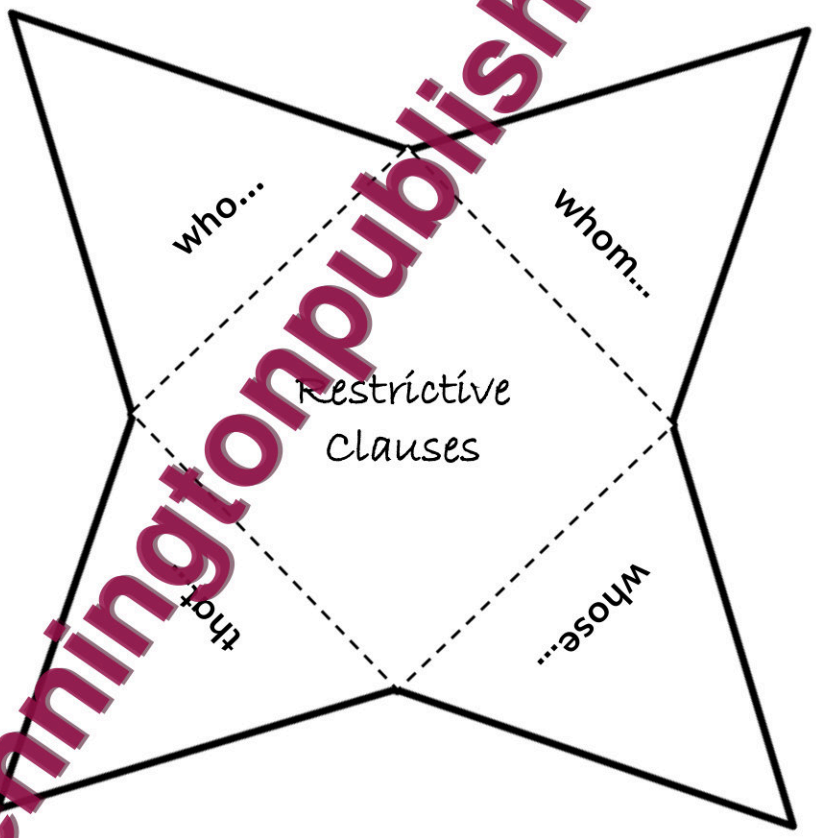
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write an example sentence, using restrictive clauses for each relative pronoun, on the back of the flaps.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
When one person's speech continues for more than one paragraph, place quotation marks to begin the dialogue at the beginning of each paragraph. However, do not use closing quotation marks until the end of the final paragraph in which that person is speaking. "---------- ---------- ---------- "---------- ---------- ---------- "---------- ---------- ---------- ---"	When using dialogue or a direct quotation, the first word of a complete sentence must be capitalized, even if it is in the middle of a sentence. **Example:** Ray did say, "We saw it." Dialogue and direct quotations are not capitalized if they are only part of a sentence. **Example:** I do believe him that it "was the best solution to our problems." Both parts of a divided quotation are enclosed within quotation marks. The first word of the second part is not capitalized unless it begins a new sentence. **Example:** "This book," my mother said, "is good."

Resources	Parts of Speech Notes
A predicate adjective is not a direct object because it does not answer For what? of For whom? of the verb. A predicate nominative re-names the sentence subject. **Example:** He is James.	An adjective that follows a linking verb to describe a preceding noun or pronoun is called a *predicate adjective*. **Example:** Mark is nice and he looks good. Because predicate adjectives serve as objects, they often include modifiers to form adjectival phrases. An adjectival phrase consists of more than one adjective and a connected noun or pronoun that acts as a single part of speech. **Example:** He is energetic like the Engergizer Bunny™.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Ray did say, "they left early."

Ray did say, "They left early."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I should have guessed that it "Had to happen that way."

I should have guessed that it "had to happen that way."

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: "That movie, my aunt said, was really scary."

"That movie," my aunt said, "was really scary."

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the predicate adjectives in these sentences:

Suzanne is beautiful and she is kind-hearted. Tom, however, seems mean and self-centered.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the predicate adjectives in these sentences:

Something smells funny and it's not my cooking. He appears qualified, but I have my doubts.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectival phrases in these sentences:

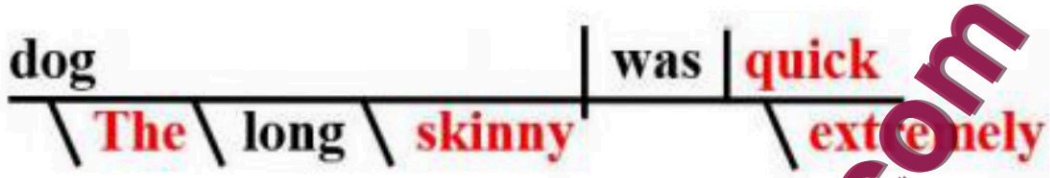
Our teacher was a perfect role model. She was a true mentor to her students.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Predicate adjectives are placed in the object position after the second vertical line.
Complete the sentence diagram: "The long skinny dog was extremely quick."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"A friend is one before whom I may think aloud."
Ralph Waldo Emerson (the Nineteenth Century author and essayist)
(1803–1882)

The quotation includes a predicate adjective to define its subject. Explain the author's meaning, using a predicate adjective.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

I argued, "Nothing has changed," and then I explained, "when you look at the results."

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and underline the predicate adjectives: A few questions seemed difficult, but most were easy.

A few questions seemed difficult, but most were easy.

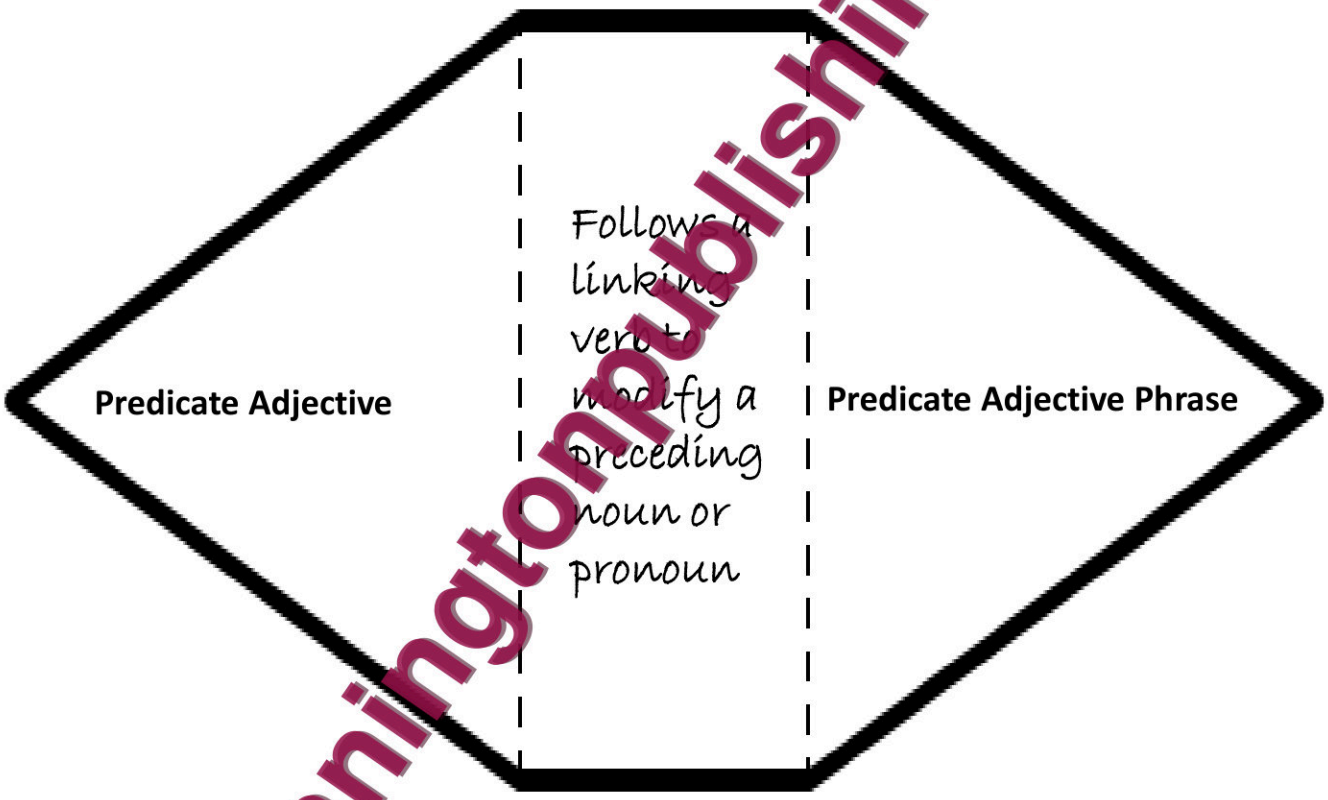
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples of the predicate adjective and predicate adjective phrase on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Question marks go inside (to the left of) the quotation marks if they are part of the quoted sentence, but outside (to the right of) the quotation marks if you, the writer, ask a question about the quotation. **Examples:** Did the writer say, "No, I won't"? "Is it mine?" she asked.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
English has many irregular past participles. Print off this resource for students who struggle with these irregular past participles: http://bit.ly/2pXinvq.	When used as a verb form, a regular past participle consists of a linking or helping verb, which determines the verb tense, + the base form of a verb + an "__ed" ending. The past participle indicates a completed action. **Examples:** had formed, is formed However, many past participles end in "__d," "__t," or "__en." **Examples:** has said, were built, have given A past participle can also function as an adjective to indicate a condition with or without a linking or helping verb. **Example:** Interested, the boy paid close attention.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Did he say, "Global warming will continue." Did she say, "Humans caused these problems"?

Did he say, "Global warming will continue"? Did she say, "Humans caused these problems"?

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: "Why should we wait"? she asked. His mom complained, "How can we help her"?

"Why should we wait?" she asked. His mom complained, "How can we help her?"

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles:

My dad had swept all the floors and had dusted each of the lampshades.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles:

Has Aunt Jane spoken to you about what the girls have planned to do for her party?

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles:

Proven wrong, he still had insisted on continuing the discussion.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles:

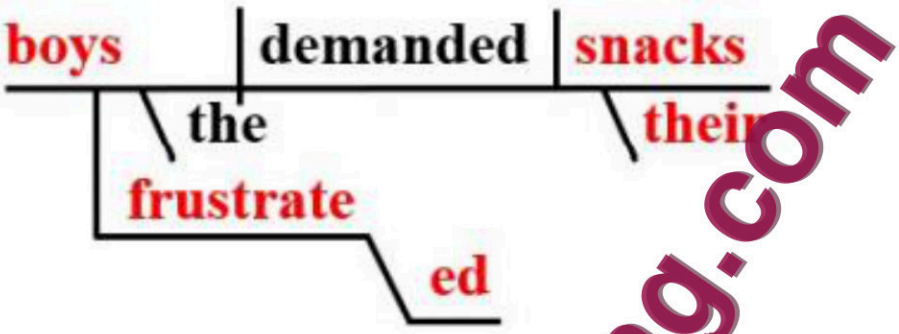
Abandoned, the poor little puppy had slept under the dumpster in the alley.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Participles are placed below the nouns that they modify. Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Frustrated, the boys demanded their snacks."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"However confused the scene of our life appears, however torn we may be who now do face that scene, it can be faced, and we can go on to be whole."

Muriel Rukeyser (an American poet and political activist) (1913–1980)

The quotation includes past participles to create parallelism. Respond to the author's point, using at least two past participles.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

Martha wondered, "Am I invited?" "Did she need to ask"? "That is wild!"

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the past participles:

Frightened, the child had sat down and was given a cup of hot cocoa.

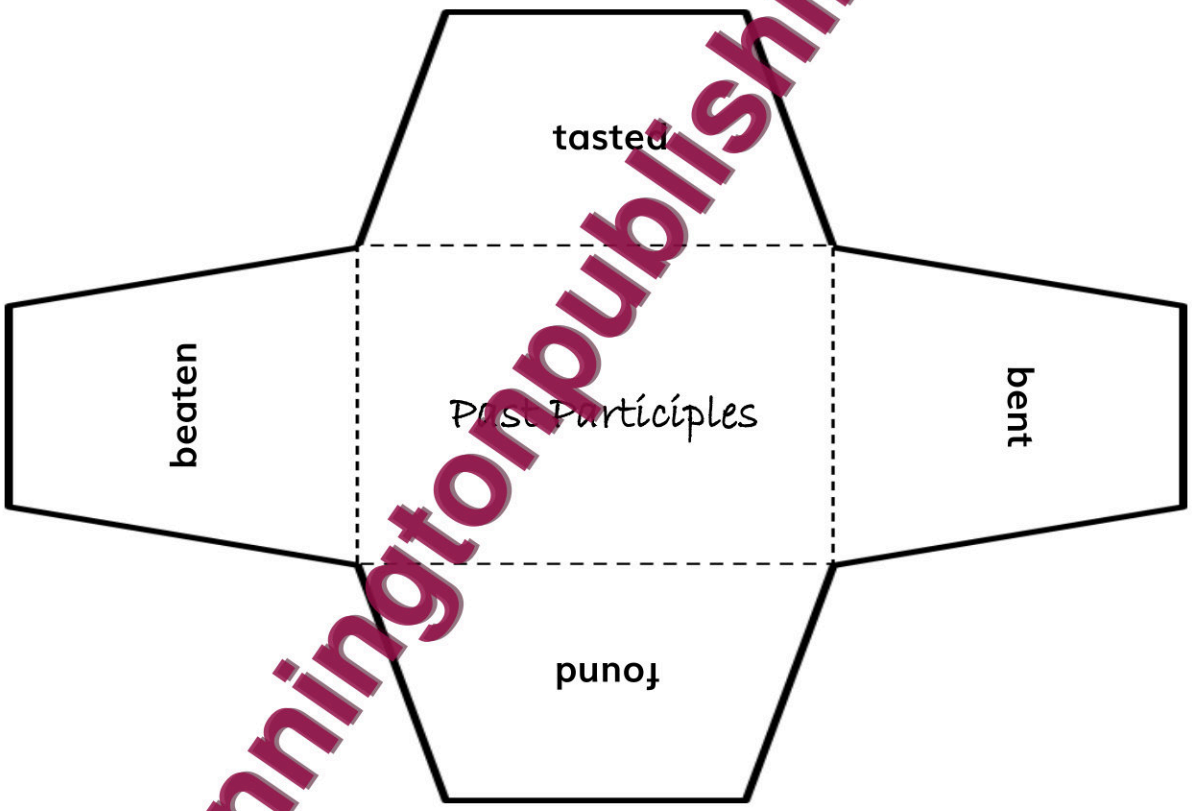
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using each of these past participles, on the back of the flaps



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Don't use ellipses if the shortened version changes the meaning of the quotation. **Examples** **Correct :** "We the people... do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America." **Incorrect:** "We the people... do ordain and establish... the United States of America."	An ellipsis is punctuated as three periods (...) and is used in direct quotations to delete unnecessary parts of the quotation. The ellipsis is also used as a "thinking pause" in stories. When ending a sentence, don't add on the additional period. Also, add on a space after the ellipsis before the next word or punctuation. **Example:** I gave some thought to this idea... but I never did anything.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Past participial phrases ("_d," "_ed," "_en," and "_t" words) can serve as verbs, but also do double-duty as adjectives. **Examples** Surprised by her brilliant speech, the judges found her talented and accomplished as well.	When used as a verb form, a regular past participial phrase consists of a linking or helping verb + the base form of a verb + and "__ed" ending related words to indicate a completed action. **Examples:** The dress was artfully designed by her sister. The architect had carefully designed the home. However, many past participles end in "__d," "__t," or "__en." **Examples:** I had finally heard from her friend. He had always spent too much. It was secretly taken by her. A past participial phrase can also function as an adjective to indicate a condition with or without a linking or helping verb. **Example:** Developed by the team, the new idea was a hit.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The author claims that "...Over 2,300 refugees died at sea ... " (Crain 23).

The author claims that "...over 2,300 refugees died at sea..." (Crain 23).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: "I've been thinking- We shouldn't judge her too harshly," she said.

"I've been thinking... We shouldn't judge her too harshly," she said.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase:

The workers had carelessly chosen the wrong building materials.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase:

All three children had barely lost in the final round of the spelling bee.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase:

Harry has already said that he doesn't expect to return to school.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase:

Beaten by a lesser team, the Los Angeles Dodgers changed their management.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Sentence diagrams don't apply spelling rules, but the modifiers below the horizontal line do follow the word order of the sentence. Complete the sentence diagram: "Her mistaken identity soon was discovered."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Finally, tired and spent with nothing more to add or fix, it seemed to me its success or failure was out of our hands."

Janet Tiessen (a Canadian musician)
(1951–)

The quotation includes past participial phrases, used as adjectives and verbs. Predict what the object of the author's comments might be, using a past participial phrase.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The Pledge of Allegiance states that the United States is "one nation under God..." That story made me wonder... Do we still respect the flag?

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the past participial phrases:

Hidden in the grass, yet exposed by her red hat, the girl was found quickly.

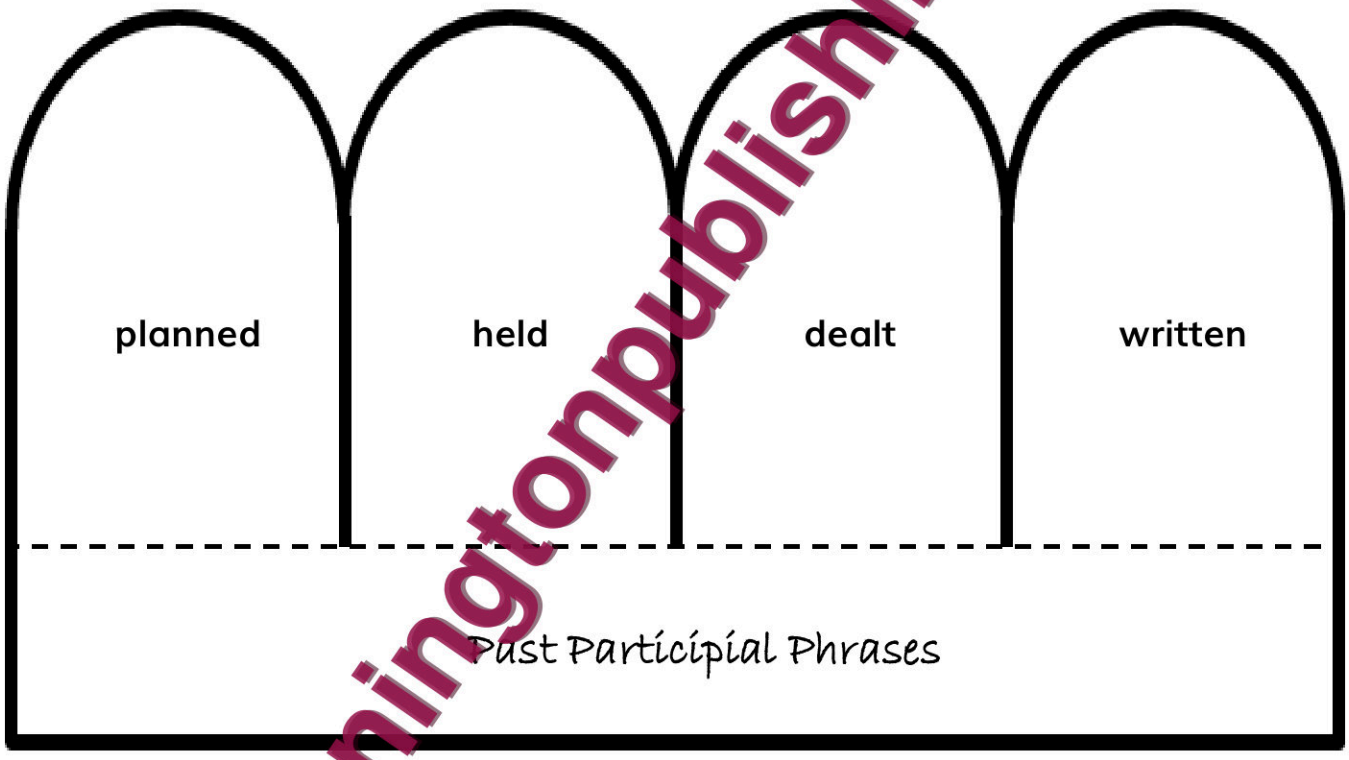
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these past participles, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎	
Resources	**Mechanics Notes**
According to the Oxford Guide to Style, the British place direct quotations within single quotation marks and before commas or periods. **Example:** 'One in ten survived', according to the London Times. The British use double quotation marks for a quotation within a quotation. **Example:** The journal stated, 'The poet's "Sonnet XX" was beloved by all'.	When quotations or quoted titles are placed within quoted speech, use single quotation marks ('__') at the beginning and end of the inside quotations. Use double quotation marks ("__") at the beginning and end of the entire quotation. **Example**: **Bob said, "Do you agree with Beth's statement that 'the case is closed?'"**
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Present participles ("_ing words") can serve as verbs, but also do double-duty as adjectives. **Participles Used as Verbs** The helicopter is just sitting on its pad, but its blades will be whirring into action very soon. **Participles Used as Adjectives** Stunning and captivating, the super model turned every head at the movie premiere.	A present participle adds an "__ing" onto the base form of a verb to indicate a continuous action or condition. A present participle is preceded by a linking verb when used as a verb form. The linking verbs indicate past, present, or future tense. **Examples: *was* watching, *is* watching, or *will be* watching.** A present participle can also function as an adjective with or without a linking verb. **Examples: The puzzling mystery confused us completely.**
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The Pledge of Allegiance states, “Our country is “indivisible, with liberty and justice for all.’”

The “Pledge of Allegiance” states, “Our country is ‘indivisible, with liberty and justice for all.’”

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: “We closed the ceremony by singing ‘America the Beautiful,’ reported the business owner.

“We closed the ceremony by singing ‘America the Beautiful,’” reported the business owner.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: My mom and dad were listened to every word that my brother said.

My mom and dad were listening to every word that my brother said.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: The parents is waiting in the parking lot for the bus to arrive.

The parents are waiting in the parking lot for the bus to arrive.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: We will be asking you earlier for your help.

Options: We will be asking you later for your help. We were asking you earlier for your help.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: Trotted, the horse and rider came into view.

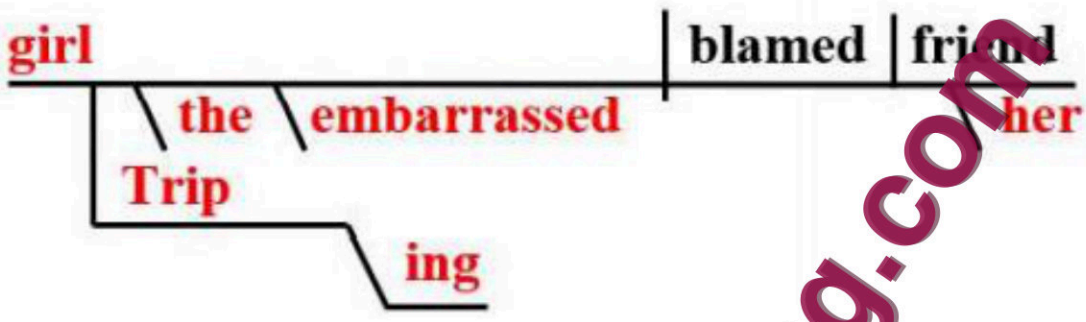
Trotting, the horse and rider came into view.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Tripping, the embarrassed girl blamed her friend."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"As he was wandering about there came upon a Lion lying down moaning and groaning."

Aesop (the famous author of fables)
(620 B.C.–560 B.C.)

The quotation includes present participles used as verbs and adjectives. Continue the narrative with your own present participle.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

"Jefferson meant everyone when he said 'all men are created equal,'" I explained.

Grammar and Usage– Revise this sentence with present participles: Ran, the girl tried to catch up when she fell.

Running, the girl was trying to catch up when she fell.

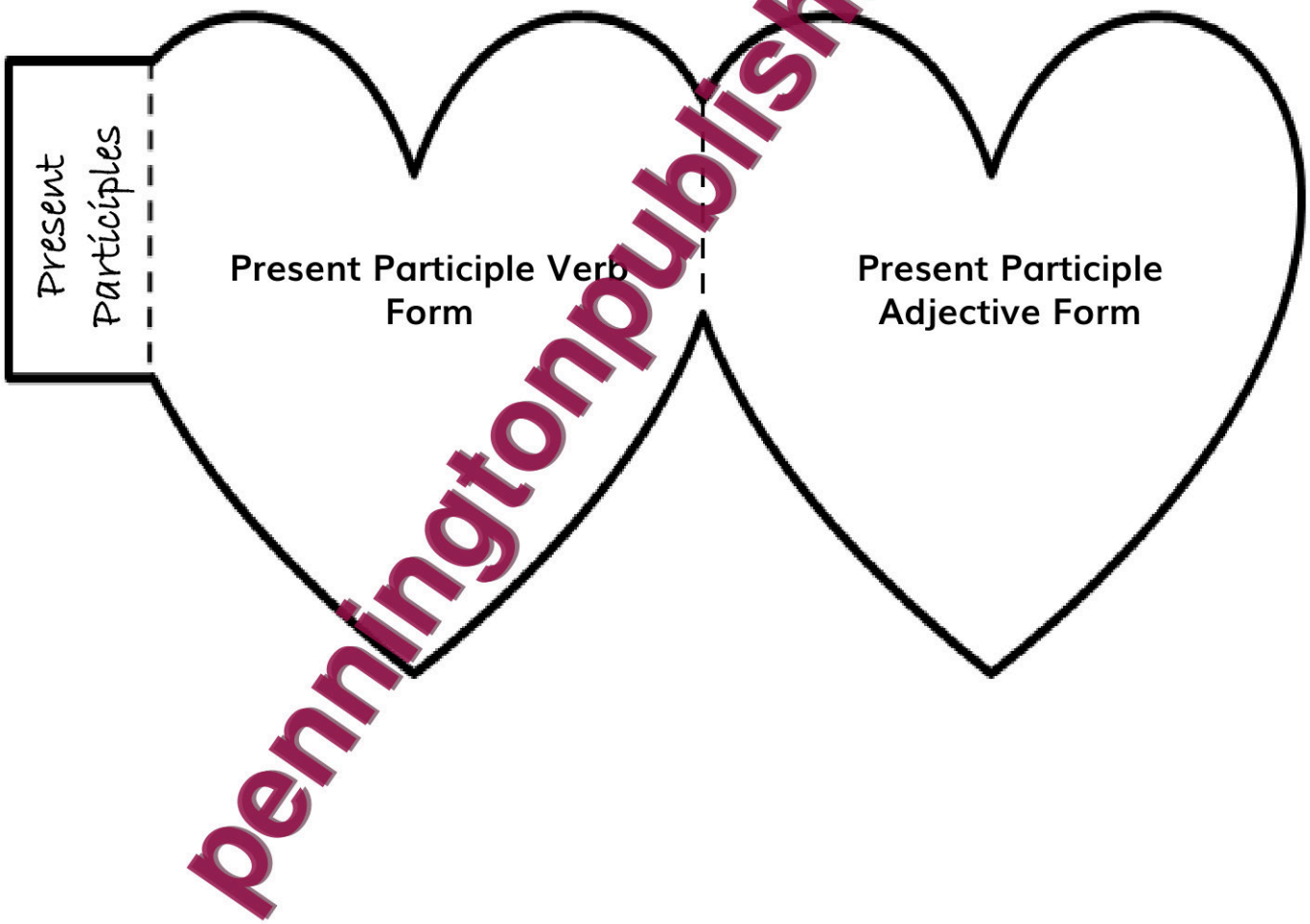
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these present participles, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The Latin word, *sic*, means "so," or "such." Other than using the [sic] to *blame* the author of a quoted source for a mistake, the most famous use of the word *sic* occurred when John Wilkes Booth shot President Abraham Lincoln. Wilkes shouted, "Sic semper tyrannis!" Translated, this would mean "Such always happens to dictators."	Direct quotations which include incorrect or non-standard spelling, word usage, mechanics, and grammar must include the bracketed *sic* [sic] after any grammar, usage, mechanics, word choice, or spelling mistake. The [sic] means "as the original said." **Examples: "It seemed sily [sic], but that's how she orientated [sic] her thinking. Sad! [sic] She been feeling [sic] that way for a long time."**

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Both present participles and gerunds use the base form of the verb plus "__ing." While the present participle serves as a verb or adjective, the gerund acts as a noun. **Examples** Studying (gerund) was ruining (present participle) my social life. Interesting as always (present participle), the professor spoke about panning for gold (gerund).	A present participial phrase adds an "__ing" onto the base form of a verb to indicate a continuous action or condition. A present participial phrase is preceded by a linking verb when used as a verb form and adds on related words to form the phrase. The linking verbs: *is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been* indicate past, present, or future tense. **Examples: Melinda was running quickly on the beach.** **I am always trying to learn from my mistakes.** **Bobby soon will be applying for the special award.** A present participial phrase can also function as an adjective with or without a linking verb. **Example: Running on the beach, Melinda found a beached whale.**

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: "I've always wonderred [sic] why the cure are worse than the disease" (Bonnin 23).

"I've always wonderred [sic] why the cure are [sic] worse than the disease" (Bonnin 23).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The author stated, "Finally I want to ask you a question very difficult [sic]" (Langston 110).

The author stated, "Finally [sic] I want to ask you a question very difficult [sic]" (Langston 110).

3. Re-write this sentence correctly with the present participle: My brothers were frequently arrived late for our Sunday family dinners.

My brothers were frequently arriving late for our Sunday family dinners.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly with the present participle: Lauren will be wanted to know the facts before she decides.

Lauren will be wanting to know the facts before she decides.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the present participial phrase:

We will be watching carefully to see if her promises made will be kept.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the present participial phrase:

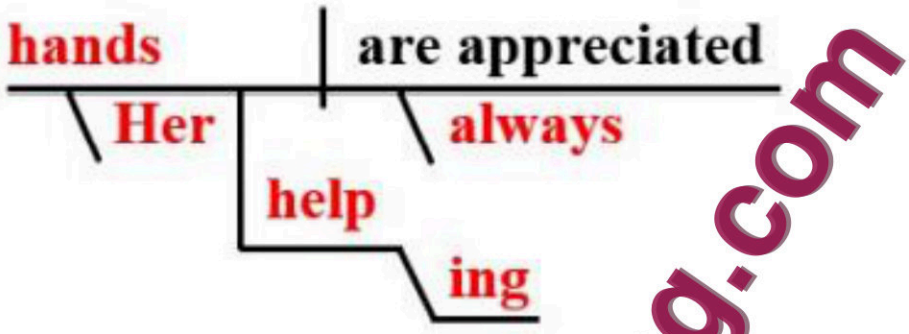
Skating on thin ice, the boys and girls played their first hockey game of the winter season.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Her helping hands are always appreciated."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"In taking revenge, a man is but even with his enemy; but in passing it over, he is superior."

Sir Francis Bacon (the British scientist and philosopher)
(1561–1626)

The quotation includes present participial phrases to describe human response to revenge. Explain what the author means, and include a present participial phrase in your response.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly: The mayor said, "She could of known that the landowner have bribed the official" (Ky 34).

The mayor said, "She could of [sic] known that the landowner have bribed [sic] the official" (Costa 34).

Grammar and Usage– Change the present participial verb form to an adjectival phrase. The three-year-old was swimming in the pool without a life jacket.

Swimming in the pool, the three-year-old did not have a life jacket.

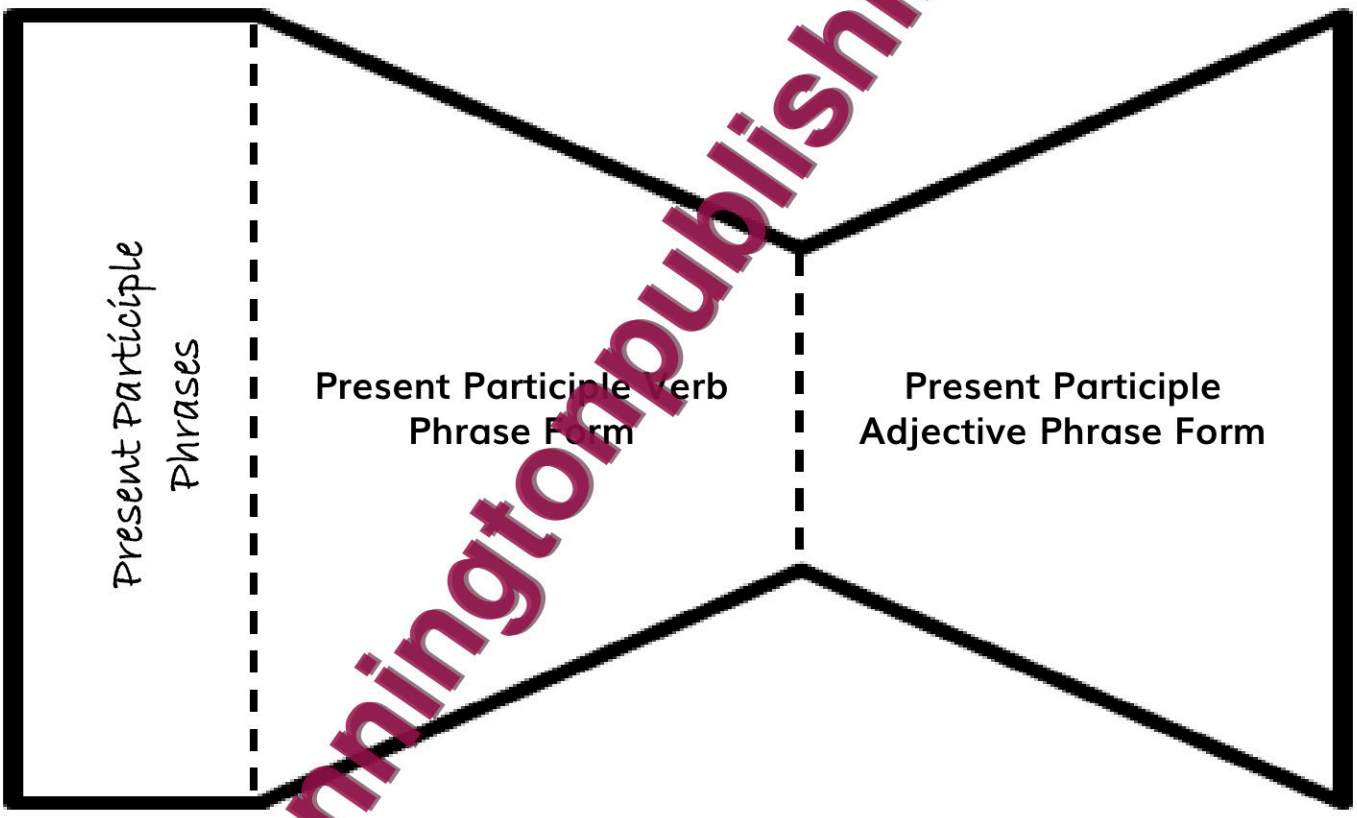
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these present participle phrases, on the back of each flap.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Citations within the text are called *parenthetical citations*. Some writing style guides require footnotes at the bottom of each page. **Footnote Examples** Annie Addams, *The Ambassadors* (Rockville: Serenity, 2009), 34-40. Bob Saeturn, "Clowns" http://www.circum.com, (June 15, 2017).	A citation is the author's last name and the page number where the author's words are found. If no author is listed, list the title of the source of information and page number. The citation is placed within parentheses after the quotation. Place a period after the citation, but include question marks and exclamation points within the quotation marks if they are part of the quote. An indirect quotation reports someone else's ideas without quoting each word. Indirect quotations still need proper citations, but not quotation marks. **Examples:** **"Cheetahs are fast!" (Lee 5). Over 30% of scientists agree ("Energy Concerns" 4).**
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Modifiers can be words, phrases, or clauses. An adjective modifies a noun or pronoun and answers three questions: Which one? How many? and What kind? An adverb modifies an adjective, adverb, or verb and answers four questions: What degree? How? Where? and When?	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. **Examples:** **Sean is a mean boy. Sean behaves badly.** Use the suffix "_er" for a one-syllable modifier to compare two things. **Example: fewer than five** Use "_er" or *more (less)* for a two-syllable modifier to compare two things. **Example**: **prettier, more often** Use *more* or *less* for adverb comparative modifiers ending in "__ly." **Example:** **less carefully.**
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentence correctly: “Over 75% of voters approve“ (Pan 4).” However, “… will they vote for it” (“The Final List” 3)?

“Over 75% of voters approve“ (Pan 4).
However, “… will they vote for it?” (“The Final List” 3).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mr. Lansing said “that she would be ready (Jolly 8)."

Mr. Lansing said that she would be ready (Jolly 8).

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: I said, “The story is false (‘Fake News’ 2). He thought “that the facts will come out (Stems) 3.”

I said, “The story is false” (“Fake News”).
He thought that the facts will come out (Stems 3).

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Her sisters are more happier than ever, yet they haven’t faced up to all of their problems.

Her sisters are happier than ever, yet they haven’t faced up to all of their problems.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Samuel is less handsome than Luke; however, he is considerably more politer.

Samuel is less handsome than Luke; however, he is considerably more polite.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lacy was more surprising ready to give her speech although Bill was less prepared than ever.

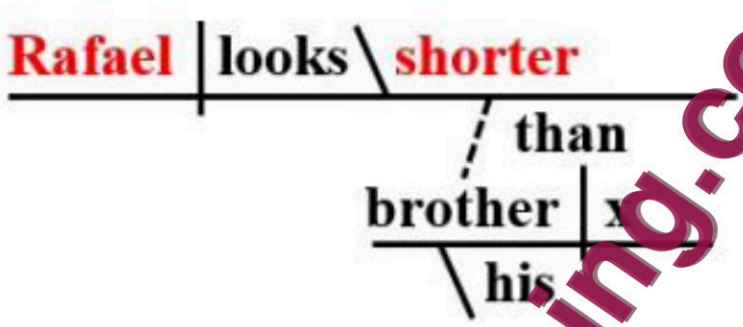
Lacy was more surprisingly ready to give her speech although Bill was less prepared than ever.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Comparative modifiers are placed to the right of the predicate after a backward slanted line in sentence diagrams. The object of comparison is placed under the comparative modifier and is connected with a dotted, slanted line. The unstated verb is marked as an "X" to the right of the main vertical line. Complete the sentence diagram: "Rafael looks shorter than his brother."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"I believe that unarmed truth and unconditional love will have the final word in reality. That is why right, temporarily defeated, is stronger than evil triumphant."

Martin Luther King Jr. (the civil rights leader) (1929–1968)

The quotation includes a comparative modifier to contrast love and evil. Respond to the author's point, using a comparative modifier.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The author stated, "Most children get cavities" (Nen 8). The President said that was not correct (The Washington Post 4).

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: Marna is happier than Frank. Frank was more kind than Keith.

Marna is happier than Frank. Frank was kinder than Keith.

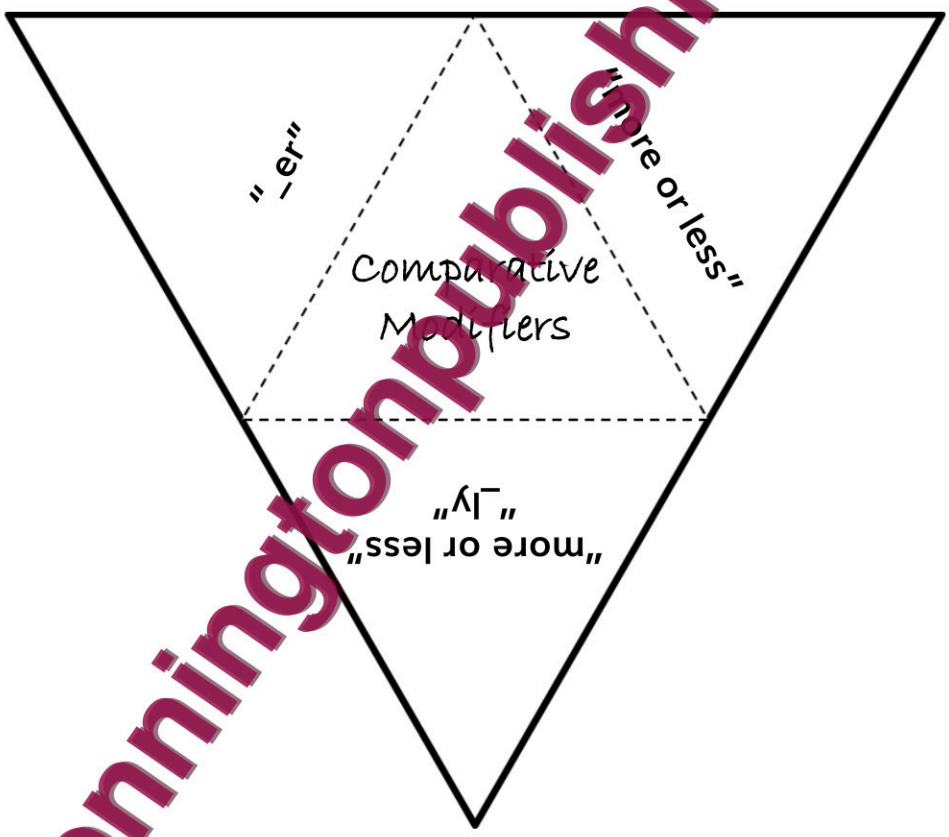
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples of each of the comparative modifiers on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Prior to the Internet, the Works Cited page was called a *Bibliography*, because it listed only printed sources.	The Works Cited page is placed at the end of an essay or research report and lists all of the sources you used in alphabetical order. Double space all Works Cited entries. **Examples:** Fill in the punctuation in the this Works Cited. Works Cited Baker, John *How to Use MLA*. El Dorado Hills: Pennington Publishing, 2015. Print. "Citations." *The American Encyclopedia* 3rd ed. 2015. Web. Jones, Amanda, and King, Melissa. "Using MLA." *mla.org*. 2 May 2015. Web. 24 May 2015.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
An adjective modifies a noun or pronoun and answers three questions: Which one? How many? and What kind? An adverb modifies an adjective, adverb, or verb and answers four questions: What degree? How? Where? and When? Never use *more*, *less*, *most*, *or least* with the suffix "_est." **Incorrect Usage Examples:** more best, less fastest, most carefulest, least slowest	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. **Examples:** Sean is a mean boy. Sean behaves badly. The superlative modifier indicates which is the *most* or *least*. Use the suffix "_est" for a one-syllable superlative modifier to compare three or more things. **Example:** meanest Use "_est," *most*, or *least* for a two-syllable or longer superlative modifier to compare three or more things. **Example:** most interesting Use *most* or *least* for adverb superlative modifiers ending in "__ly." **Example:** least carefully.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this Works Cited reference correctly: Stuart Johnson, Clouds. San Diego: Lister Publishing, 2017. Print.

Johnson, Stuart. Clouds. San Diego: Lister Publishing, 2017. Print.

2. Re-write this Works Cited reference correctly: Weston, Dylan: Under My Thumb. New York City, Barney Publishing, 2017. Print.

Weston, Dylan. Under My Thumb. New York City: Barney Publishing, 2017. Print.

3. Re-write this Works Cited reference correctly: "Teach Today." Bee Online Encyclopedia. 4th ed. 2017.

"Teach Today." Bee Online Encyclopedia. 4th ed. 2017. Web.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Of the watch, belt, and pants, the belt was the most nice gift, and the watch was the cheapest.

Of the watch, belt, and pants, the belt was the nicest gift, and the watch was the cheapest.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Compared to Julia, Sammi, and me, Linda is the most prettiest, although she has the least talent.

Compared to Julia, Sammi, and me, Linda is the prettiest, although she has the least talent.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Of the three brothers I worked more consistently to ensure that Mom did not have to struggle.

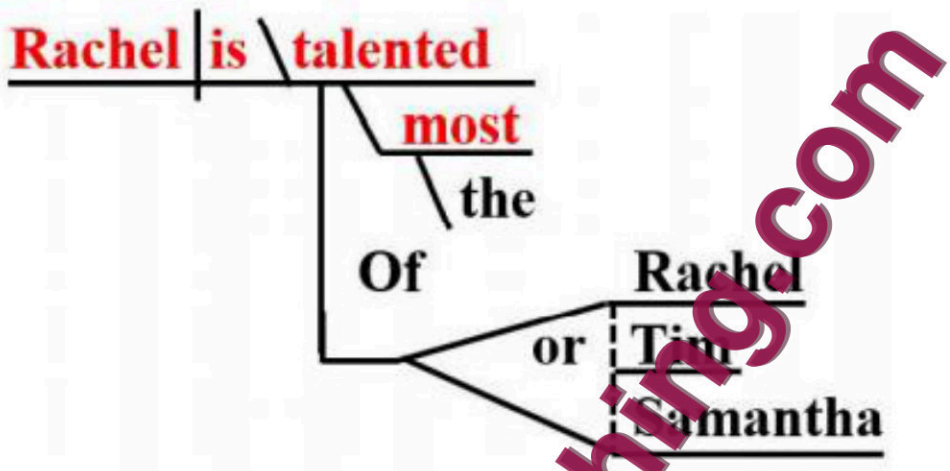
Of the three brothers I worked most consistently to ensure that Mom did not have to struggle.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Superlative modifiers are placed to the right of the predicate after a backward slanted line in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "Of Rachel, Tim, or Samantha, Rachel is the most talented."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"It is not the strongest of the species that survives, nor the most intelligent, but the one most responsive to change."

Charles Darwin (the author of *Origin of the Species*)
(1809–1882)

The quotation includes superlative modifiers to compare species. Respond to the author's point, using a superlative modifier.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this Works Cited source correctly: Le, Ty. "Eat for Fun." Azusa: Lee Publishing, 2014, Print.

Le, Ty. "Eat for Fun." Azusa: Lee Publishing, 2014. Print.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: Of the five speakers, Sue spoke most confident. She was the better speaker by far.

Of the five speakers, Sue spoke most confidently. She was the best speaker by far.

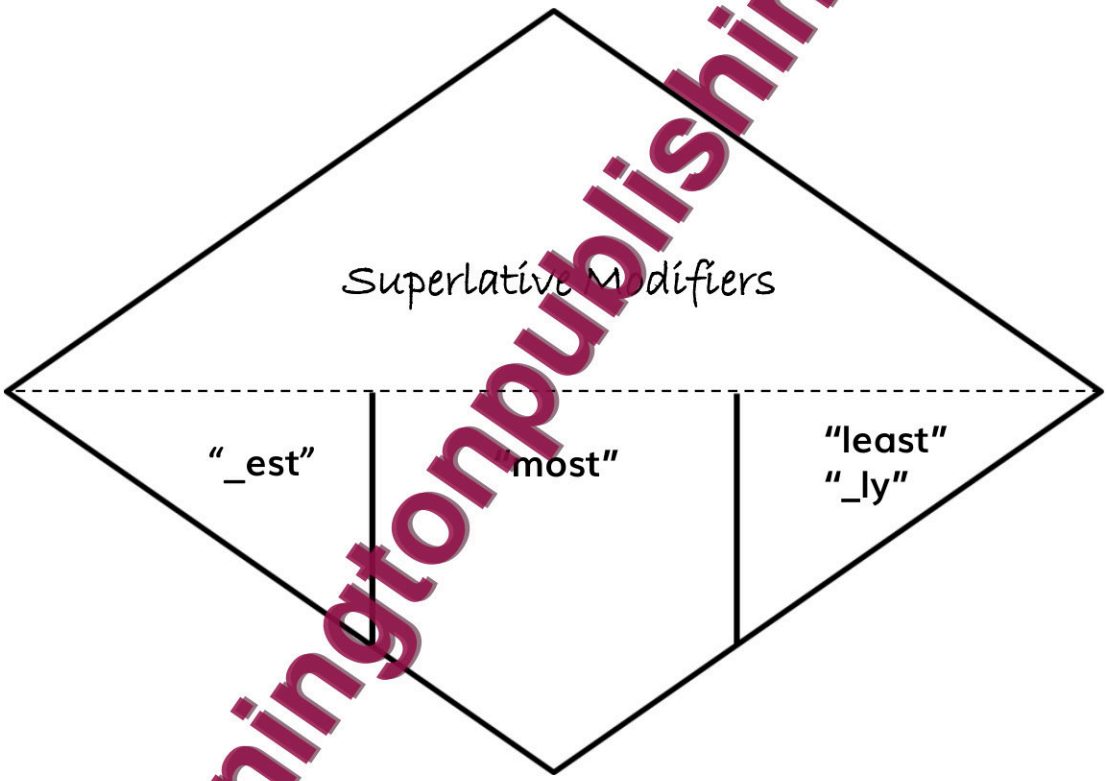
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples of each of the superlative modifiers on the back of the flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎	
Resources	**Mechanics Notes**
Always italicize when word processing on the computer. Save underlining for writing on paper.	Underline or italicize the titles of books, newspapers, websites, and magazines. As a general rule, we underline or italicize *whole things*, *big things*, or *things that can be picked up from a table*. Never underline and italicize. **Examples:** War and Peace, New York Times, YouTube, Tiger Beat
Resources	**Parts of Speech Notes**
	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. A misplaced modifier modifies something that the writer does not intend to modify because of its placement in the sentence. Place modifiers close to the words that they modify. **Examples:** I drank only water; I only drank water. In these sentences only is the modifier. These sentences have two different meanings. The first means that I drank nothing but water. The second means that all I did with the water was to drink it.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Our English teacher made us read "Pride and Prejudice."
Our English teacher made us read Pride and Prejudice.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Jonathan has a subscription to "The Washington Post."
Jonathan has a subscription to The Washington Post.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Manuel left enough food usually on his plate to feed his dog.
Options: Manuel usually left enough food on his plate to feed his dog. Usually, Manuel left enough food on his plate to feed his dog.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girl before she was ready finished the project.
Options: The girl finished the project before she was ready. Before she was ready, the girl finished the project.

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: We found the phone she lost yesterday by the trash can. We gave it to her this morning.
We found the phone she lost yesterday by the trash can. We gave the phone to her this morning.

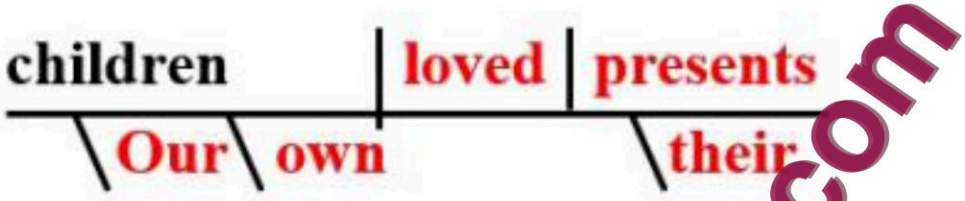
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: The singer was asked by an enthusiastic fan for his autograph after the song.
After the song the singer was asked for his autograph by an enthusiastic fan.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Modifiers are placed under the parts of speech that they modify. Complete the sentence diagram: "Our own children loved their presents."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"England and America are two countries separated by a common language."

George Bernard Shaw (the British author and humorist)
(1856–1950)

The quotation includes an adjectival phrase to modify "countries" for humorous effect. Explain the author's point, using at least one adjective and one adverb modifier.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

I read about the book, titled Islands in Paradise. The article appeared in both Sports Illustrated and The Modesto Bee.

Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the modifiers:

She most always cooked dinner on Tuesdays.

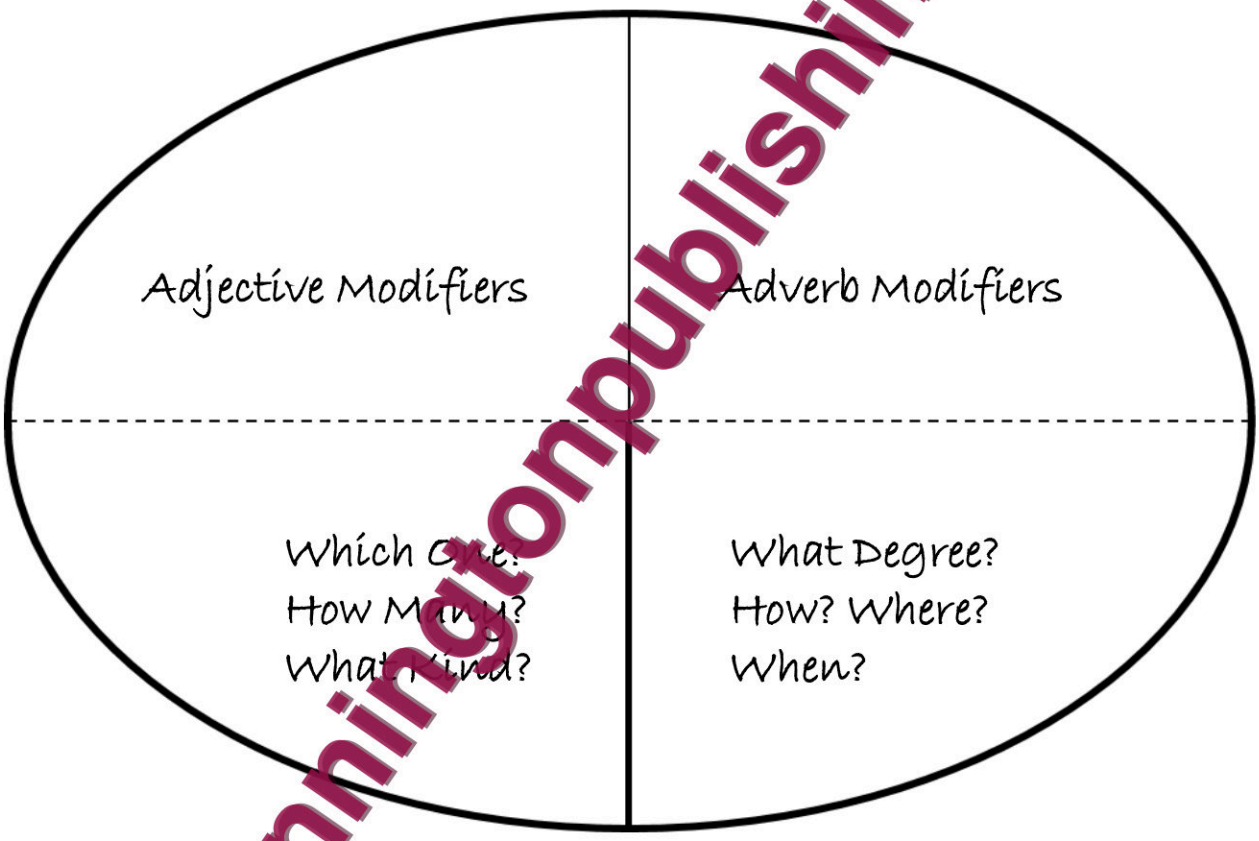
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each adjective and adverb modifier question on the back of the two flaps.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
A work of art may be a painting, a sculpture, a drawing, etc.	Underline or italicize the titles of plays, television shows, movies, and works of art. As a general rule, we underline or italicize *whole things*, *big things*, or *things that can be picked up from a table*. **Examples:** Hamlet, The Tonight Show, Star Wars, Pieta

Resources	Parts of Speech Notes
Dangling modifiers provide quite a bit of humor for your English-language arts teachers. To understand the humor in a dangling modifier, you have to be able to recognize and explain one when you see it. Now, not every dangling modifier is laugh-out-loud funny, but each of them creates misunderstanding for the reader. **Example** Reading a newspaper, my cat crawled up into my lap.	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that limits the meaning of a word or words. A dangling modifier is an adjective or adverb that does not have a clear connection to the word, phrase, or clause to which it refers. A dangling modifier usually takes the form of a present participle ("__ing"), a past participle ("__d," "__t," "__ed," "__ en"), or an infinitive (*to* + the base form of a verb). To eliminate the dangling modifier, place it close to the word or words the adjective or adverb modifies. **Example:** Fired from your job, your car became your home. (Your car was not fired; *you* were).

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The audience applauded at the close of the curtain on our last performance of "Mulan."

The audience applauded at the close of the curtain on our last performance of Mulan.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: "St. George and the Dragon" is a painting by Raphael. It hangs in the Louvre in Paris.

St. George and the Dragon is a painting by Raphael. It hangs in the Louvre in Paris.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: "One morning I shot an elephant in my pajamas" (Groucho Marx).

One morning I shot an elephant in my pajamas (Groucho Marx).

4. Re-write this classified ad correctly: FOR SALE. Walnut table by original owner. Has decorative legs.

FOR SALE by owner. Walnut table with decorative legs.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Abe Lincoln wrote the Gettysburg Address while riding on a train on the back of an envelope.

Abe Lincoln wrote the Gettysburg Address on the back of an envelope while riding on a train.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Kept safe in a box for 9 years, the owner of the gold coins came forward to announce their sale.

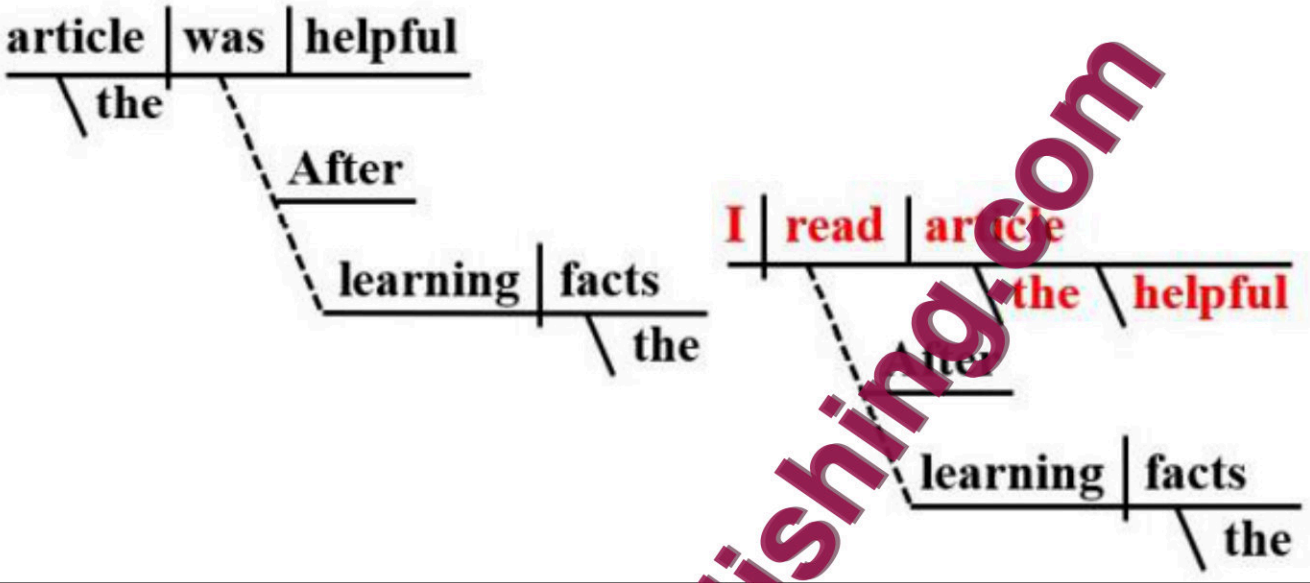
The gold coins were kept safe in a box for 9 years, and the owner came forward to announce their sale.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Modifiers are placed under the parts of speech that they modify. Revise the dangling modifier found in the top sentence diagram in the one below:



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"We are each responsible for our own life... no other person is or even can be."

Oprah Winfrey (the television and movie star) (1954–)

The quotation includes several modifiers. Respond to the author's point with two modifiers.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The wonderful musical, Oklahoma, had the painting Oklahoma Skies as a stage prop in the first scene. The television show, MASH, was based upon the movie titled MASH.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: To eat a juicy burger, two napkins had helped him stay neat.

To eat a juicy burger, he had two napkins to help him stay neat.

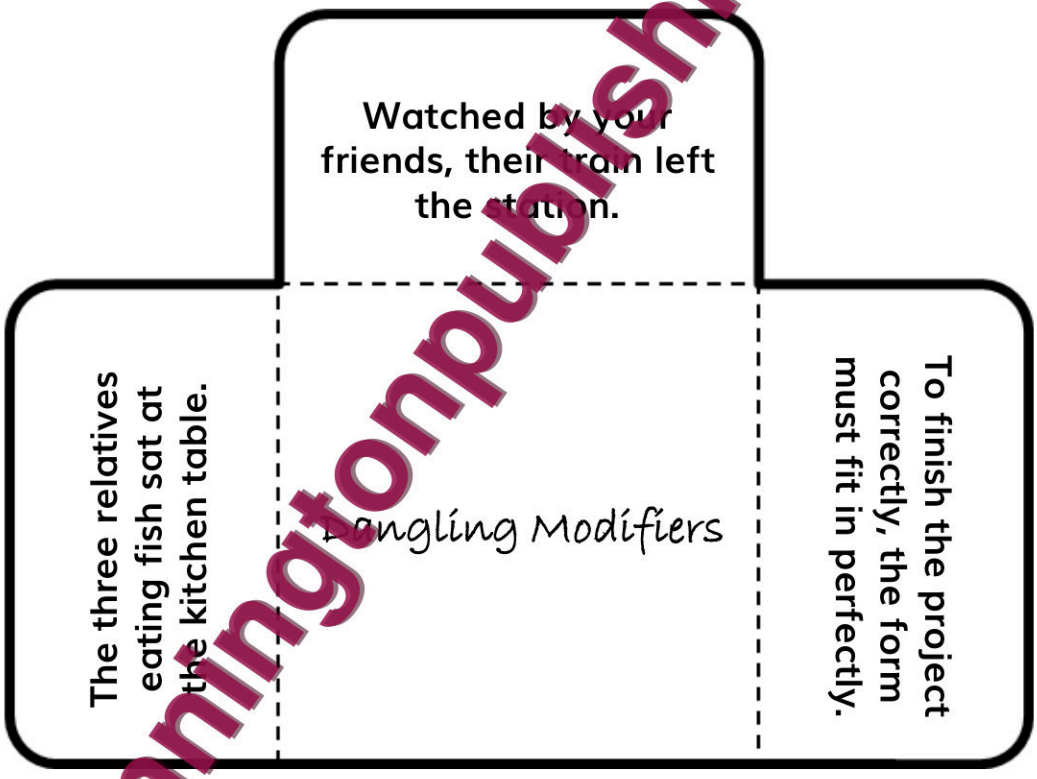
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Revise the dangling modifiers on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Some long poems, such as narratives, funeral elegies,and epic historical poems are underlined or italicized.	Place quotation marks before and after the titles of songs and poems. Think of songs and poems as *parts of whole things*, *small things*, *or things that can't be picked up from a table*. **Examples:** "Jingle Bells" "This Little Piggy" Also place quotation marks before and after the titles of book chapters. Think of book chapter titles as *parts of whole things*, *small things*, *or things that can't be picked up from a table*. **Example:** "Last Time" is the best chapter in Along the Shore.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
More Squinting Modifier Examples We tried *during our first game* to concentrate on our defense. I told her *when the show was finished* I would drive take her home. There are a few things *you might not know* I would like share.	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. A squinting modifier is a word or phrase placed between two words so that it could be misunderstood to describe either word. Revise by placing the modifier before or after the word, phrase, or clause that it modifies. **Squinting Modifier Example:** Walking up hills quickly strengthens your legs. **Explanation:** "Quickly" could modify "Walking up hills" or "strengthens."

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: I asked if "Wheels on the Bus" appears on 100 Favorite Children's Songs.

I asked if "Wheels on the Bus" appears on 100 Favorite Children's Songs.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The best chapter in Great Americans was titled The Railsplitter and discussed Abraham Lincoln.

The best chapter in Great *Americans* was titled "The Railsplitter" and discussed Abraham Lincoln.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: I said we had to meet before lunch today at five o'clock.

Before lunch I said we had to meet today at five o'clock. (Students may have other revisions.)

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Waiting awhile to think things over clearly improves your decisions.

To improve your decisions, wait awhile to think things over clearly. (Students may have other revisions.)

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Listening to loud music slowly brings on a migraine.

Listening to loud music can (will, could) slowly bring on a migraine. (Students may have other revisions.)

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: John promised never to listen to her advice.

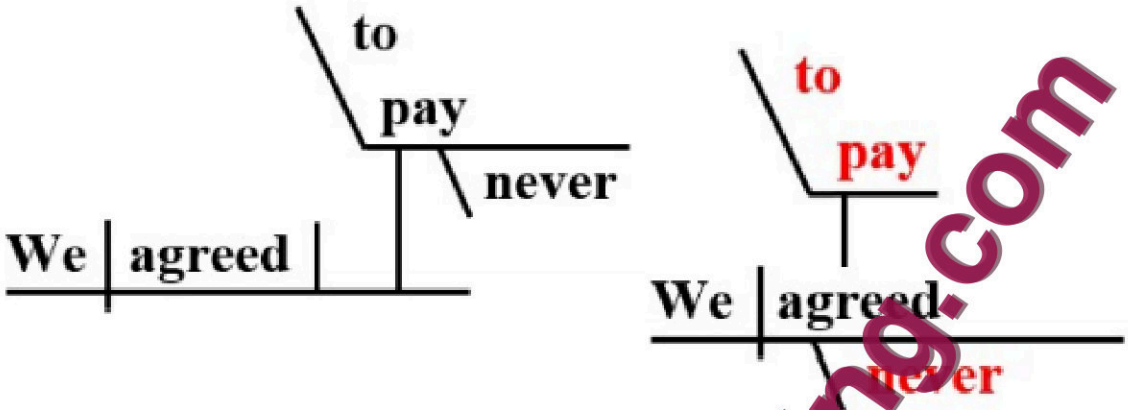
John never promised to listen to her advice.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Modifiers are placed under the parts of speech that they modify. In the top sentence diagram, revise the squinting modifier: "We agreed never to pay" in the one below.



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Why is it that our memory is good enough to retain the least triviality that happens to us, and yet not good enough to recollect how often we have told it to the same person?"

Rochefoucauld (the French author)
(1613–1680)

The quotation includes several modifiers. Respond to the author's point with two modifiers.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The best chapters in the book are titled "The Final Act" and "Last Chance." Paul Simon's song, "America," was not influenced by the short poem "I Hear America."

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:
I said after noon you have to ask me today.

Options: I said you have to ask me today after noon. I said you have to ask me after noon today.

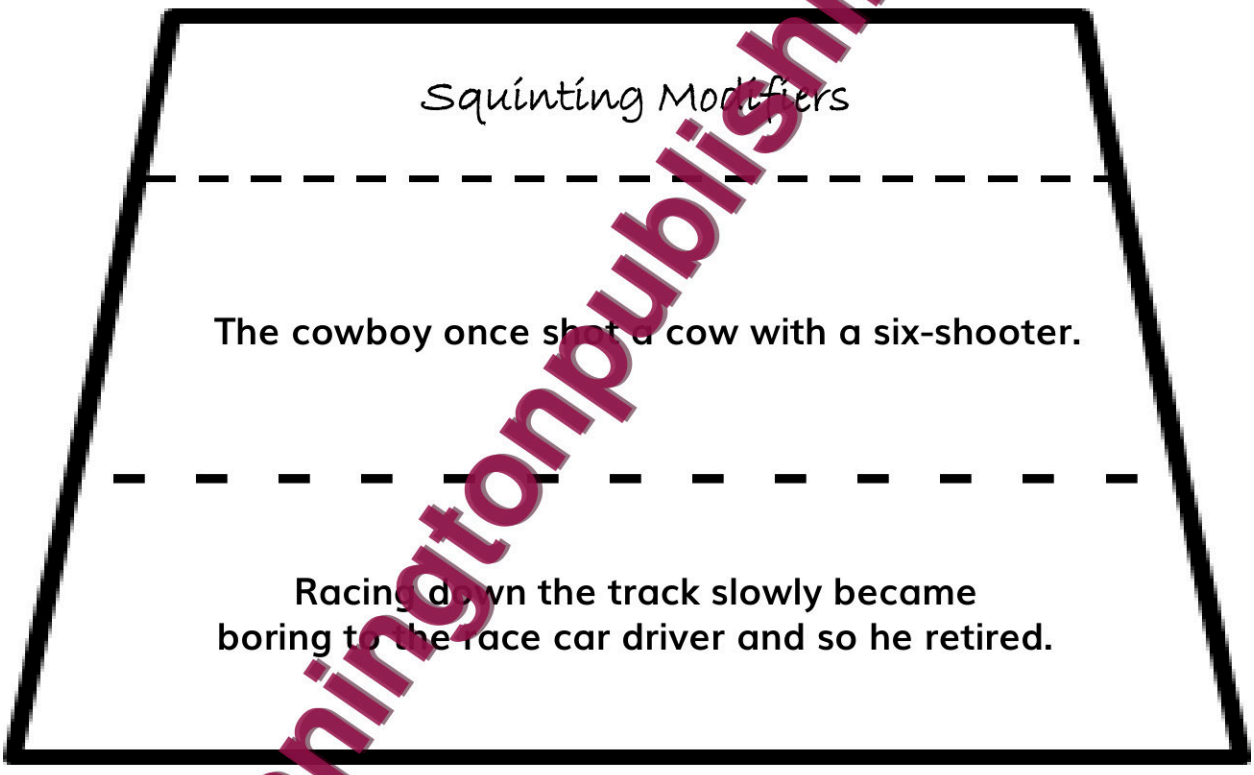
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Revise the squinting modifiers on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Place quotation marks before and after the titles of articles. An article is a short written work such as a newspaper article, magazine article, or blog article that is part of the larger publication. Think of articles as *parts of whole things, small things, or things that can't be picked up from a table* in order to remember that they are punctuated with quotation marks. **Example:** "The President's Greatest Challenge"

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
The verb phrase does not include adverbs, such as *always, never,* and *not*. Here the verb phrase is underlined, not the adverb: My friend is always helping in the classroom.	A verb phrase consists of the main verb with a linking verb, helping verb, adverb, and/or prepositional phrase. **Examples:** The candidate was defeated after she had been serving for only two years. She quickly demanded a re-count of the votes, and the Election Commission voted on her request.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

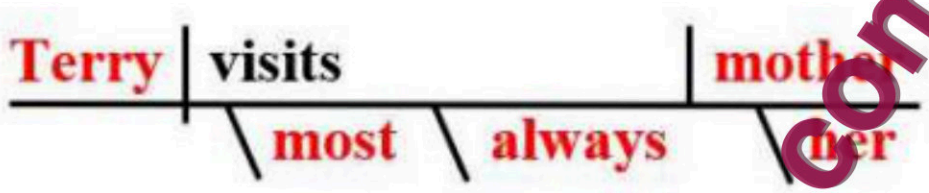
1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The article, The First 100 Days, was written by Jim Marshall and appears in Atlantic Weekly magazine.
The "First 100 Days" was written by Jim Marshall and appears in Atlantic Weekly magazine.
2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I wrote "Verb Phrases as the first in a series of articles for the Pennington Publishing Blog.
I wrote "Verb Phrases" as the first in a series of articles for the Pennington Publishing Blog.
3. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrases: Thomas is excited and happy, and will be pleased with his gift.
Thomas is excited and happy, and will be pleased with his gift.
4. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrases: My mom was willing to help on the condition that she could present my project at her meeting.
My mom was willing to help on the condition that she could present my project at her meeting.
5. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrases: The contagious disease rapidly spread and quickly caused the school to close its doors.
The contagious disease rapidly spread and quickly caused the school to close its doors.
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrase: The pre-schoolers learned to draw between the lines in their coloring books.
The pre-schoolers learned to draw between the lines in their coloring book

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Verbs are placed to the right of subjects after the main vertical line. Modifiers are placed under the verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Terry most always visits her mother."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"When visiting the palace he was respectful without humility, and careful to avoid all intimacy with people whom he at heart did not care for."

Leo Tolstoy (the Russian author of *War and Peace*)
(1828–1910)

The quotation includes a variety of verb phrases. Continue the narrative with at least two verb phrases.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Did you read the article "Why We Continue" in New Yorker Magazine or the article "Only in America" on his blog?

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly and underline the verb phrases:

They will actually be helping out more than they think.
I had already bought pizza to feed them after their work.

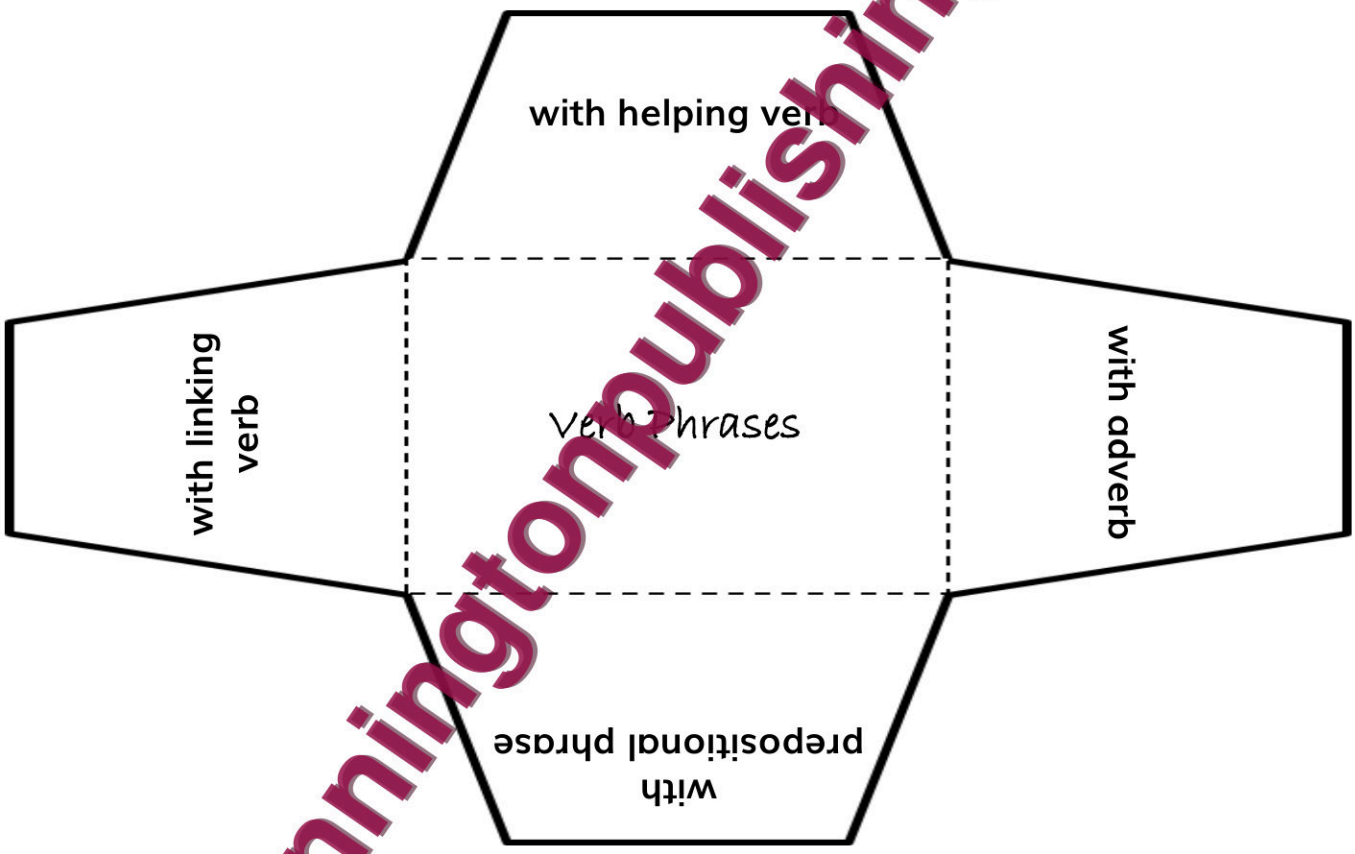
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences with these verb phrases on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Some long documents are underlined or italicized.	Place quotation marks before and after the titles of short stories and documents. A document is a written record that provides official information or evidence. Think of short stories and documents as *parts of whole things, small things, or things that can't be picked up from a table* in order to remember that they are punctuated with quotation marks. **Examples:** Short Story: "An Account of the Battle" Document: "Consumer Rights with the Tax Code"

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
English has many irregular past tense verbs. Print this resource for students who struggle with these irregular verbs: http://bit.ly/2pXinvq.	*Verb tense* is the form of the verb that indicates time. There are three basic verb tenses: the past, present, and future. The past tense adds "_ed" onto the end of the base form of the verb; the present tense is the base form of the verb; and the future tense adds "will" before the base form of the verb. **Examples**: Mykah jumped (past), Mykah jumps (present), Mykah will jump (future). Many past tense verbs are irregular. Either the ending of the past tense is not "_ed" or the base form of the verb is spelled differently than that of the base form of the verb. Generally keep the same verb tense within sentences unless a shift is necessary. **Examples:** I hear (present tense/base form of the verb) the man. I heard (past tense with irregular verb ending) the man. She begins (present tense/base form of the verb) the test. They began (past tense with different base form spelling) the test.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Nathaniel Hawthorne's Twice Told Tales includes this short story: the "Village Uncle."

Nathaniel Hawthorne's Twice Told Tales includes this short story: "The Village Uncle."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The best two short stories are "A Day for Use" and The Snows of Winter.

The best two short stories are "A Day for Use" and The Snows of Winter.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the past tense verbs:

Jamie left last Tuesday and arrived early Wednesday morning.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the present tense verbs:

Pedro enjoys the fresh vegetables from his garden and hopes that the watermelon will be bigger than last year.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the future tense verbs:

Gabriella will search for her missing phone later, but she will need my help.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verbs. Identify the tense of each verb in parentheses, following the verbs: He took his time, but now hurries to finish.

He took (past) his time, but now hurries (present) to finish.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence into the present tense to fix the verb tense shift. Complete the sentence diagram: "Laura wants it, but I did not."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Exalted from so base original With heavenly spoils, our spoils. What he decreed He effected: Man he made, and for him built Magnificent this World, and Earth his seat."
John Milton (the British poet and author of *Paradise Lost*)
(1608–1674)

The quotation uses vivid verbs. Respond to the author's description of creation.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

His short story "He Never Lies," may have been based on the secret government document known as "The Pentagon Papers."

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and label the verb tense in parentheses following each verb:

Star Wars premiered (past) in 1977, but this classic movie is (present) a film that will continue to be (future) popular for years.

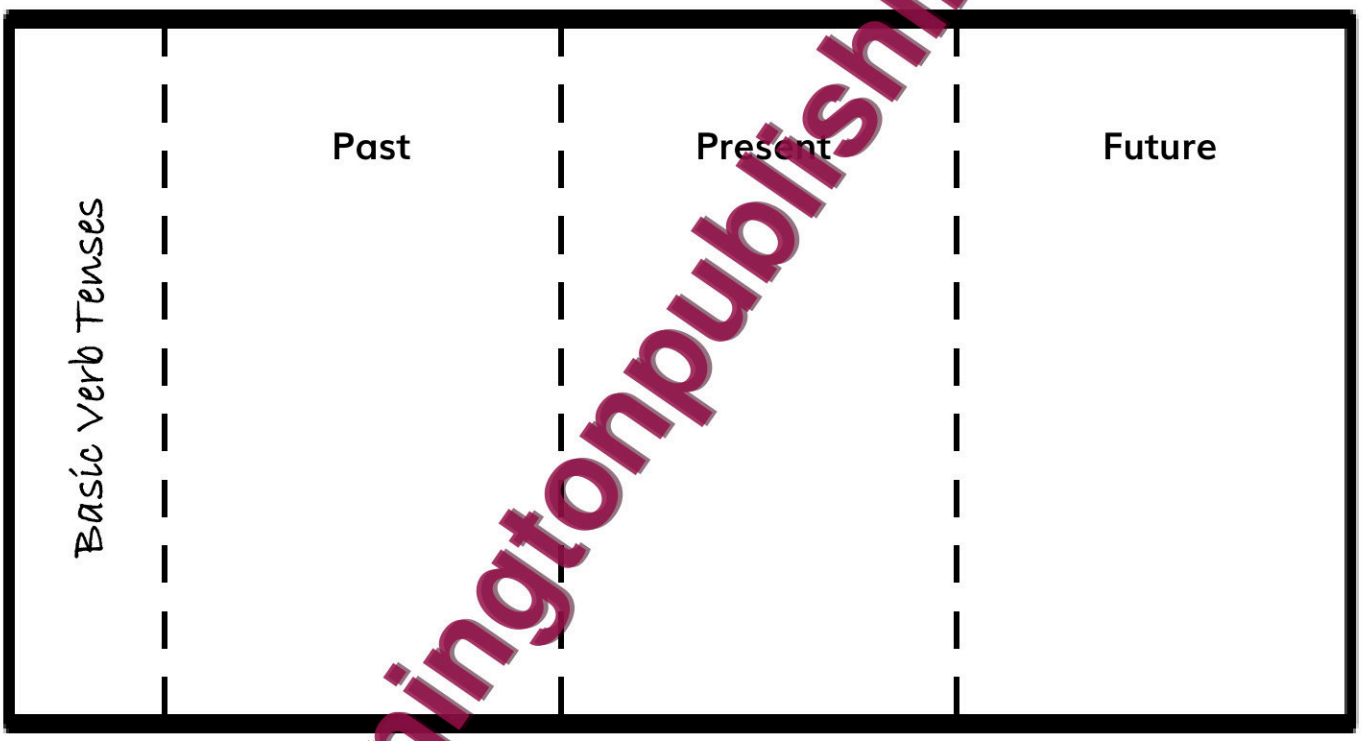
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples, using each of these basic verb tenses, on the back of each flap.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize people's and characters' names, but not the articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of any names. **Example**: Bo the Dog, Punch and Judy, St. Francis of Assisi Also capitalize family names and nicknames. **Examples:** I know that Mom and Buddy are here. Don't capitalize family names when a possessive pronoun (*my*, *our*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *their*), a possessive noun, or an adjective is before the family names. **Examples:** My dog, Jim's grandpa, and our mean aunt are here.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
The past progressive can interrupt a past action, describe a parallel or repeated action. **Examples:** I was turning the corner when I hit the bump. I was laughing while my brother was crying. The present progressive can describe a plan in the near future. **Example:** We are arriving in a few minutes. The future progressive can describe an interrupted action in the future. **Example:** When they get to our house, we will be eating dinner.	The past progressive verb tense shows an action that took place over a period of time in the past or a past action which was happening when another action took place. The past progressive uses *was* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" and *were* + the base form of the verb + "__ing." **Examples:** I was waiting for him at home. John and Rob were eating lunch when Lee arrived. The present progressive verb tense shows an action that takes place over a period of time in the present or an action taking place at the same time the statement is written. The present progressive uses *I am* + the base form of the verb + "__ing," *is* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" and *are* + the base form of the verb + "__ing." **Examples:** I am walking to school each day. Sara and Rosalyn are talking about the new girl at school. The future progressive verb tense shows an ongoing action that will be completed over a period of time or a continuous action that will be repeated and not completed. The future progressive uses *will be* + the base form of the verb + "__ing." **Examples:** We will be going on the field trip tomorrow. Patrick and I will be spending lots of time together.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Michael, Chuckerino the clown, and pepper arrived late to the party.

Michael, Chuckerino the Clown, and Pepper arrived late to the party.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Both dad and Grammy tried to cheer my sister up, but nothing seemed to work.

Both Dad and Grammy tried to cheer my sister up, but nothing seemed to work.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: His uncle and all three of their Cousins attended our family dinner.

His uncle and all three of their cousins attended our family dinner.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the past progressive verb tense: We were hoping that you would be able to stay, but we understand why you have to leave so early.

We were hoping that you would be able to stay, but we understand why you have to leave so early.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the present progressive verb tense: I'm pretty sure that your parents are inviting all of your friends over for dessert following the ceremony.

I'm pretty sure that your parents are inviting all of your friends over for dessert following the ceremony.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the future progressive verb tense: Taylor and Camille will be visiting three colleges on their spring road trip after they spend two days in Santa Cruz.

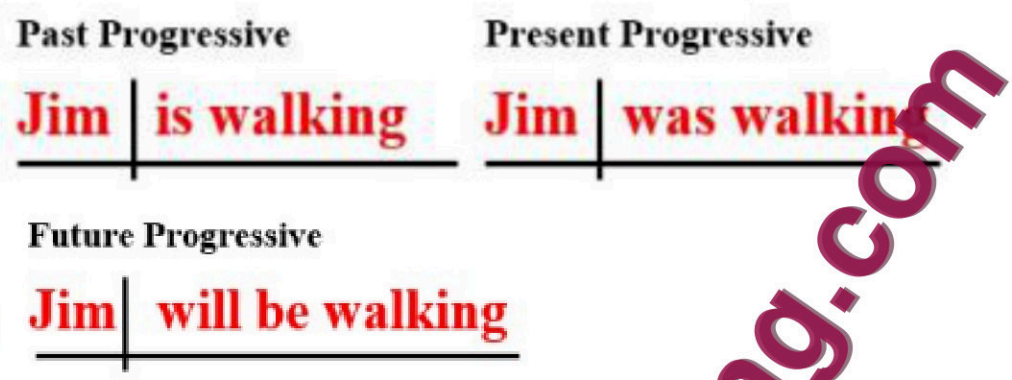
Taylor and Camille will be visiting three colleges on their spring road trip afte

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise into the progressive verb tenses to Complete the sentence diagrams: "Jim walked."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"I was thinking about how disjointedly time seemed to flow, passing in a blur at times, with single images standing out more clearly than others. And then, at other times, every second was significant, etched in my mind."

Stephenie Meyer (the author of the *Twilight* series) (1973–)

The quotation includes extensive use of the progressive verb tense. Respond to the author's point, using a progressive verb tense.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

Our mom and Junior visited Mickey Mouse at Disneyland® last summer.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the verbs formed with the progressive verb tense:

I was thinking (past progressive) about it, but now I am wondering (present progressive) if you will be calling (future progressive) later to explain.

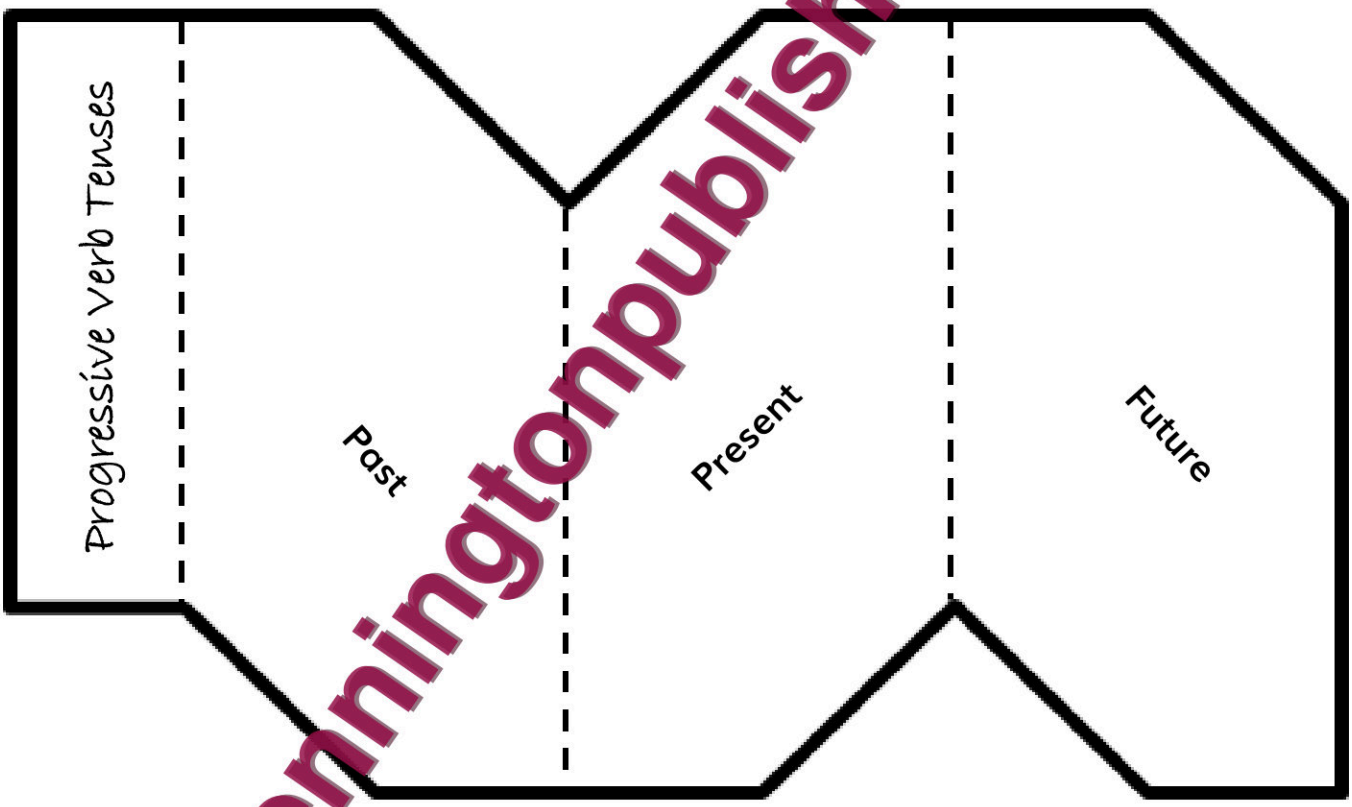
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for each of these progressive verb tenses on the back of each flap.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Copyright ©: This indicates that you are the owner of the written or artistic work. Regestered ®: This indicates that others may not use your registered name, title, logo, expression, invention, etc. without your permission.	Capitalize named things and products. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of named things and products. **Examples**: Tilt a Whirl, Run for the Cure®

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Check out this perfect verb tense poster at http://bit.ly/2rrs7Og. Check out this "Verb Tents (Tense)" poster, which includes all 12 verb tenses (including the past, present, and future perfect progressive verb forms) at http://bit.ly/2r4MDFe.	The past perfect verb tense is used for a physical or mental action or state of being that refers to something that has already been completed or something that happened before another action or a specific time in the past. The past perfect is formed with *had* + the past participle. The past perfect verb tense is formed with the past, present, or future tenses of the "to have" verb (had, has or have, will have) and a past participle (the base form of a verb and a verb ending in "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "__en" for regular verbs). **Example**: They had waited 'til dawn. The present perfect refers to something that happened at an unnamed time before the present. The present perfect verb is formed with *has* or *have* + the past participle. **Examples**: She has waited since dawn. The women have waited every morning. The future perfect refers to something that will happen before another action in the future or something that will happen before a specific time in the future. The future perfect is formed with *will have* + the past participle. **Example**: He will have waited every morning.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The Liberty bell is one of the popular historical attractions in the City Of Brotherly Love.

The Liberty Bell is one of the popular historical attractions in the City of Brotherly Love.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Our family has taken our Two a Day vitamins for the last ten years.

Our family has taken our Two a Day Vitamins for the last ten years.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the past perfect verb tense:

Timmy had practiced his trombone for two hours every day before his mother got home from work.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the present perfect verb tense:

The principal has expected the fire department to issue a warning since 2012.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the future perfect verb tense:

The town will have had more than its fair share of celebrity visitors by next summer.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verbs formed with the perfect verb tense:

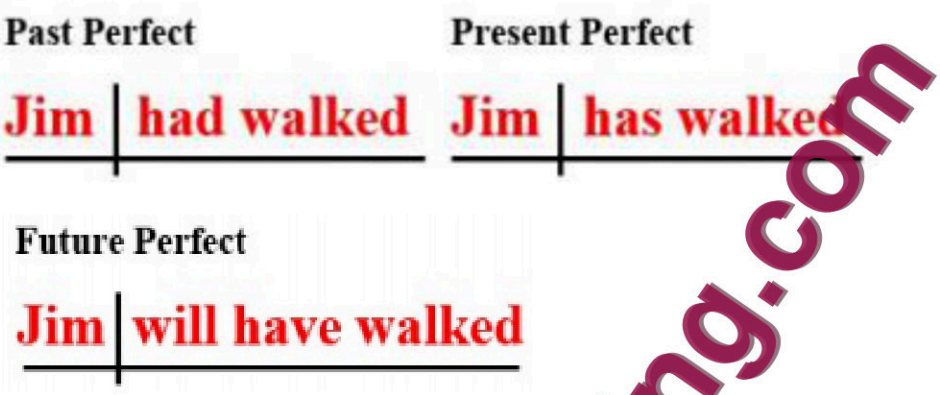
Grandad has promised since I was a child that we would one day hike to the top of Mt. Snowden, and we will have climbed it by this time next year.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence into the perfect verb tenses to Complete the sentence diagrams:
"Jim will walk."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"When you have loved as she has loved, you grow old beautifully."

W. Somerset Maugham (the British author)
(1874–1965)

The quotation includes the perfect tense. Continue the narrative with an example of the perfect verb tense.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

The Empire State Building is located in New York City.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the perfect verb tenses.

They had started the process and I have continued. We will have completed it next year, if it goes as planned.

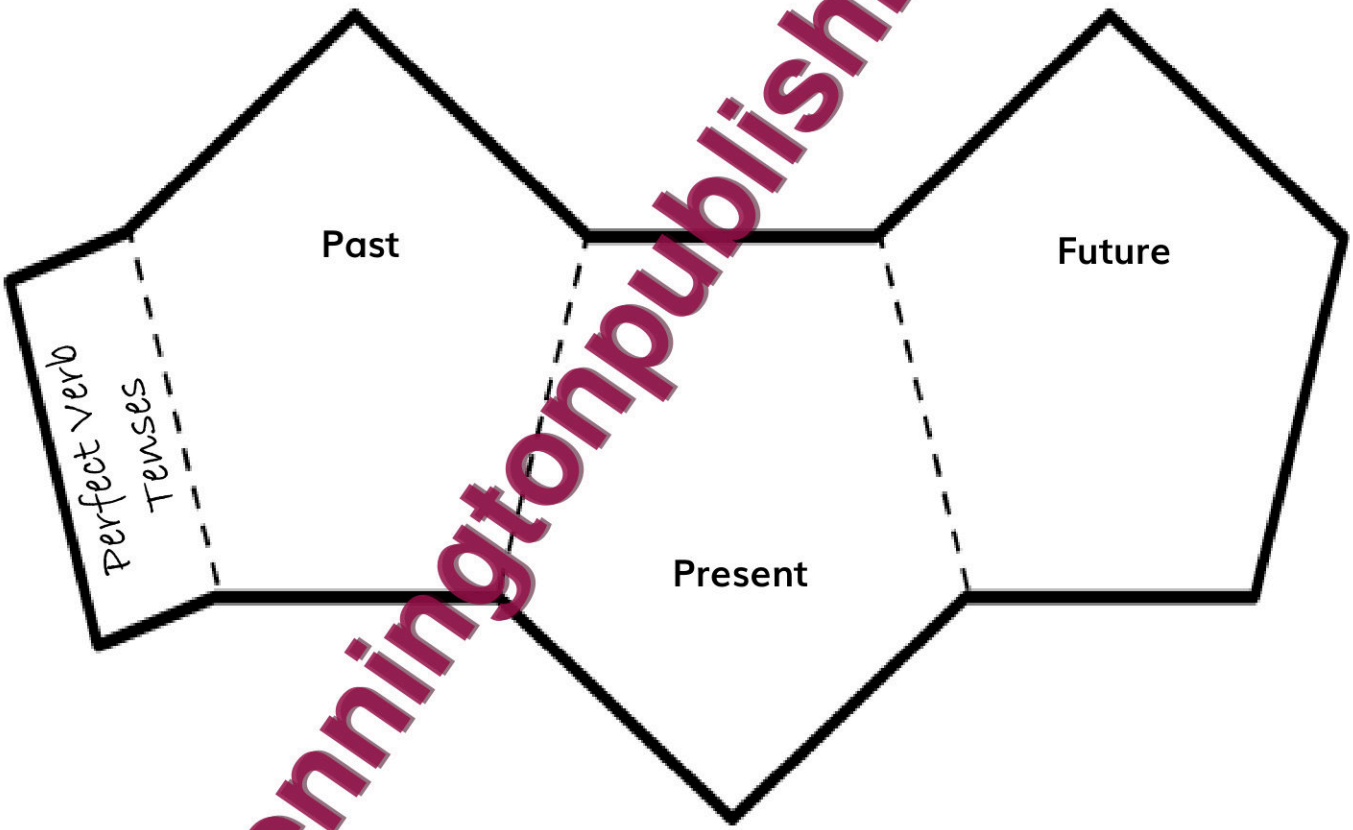
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for these perfect verb tenses on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The U.S. recognizes 10 national holidays.	Capitalize the names of holidays and dates. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of a holiday. **Examples:** Flag Day, The Fourth of July

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
"Split infinitives occur When additional words are included between the "to" and the verb, this is known as a *split infinitive*. Avoid splitting infinitives in formal writing. **Examples** **Avoid:** I like to on a summer day hike slowly through here. **Revision for Formal Writing:** On a summer day I like to hike slowly through here. **Revision for Informal Writing:** On a summer day I like to slowly hike through here.	The infinitive uses "to" + the base form of a verb. The present infinitive uses "to" + the base form of a verb. **Example:** To watch them might prove interesting. The past participle infinitive uses "to be" + the past participle. **Example:** To be watched by millions would be scary. The present perfect infinitive uses "to have" + the past participle. **Example:** To have watched her dance was pure magic. The past perfect participle uses "to have been" + the past participle. **Example:** It is a serious matter to have been watched. The continuous infinitive uses "to be" + the present participle. **Example:** To be watching a mother bird feed its babies is to see life in action. The perfect continuous infinitive uses "to have been" + the present participle. **Example:** To have been watching baseball for so many years has been the joy of my life.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Groundhog day is in February and May Day is on May 1.

Groundhog Day is in February and May Day is on May 1.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Juneteenth is celebrated as African-American emancipation Day on June 19.

Juneteenth is celebrated as African-American Emancipation Day on June 19.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form:

To be listed by the talent agency was quite an achievement.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form:

They were to have waited until we arrived before eating lunch.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form:

The songwriters' songs were to have been recorded by the jazz band.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form:

The masterpiece is believed to have been painted over several years.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

When connected to verbs, infinitives are placed to the right of the subject after the main vertical line. Complete the sentence diagram: "I like to write my own letters."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"I think it's the duty of the comedian to find out where the line is drawn and to cross it deliberately."

George Carlin (the American comedian)
(1937–2008)

The quotation includes infinitive phrases to define a comedian's duty. Explain the author's point, using an infinitive phrase.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

On Christmas Eve, 2018, my dad pretended to be Santa Claus. He wore the suit until New Year's Day.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the infinitive verb phrase:

To have listened to the song first would have been a good idea.

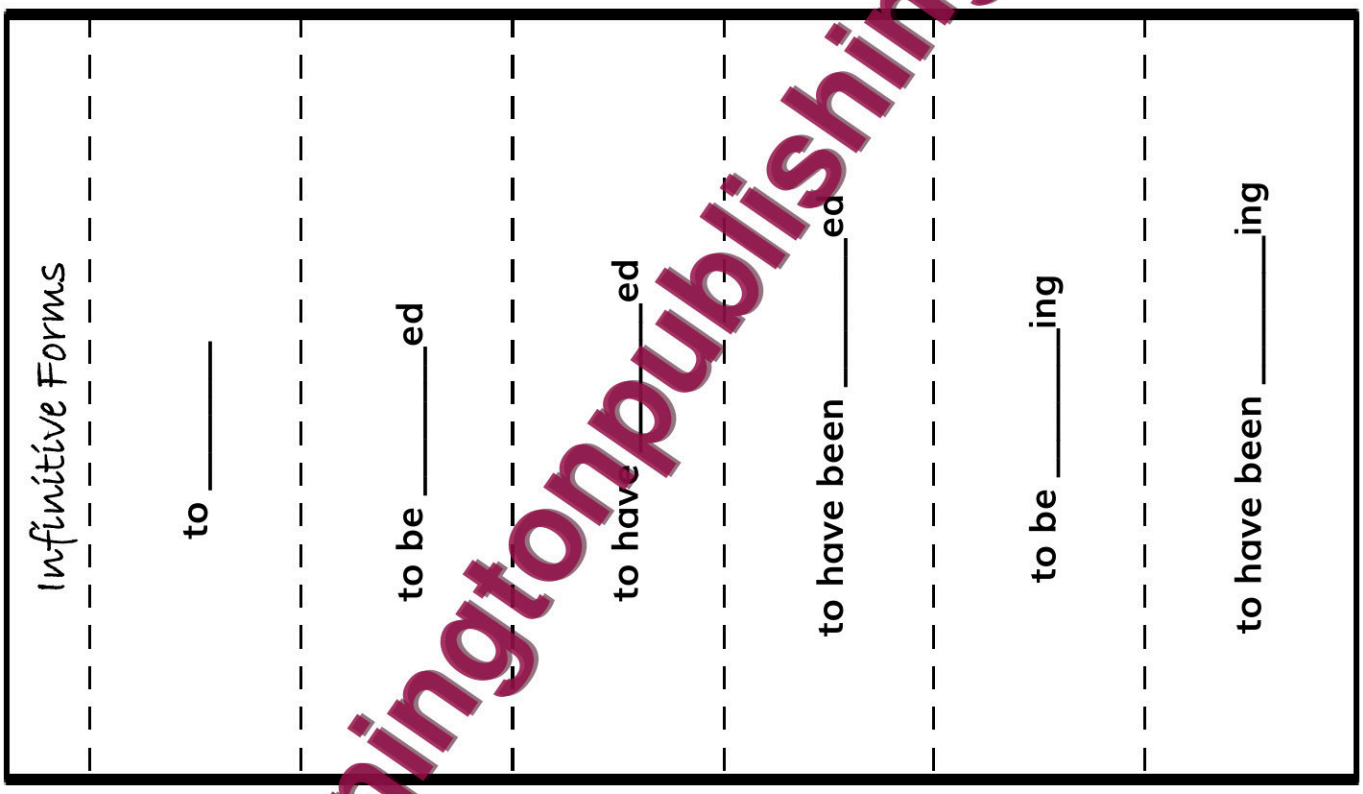
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples for these infinitive forms on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize the names of special events and historical periods. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of a special event or historical period. **Examples:** The Boston Marathon, Age of Enlightenment

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Fact, Belief, or Neither? 1. The "Pledge of Allegiance" says that our nation is "indivisible, with liberty and justice for all." Fact: Something was said. 2. 2 + 2 = 4 Neither: This is a definition: One equals the other. 3. The major cause of the Civil War was the issue of slavery. Belief: This statement is a conclusion. 4. I walked into the room at 5:00 p.m. Fact: Something was done. 5. She thinks chocolate ice cream is better. Neither: This is an opinion. 6. My mom said, "The moon is made out of cheese." Fact: Something was said. (Although it is not the accepted science.) 7. If I sit in that chair, it won't break. Belief: Something is accepted to be true.	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. The indicative (declarative) mood is used to share facts and beliefs. A *fact* is something that has been said or done. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the indicative mood. **Examples:** President Kennedy stated, "And so my fellow Americans: Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for your country." Neil Armstrong was the first human to walk on the moon on July 20, 1969. A *belief* is an acceptance or conclusion that something exists or is true. Note the underlined verb and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the indicative mood. **Example:** Some scientists have concluded that dinosaurs died out because of climate change.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: We looked forward to watching the next Games Of the Olympiad this summer.

We looked forward to watching the next Games of the Olympiad this summer.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: During the Middle ages in Europe, vassals served their lords and the lords served their kings.

During the Middle Ages in Europe, vassals served their lords and the lords served their kings.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood in these sentences:

She will move to Los Angeles on June 13 before she begins the movie. The movie will be a hit, but I think she should move first.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood:

Jenny plays guitar every Friday night from 8:00 p.m. to 10:00 p.m. and makes money from tips.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood in these sentences:

That Mexican food is tasty. Is it really that spicy? The menu warns about the spices and the waiters all remind their customers before they order.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood in these sentences:

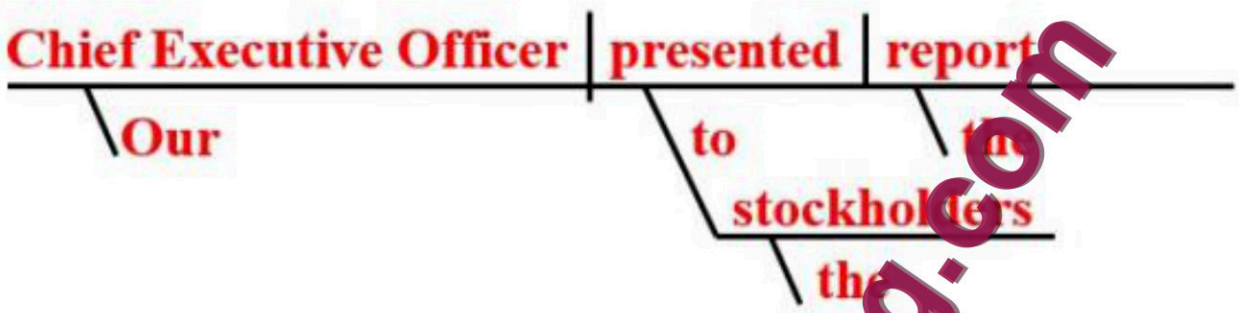
The band will be unable to perform, but the musicians will sit in the audience. I wonder why they can't play. The promoters sold 2,115 tickets to the concert.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Complete the sentence diagram: "Our Chief Executive Officer presented the report to the stockholders."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"A journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step."

Lao-tzu (the Chinese philosopher)
(604 B.C.–531 B.C.)

The quotation includes infinitive phrases to define a comedian's duty. Explain the author's point, using an infinitive phrase.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

My favorite historical period is the Age of Reason, but I also enjoyed studying the Summer of Love in our unit on The Sixties.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood.

Because the highly popular President said, "We have the resources and the data demonstrates that the 12% growth targets have been met."

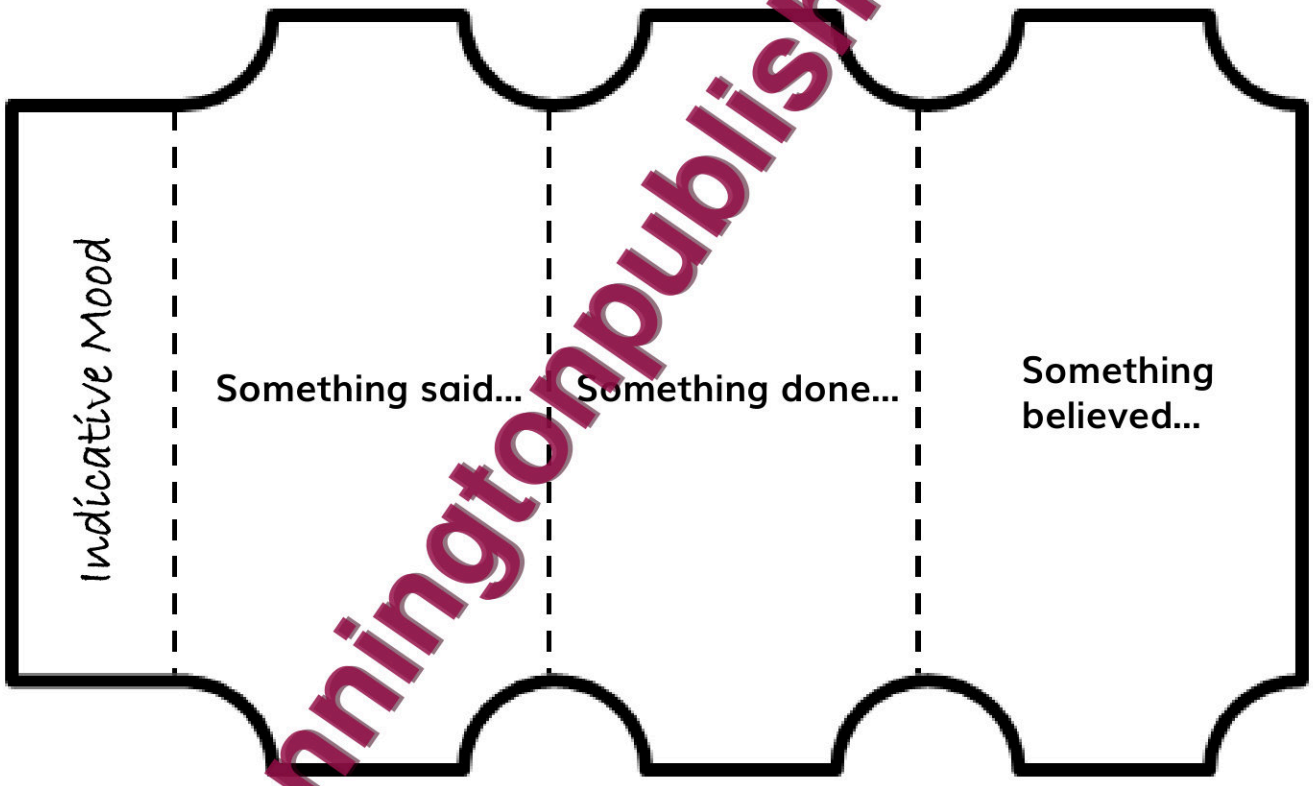
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these examples of the indicative mood on the back of each flap



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Corporations are owned by their stockholders (shareholders) who share in profits and losses of the business. Businesses which are incorporated follow the title of their company as follows: Peabody and Mainz, Inc.	Capitalize the names of organizations and businesses. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of the named organization or business. **Examples**: Helping with Hands Association, Durability for Life, Inc.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Imperative Word Clues Command: demand, do, don't, require, insist, order, direct, need to, must, have to, insist Request: ask, invite, appeal, desire, offer, beg, solicit Prohibit: don't, ban, veto, disallow, restrict, stop, halt	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The imperative mood is used to command, request, or prohibit. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. Often, the subject is implied (suggested, but not stated). Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the Imperative mood. **Examples:** Don't ever do that again. I wish you would listen more to my advice. We can't play basketball anymore on the blacktop.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: My mom and I joined We do Care last May and volunteered one afternoon per week for the organization.

My mom and I joined We Do Care last May and volunteered one afternoon per week for the organization.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: My friends work for Roddy Keel and sons Plumbing.

My friends work for Roddy Keel and Sons Plumbing.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood:

Knock it off! That wasn't funny at all.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood:

I want Robert to be more kind to his parents.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood:

Will your family be attending my graduation in June?

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood:

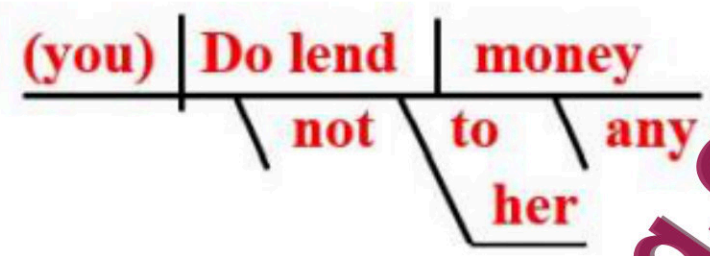
"You may never wear my skirt," her sister ordered.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Imperatives frequently use implied (suggested) subjects, which are placed in the subject position within parentheses. Complete the sentence diagram: "Do not lend any money to her."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"He who has begun has half done. Dare to be wise; begin!"

—Horace (the Roman poet)
(65 B.C.–8 B.C.)

The quotation includes the imperative mood. Respond to the author's point, using the imperative mood in one of your sentences.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

The school Parent Teacher Association and McDonald's® helped sponsor the community event.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood.

You must accept the terms and conditions to receive this one-time offer. Don't even think about ignoring this important opportunity.

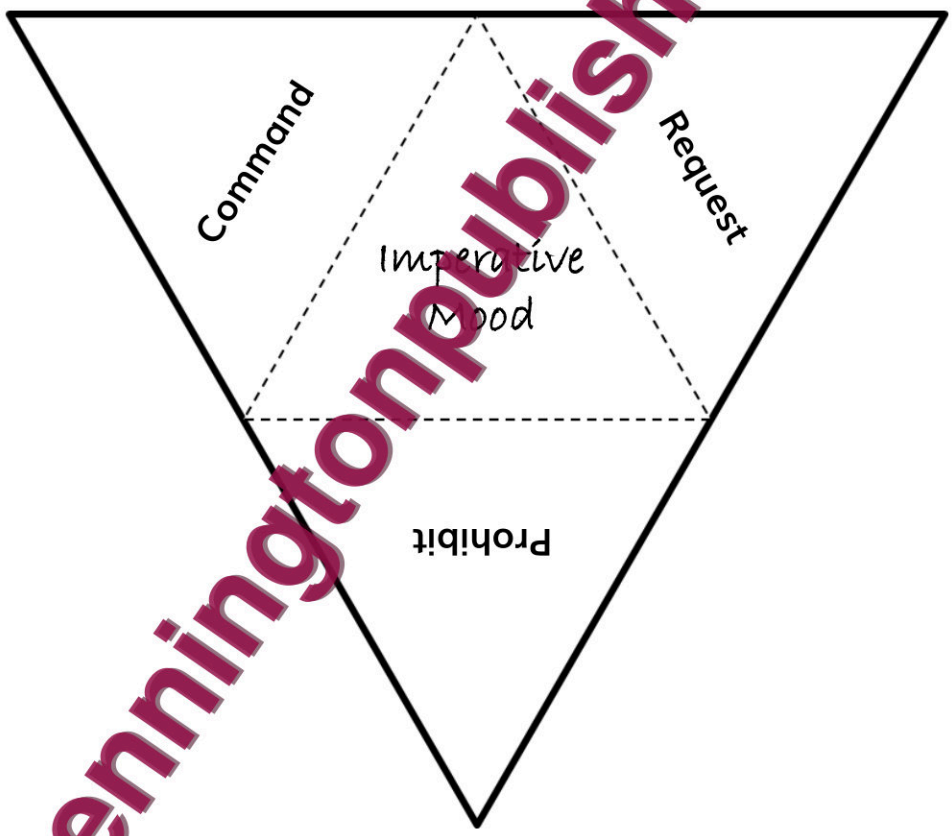
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using these examples of the imperative mood, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Word usage is one characteristic of dialect. For example, in the Western U.S. we say *bathroom* or *restroom*, in the Southern U.S. we say *commode*. The British tend to say *water closet* (or *W.C.*). Check out the famous W.C. Wayside Chapel Joke at http://blog.penningtonpublishing.com/reading/the-w-c-wayside-chapel-joke/.	Capitalize the names of languages, dialects, and people groups. *Dialect* refers to a variety of a language that is different in pronunciation, grammar, and vocabulary than other varieties of that language. **Examples:** Spanish, Creole, Roma

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Interrogative Word Clues ask, invite, inquire, request, question, wonder, curious, doubt, marvel	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The interrogative mood is used to ask questions. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. In interrogative sentences, the verb usually is placed before the subject or between the linking or helping verb and its connected verb. Only five pronouns are interrogative pronouns: *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *what*, and *which*. Use *what* to refer to a general thing and *which* to refer to a specific thing. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the interrogative mood. **Examples:** Who asked you to be the boss? For whom is the party? Whose advice has been requested? I wonder what they want. I'm curious; which do you prefer?

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: His cockney English accent made him difficult to be understood by anyone in San Francisco.

His Cockney English accent made him difficult to be understood by anyone outside of London.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I heard that afrikaans is a language of south Africa which was derived from the Dutch colonists.

I heard that Afrikaans is a language of South Africa which was derived from the Dutch colonists.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronouns:

Who wrote this letter and to whom was it addressed?

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronoun:

Whose is this jacket with the fur collar?

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronoun:

Well, what will happen to the puppies if no one adopts them?

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronoun:

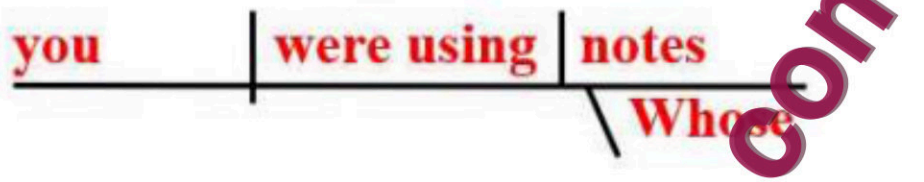
I'd like to know which one of you will pick me up in the morning?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Place relative (interrogative) pronouns below the objects that they modify in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "Whose notes were you using?"



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"After they had walked together for some time the tattered man mustered sufficient courage to speak. 'Was pretty good fight, wa'nt it?'"

Stephen Crane (author of *The Red Badge of Courage*)
(1871–1900)

The author uses the interrogative mood. Continue the dialogue, using both the indicative (factual) and interrogative moods.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

He spoke Castilian Spanish to the Indians, but they did not understand him.

Grammar and Usage – Write this sentence and underline the words which show the interrogative mood:

Why won't he be able to attend? I wonder if he would tell me. What do you think?

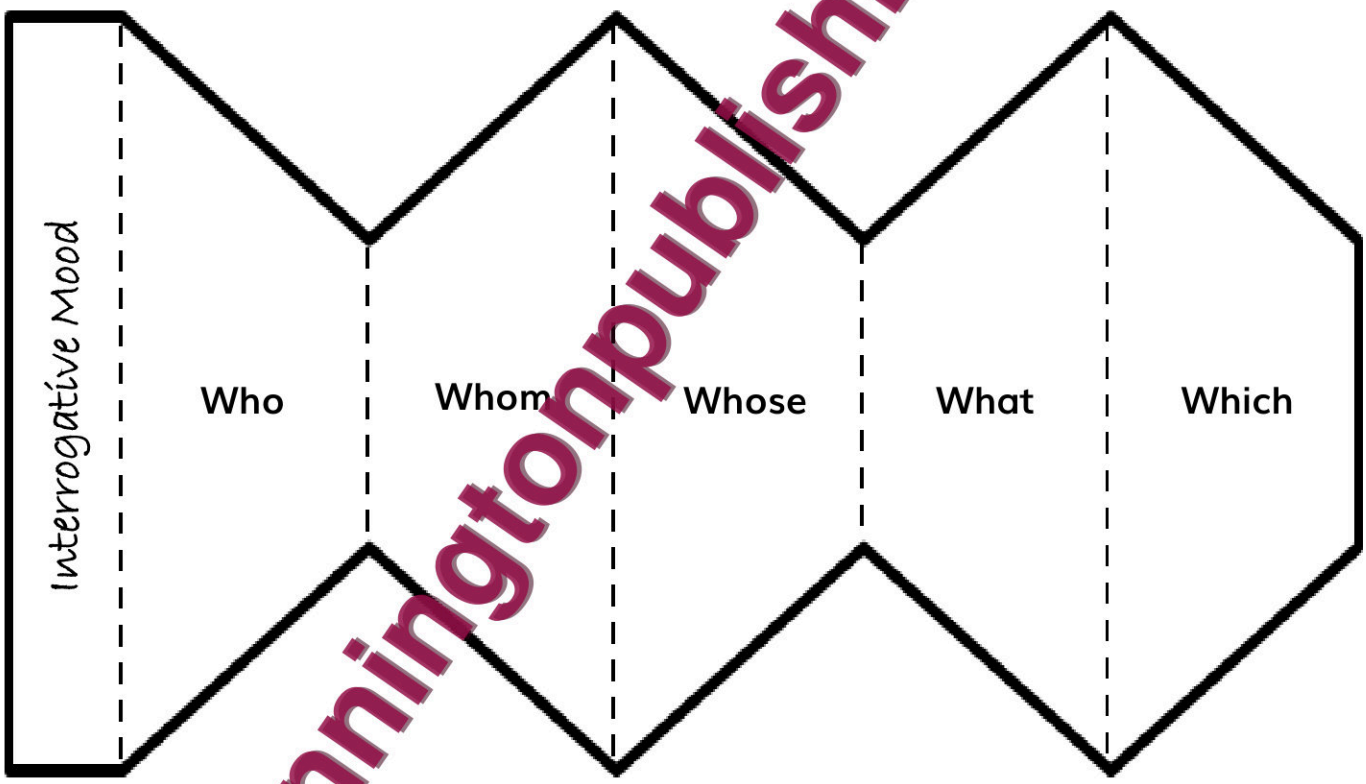
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using examples of the interrogative mood pronouns, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
In addition to the common punctuation marks for formal writing, we use emojis in texts or emails to clarify meaning of or to comment on text.	Use question marks for all direct questions. Place a question mark inside (to the left of) ending quotation marks (?") when the writer is quoting a question that was asked. **Example:** He asked, "Are you going, too?" Place a question mark outside (to the right of) ending quotation marks ("?) when you, the writer, ask a question about a quotation made in the form of a statement or a command. **Example:** Why did he say, "That's not funny"?

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Conditional Word and Phrase Clues if, I should, we should, assuming that, in case, supposing that, whenever, wherever, estimate, speculate, imagine, suppose, theorize, conclude, infer, ascertain, interpret, judge, reason	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The conditional mood is used to discuss something that is possible, but that which can only take place if certain conditions are met. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. Conditional sentences often use the modal helping verbs *could*, *would*, *may* or *might*. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the conditional mood. **Examples:** If they want, I could help. We should have known better. They would be able to visit. He may attend the wedding, but he might have asked first.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I asked my friend, "How come you simply never told me that story? Were you afraid of my reaction?

I asked my friend, "How come you simply never told me that story? Were you afraid of my reaction?"

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Why did Mr. Jamison reply, "You're just too young for this"?"

Why did Mr. Jamison reply, "You're just too young for this"?

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood:

If Dad had only been here, he might have rescued that drowning man.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood:

"John, could you possibly wait just one more minute for us to get ready?"

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood:

When would you be available if you could help us?

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood:

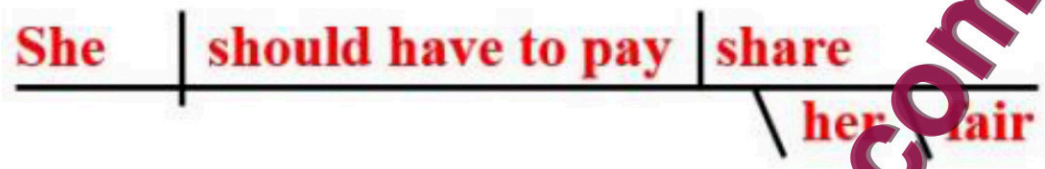
Perhaps Tammy and I may let you share a bit of her fresh boysenberry pie.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Place the entire conditional verb forms to the right of the main vertical line in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "She should have to pay her fair share."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"You might not have been my first love, but you were the love that made all other loves seem irrelevant."

Rupi Kaur (Indian-born Canadian poet and illustrator) (1992–)

Explain what the author means by "irrelevant," using the conditional mood.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

The writer asked the movie star, "Are women treated fairly in the movie business?" Did the star really say, "Women have never been treated fairly"?

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood:

I would have to check my schedule to see if I maybe could visit later.

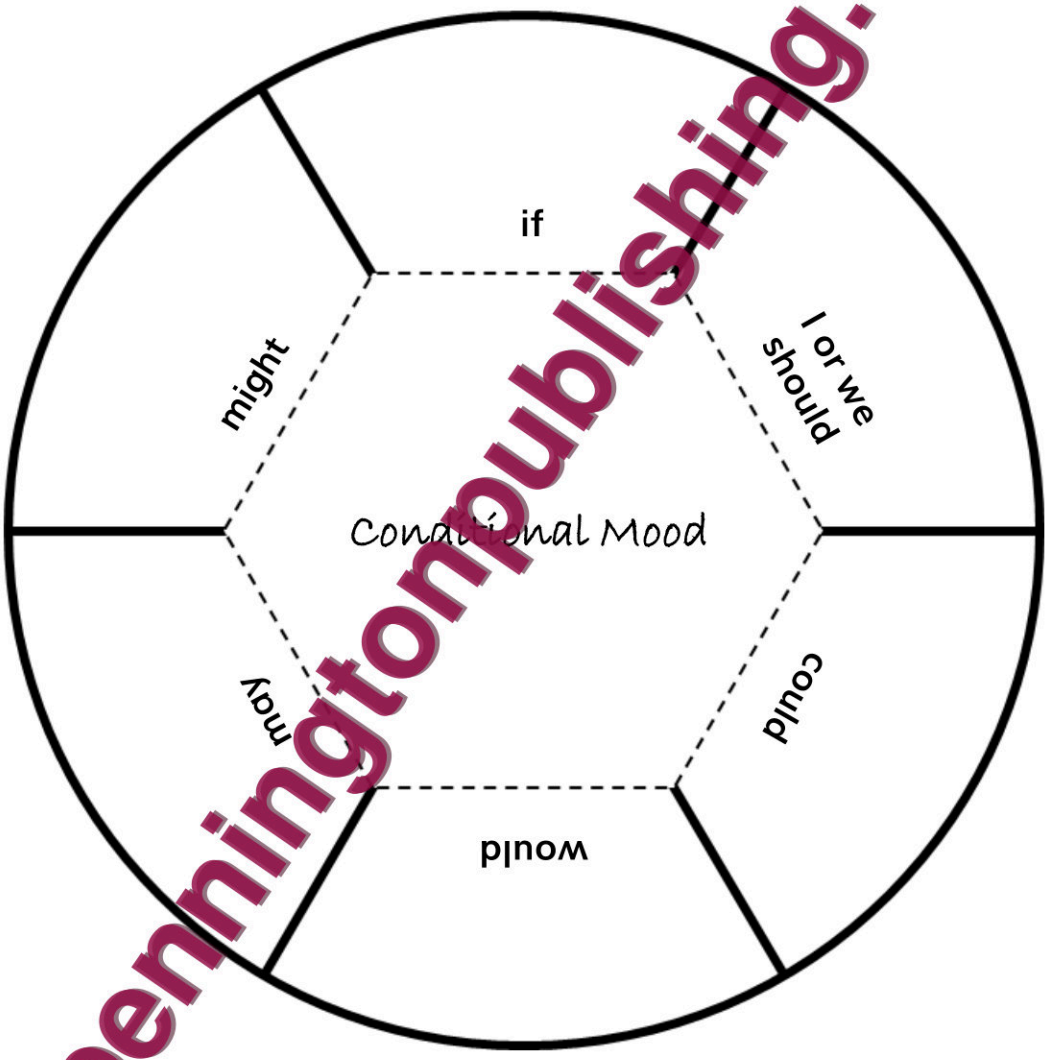
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples of sentence beginnings for the conditional forms on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Use one exclamation point to show surprise or strong emotion in an exclamatory sentence or following an interjection. An interjection is a short sentence fragment used to show extreme emotion and is often used within dialogue. **Examples:** That is amazing! Wow!

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
One way to determine whether to use the verb, *was* or *were*, is to think if the statement is true or not true. If the statement is true, use the verb, *was*. If the statement is *not ture*, use the verb, *were*, because the statement is in the subjunctive mood. **Examples** True: I *was* a rich man. Not True: If I *were* a rich man. Not True: I wish I *were* a rich man. Not True: As though I *were* a rich man.	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The subjunctive mood is used to express a doubt, demand, regret, guess, wish, or a hypothetical situation. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. Often, the subjunctive mood is signaled with these words: *if*, *that*, *as though*, or *unless* and may include these modal helping verbs: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *will*, *would*, *shall*, *should*, and *must*. When the subjunctive mood uses the "to be" verb, use *were or be*, no matter what the tense or subject happens to be. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the subjunctive mood. **Examples:** Doubt– I'm not sure if that will work. Demand– They insisted he be ready by six o'clock. Regret– I'm sorry that happened. Guess– I suppose you could stay. Wish– I wish you were here. Hypothetical– If they stay, they might perform.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: How surprising! I had no idea she would be here.

How surprising! I had no idea she would be here!

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: I can't believe that you said that to your mother. She must have been scared to death!

I can't believe that you said that to your mother! She must have been scared to death!

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

I really doubt if she were the only one who knew.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

If I were the only one to accuse you, I might be regretting my decision to speak up.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

I guess you could say that things would never be the same.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

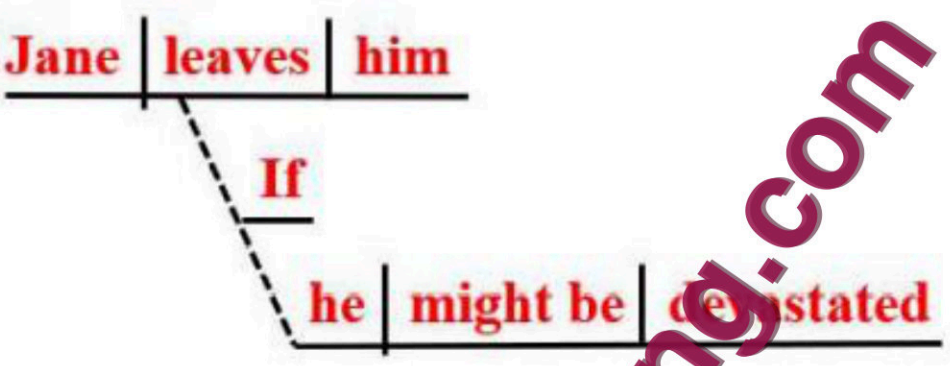
I wish we were able to spend more time with her before she had to leave.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Place the subjunctive verb forms to the right of the main vertical line in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "If Jane leaves him, he might be devastated."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"If I were a rich man. Yubby dibby dibby dibby dibby dibby dibby dum. All day long I'd biddy biddy bum. If I were a wealthy man."

Sheldon Harnick (1924–) and Jerry Bock (1928–2010)
(the composers of the score for *Fiddler on the Roof*)

The song lyric is written in the subjunctive mood. Continue the song lyric with subjunctive mood verbs.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

"Oh my gosh! The decision shocked me!" I screamed.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

If she were a better student, she probably would get higher grades.

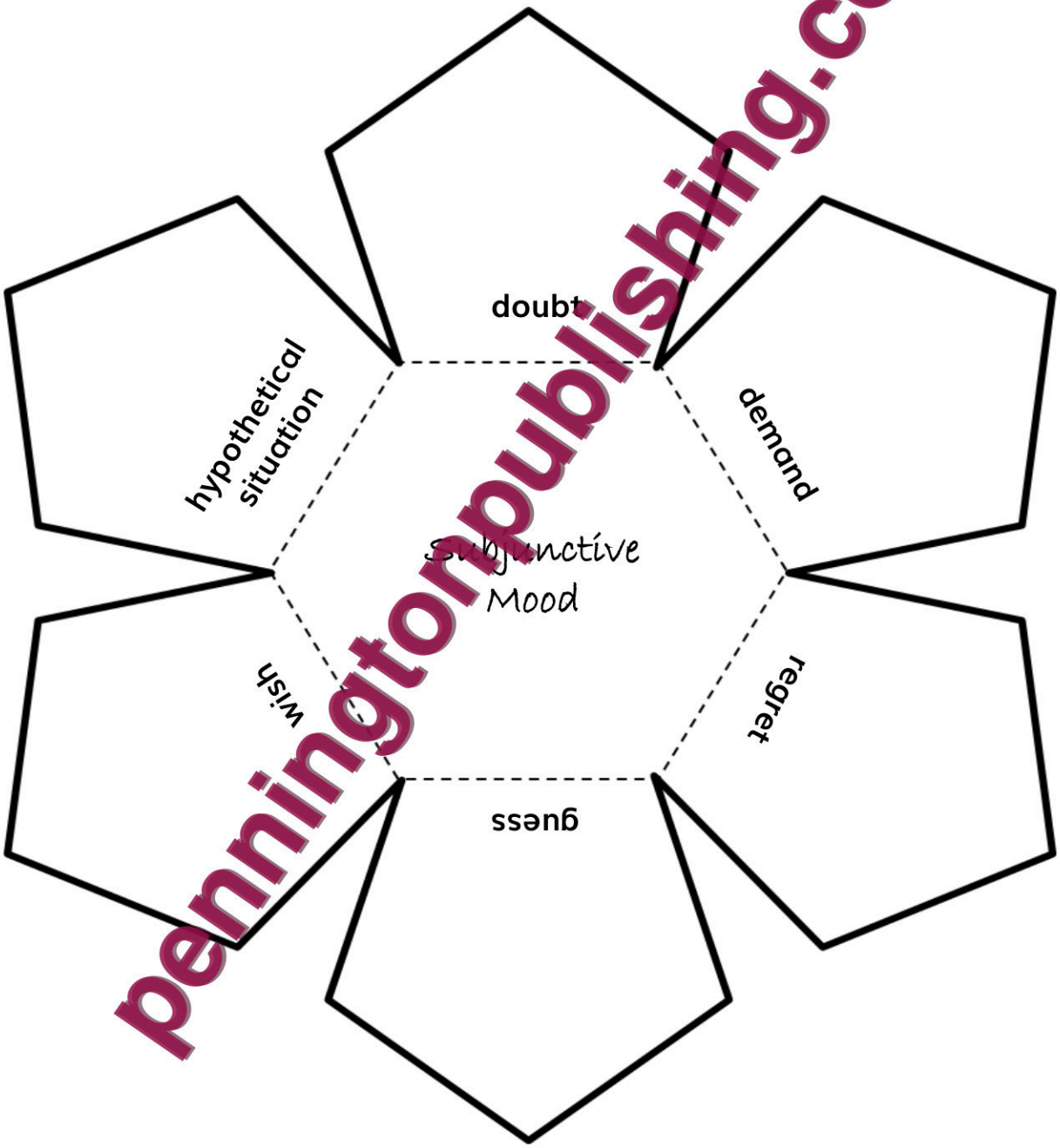
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write examples of sentence beginnings for the subjunctive forms on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Colons serve as ending punctuation, so the following letter is capitalized. Colons are used to show relationships within titles. **Example:** **"The Great Adventure: Landing on the Moon"** Colons are used to show relationships within numbers. **Example:** **He ran the two miles in 14:25:34.** Colons are used to show relationships within ratios. **Example:** **The girls out-number boys 3:1.** Colons are used at the end of speaker tags to introduce long quotations. If a quotation consists of more than four lines, begin a new paragraph after the introductory speaker tag that ends in the colon. Indent each line of the quotation to form a *block quotation*.
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	The voice of a verb refers to the relationship between the subject and the action of the sentence: The active voice is used when the subject performs the action. **Example:** **Mai *uses* the notes.** The passive voice is used when the subject receives the action. **Example:** **The notes *are used* by Mai.** Don't shift from the active to the passive verb voice. **Example:** **He excelled in his studies and was given a scholarship by the university.** **Revision:** **He excelled in his studies and the university gave him a scholarship.**
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Eric wrote "Facts We Should Know; Ten Surprising Issues."

Eric wrote "Facts We Should Know: Ten Surprising Issues."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Daniel walked the mile in 12:42.40.

Daniel walked the mile in 12:42:40.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girls outnumbered the boys 4:1, but the mosquitoes outnumbered them all 4,000;1.

The girls outnumbered the boys 4:1, but the mosquitoes outnumbered them all 4,000:1.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the passive voice:

I decided to leave because it had all happened to me before.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the active voice.

Jaime walked into the restaurant and talked to the head waiter.

6. Revise this sentence into the active voice: The money was handed to me by my cousin and I spent it all on candy.

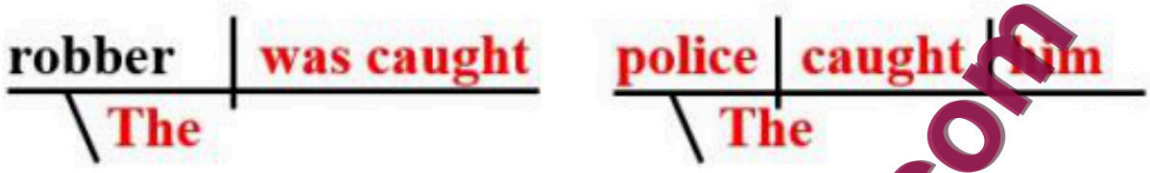
My cousin handed the money to me and I spent it all on candy.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Complete these two sentence diagrams: "The robber was caught." "The police caught him."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Here is life, an experiment to a great extent untried by me; but it does not avail me that they have tried it."

Henry David Thoreau (the author of *Walden*)
(1817–1862)

The quotation includes both active and passive voice to counsel young people not to listen to the advice of their seniors. Respond to the author's point, using both active and passive voice.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

"Oh my gosh! The decision shocked me!" I screamed.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

If she were a better student, she probably would get higher grades.

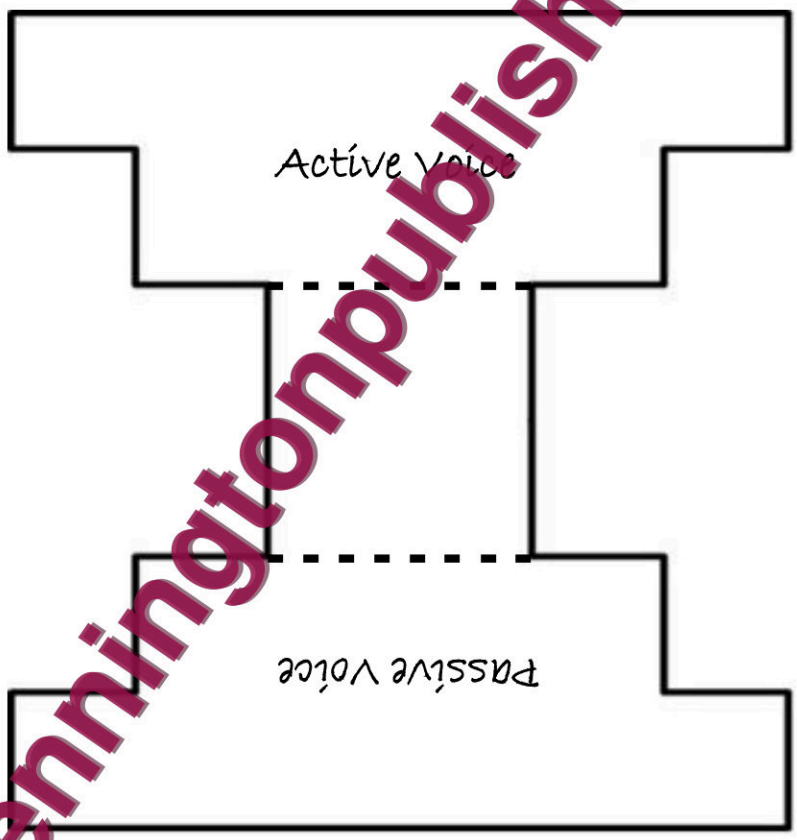
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using examples of active and passive voice, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
If the related information is especially relevant to the previous statement, commas are preferred over parentheses. Long dashes, known as *em dashes*, may be used instead of parentheses in informal writing. **Examples** The man (the one in the old coat) was interesting. or The man——the one in the old coat——was interesting.	Parentheses can be used in a variety of ways: As an aside. **Example**: John responded (quickly). As an appositive. **Example**: Sue (the girl in red) With numbers to clarify what has been said in the sentence. **Examples**: He ran a marathon (26.2 miles). To punctuate letters which list key points within the sentence. **Examples**: She had a choice of (a) apple or (b) cherry pie. As a separate sentence to comment on a preceding sentence. Place the period, question mark, or exclamation point inside the closing parenthesis. **Example**: I wasn't hungry. (I had already eaten lunch.)
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
A few subordinating conjunctions, such as *before*, *after*, and *until*, are also prepositions. If one of these words is followed by a noun or noun phrase, it's a preposition. **Example:** before noon If it follows with a noun and connected verb, it's an adverbial clause. **Example:** Before I leave, I want to say goodbye.	An adverbial clause is a dependent clause that begins with a subordinating conjunction and modifies an adjective, adverb, or verb. Adverbial clauses can be placed at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a sentence. **Examples: Unless you practice, you will never succeed. It was worse, when he left, than it was before.He should try even though he will lose.** **Subordinating Conjunctions: Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW** before, unless, despite (in spite of), in order that, so, while, if, since, even though (if), because, until, that, how, once, than, after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though), whether, when (whenever), where (wherever)
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The comedian closed her show with her best joke—by far—and the audience laughed (heartily).

The comedian closed her show with her best joke (by far) and the audience laughed (heartily).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Juan the businessman (in the dark suit) asked me about the manufacturing plant (the one in China).

Juan (the businessman in the dark suit) asked me about the manufacturing plant (the one in China).

3. Re-write this sentence correctly:

She listed four reasons as to why attendance at school is so important: (a) grades (b) money (c) pride and (d) learning.

4. Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunction. [Bracket] the adverbial clause.

[While no one was looking,] she jumped off the ten-foot diving board.

5. Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunction. [Bracket] the adverbial clause.

They left for their week-long vacation, [even though their was no gas in the tank,] and started down the long highway.

6. Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunction. [Bracket] the adverbial clause.

I usually am the one

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Adverbial clauses are placed below the main horizontal line and connect to the predicate with a dotted, slanted line. Complete the sentence diagram: "He is finishing the project while we wait."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Whenever people agree with me, I always feel I must be wrong."

Oscar Wilde (an Irish writer and poet)
(1854–1900)

The quotation includes a subordinating conjunction to express a condition modifying the main clause. Respond to the author's point, using an adverbial clause.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly, applying the parentheses rules:

He gave me some delicious carne asada (beef steak). (He really didn't have to do it.)

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunctions. [Bracket] the adverbial clauses.

[Unless you ask,] I won't help. [As soon as you know,] please text me.

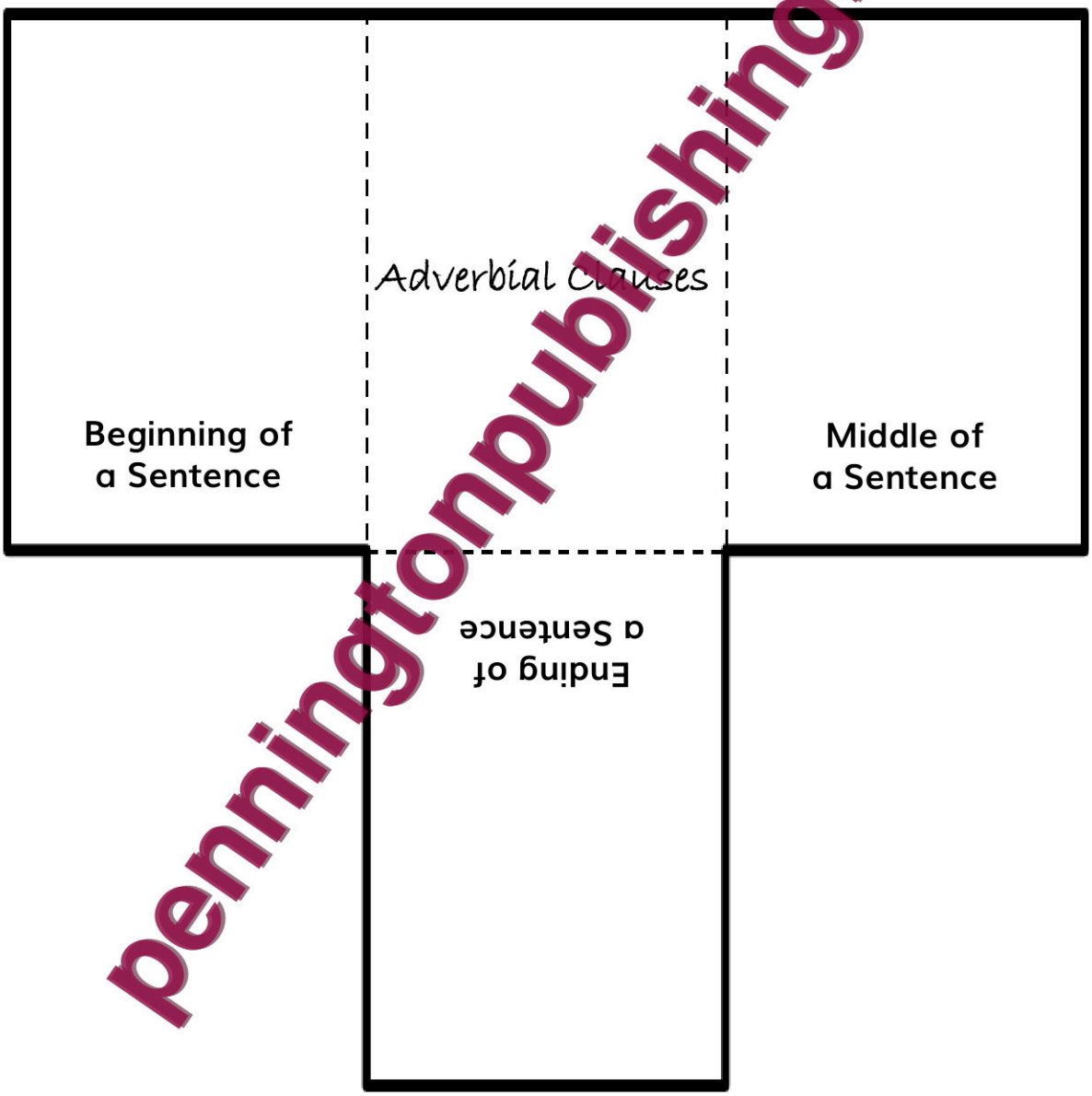
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using examples of the adverbial clauses, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Hyphens are used for compound adjectives. **Examples** Compound Adjective: The well-known celebrity was friendly to the press.	Dashes come in three sizes and serve different purposes. These are the three sizes: hyphen (-), en dash (–), and em dash (—). The hyphen (-) is used for a compound word or for a close connection between words. **Examples:** Jerry Garcia-Johnson, two-thirds The en dash (–) is used to show a range of values between dates, times, and numbers. **Examples:** From July 6–9 between the hours of 7:00–9:00 a.m., a crowd of 80–90 will protest at the Smith–Jones factory. The em dash (—) is used to show a pause in thought or for appositives instead of parentheses or commas. **Examples:** I don't know—only he did it. The man—the one in the baseball cap—is her dad.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
The relative adverb *when* can mean "in which" or "at which" if used as a time expression. **Example:** Six o'clock is the hour when we sit down to dinner. The relative adverb *why* can mean "for which" if used to tell a reason. **Example:** The issue why he must stay is debatable.	These relative adverbs are used as transition words at the beginning of a sentence or following a semicolon: *however, also, furthermore, otherwise, then, besides, similarly, therefore, consequently, moreover, still, thus, finally, nevertheless, supposedly, on the other hand*. Place commas after relative adverbs, not before. **Examples:** Therefore, he lied. He lied; therefore, he was punished. The *when*, *where*, and *why* relative adverbs are used to begin certain adverbial clauses. **Examples:** When you lied and where you did it, will never explain why you didn't tell the truth.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: From 1:00–3:00 p.m. she loaded the truck and Frances Jones—Diaz ready took off on her September 9-12 trip.

From 1:00–3:00 p.m. she loaded the truck and Frances Jones-Diaz ready took off on her September 9–12 trip.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Wait—I heard that 40–50 soldiers were stationed on the French to Spanish border.

Wait—I heard that 40–50 soldiers were stationed on the French–Spanish border.

3. Re-write the sentence, [bracket] the relative adverbs, and correct the punctuation.

Similarly, the boys were dressed in blue; otherwise, they were quite different.

4. Re-write this sentence, underline the relative adverb, and [bracket] the adverbial clause.

[When I threw the baseballs,] the fans went wild.

5. Re-write this sentence, underline the relative adverb, and [bracket] the adverbial clause.

I don't know [where they went,] but they took forever to return.

6. Re-write this sentence, underline the relative adverb, and [bracket] the adverbial clause.

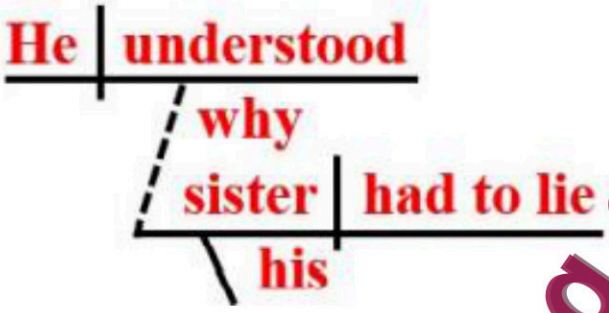
The neighbors never realized [why you asked to borrow the lawnmower.]

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Relative adverbs are placed on slanted dotted lines below the verbs they modify. Complete the sentence diagram: "He understood why his sister had to lie."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"It will, therefore, be of use to begin by examining the advantages of that Union... This shall accordingly constitute the subject of my next address."

Alexander Hamilton (the first Secretary of the Treasury)
(1757–1804)

The quotation includes relative adverbs to argue for the adoption of the proposed Constitution. Use at least one relative adverb to argue that the Constitution has or has not been a positive force to support democracy.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

They played each day from June 24–June 28 from 1:00–3:00 p.m. The Smith-Frank team won the tournament matches 3–2.

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and [bracket] the relative adverbs. Underline the adverbial clauses.

It's the restaurant [where] we had our first argument. It was late that night [when] we arrived. However, you did not say [why] y

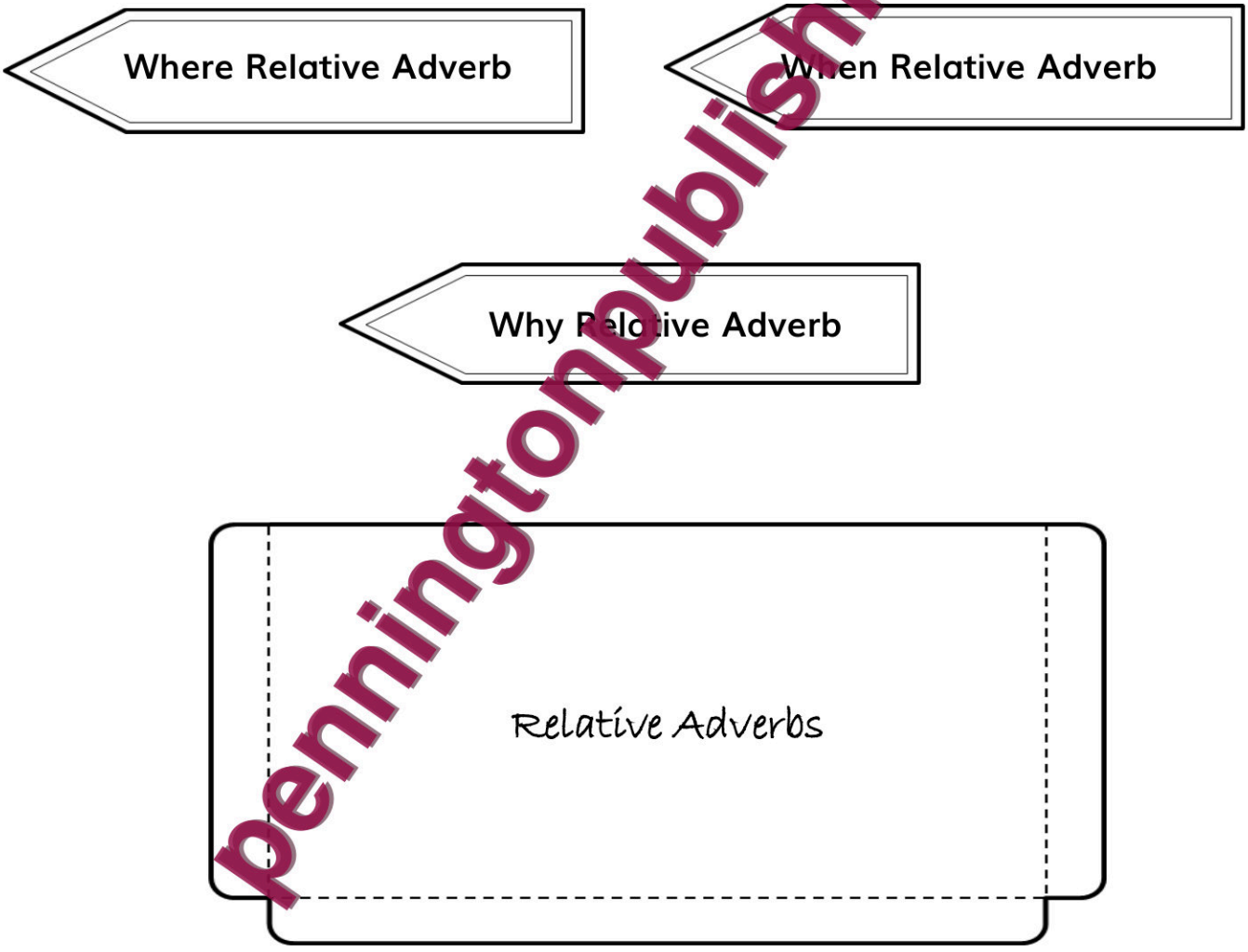
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using examples of the relative adverbs, on the back of each flap. Then put the arrows in the folder.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
The British use brackets in the same way that Americans use parentheses.	Use brackets to provide missing or explanatory information within direct quotations. **Example:** The author stated, "You found it [the missing coat] on the table" (Klyburn 24). In scripts and plays, brackets are also used as stage directions both inside and outside of dialogue. **Examples:** Grace: [Nervously] I don't know what you mean. Mr. Johnson: [Pacing back and forth] Oh, you know!

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
	As a matter of good writing style, place shorter adverbial phrases in front of longer ones. **Example:** We ran more slowly, yet more purposefully. Also, place specific adverbs before general ones. **Example:** We ran to the corner, then everywhere. When using more than one adverb in a sentence, follow this order of adverbial functions: What Degree-How-Where-When. **Example:** She sings more enthusiastically on the stage each night.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Add brackets to this direct quotation: "Why would the Franks leave them their phones in the locker room?" the author asked.

"Why would the Franks leave them [their phones] in the locker room?" the author asked.

2. Add brackets to this dialogue:

Omri: [Excitedly] Oh I hope my mom and dad will attend! Edward: If they do [pausing to think] they may not like what they see.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Halley after dinner walked into her room carefully.

Halley walked carefully into her room after dinner.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Sue spoke with a much more determined voice and loudly.

Sue spoke loudly with a much more determined voice.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Clark apologized generally to the whole family and specifically to me.

Clark apologized specifically to me and generally to the whole family.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mary pedals strenuously less since her knee surgery up hill on her bike.

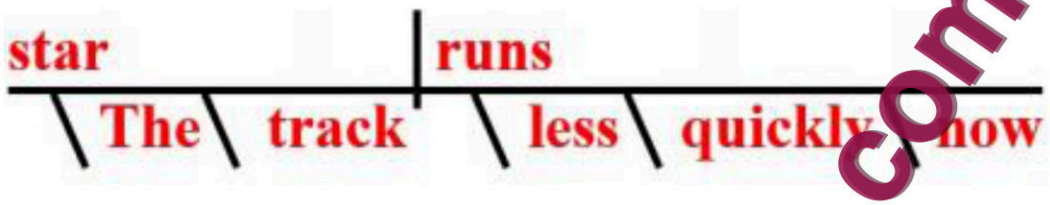
Mary pedals less strenuously up hill on her bike since her knee surgery.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Multiple adverbs are placed under the verb they modify in proper adverb order. Revise and Complete the sentence diagram: "The track star runs quickly now less."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"They talk loudly, especially about conspiracies of monopolists'; they beat upon the table with their fists; and they secrete fragments of their inventions about their persons."

Rudyard Kipling (the British poet and author)
(1865–1936)

The quotation includes numerous adverbs in proper adverbial order. Respond to the author's point, using at least two adverbs in proper adverbial order.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

"Students need to read the Dress Rules [page 22] to understand it [the dress code]," the principal said.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and underline the adverbial phrases:

The family walks around the block after every Thanksgiving Dinner. It should be exactly where I described, somewhere over there.

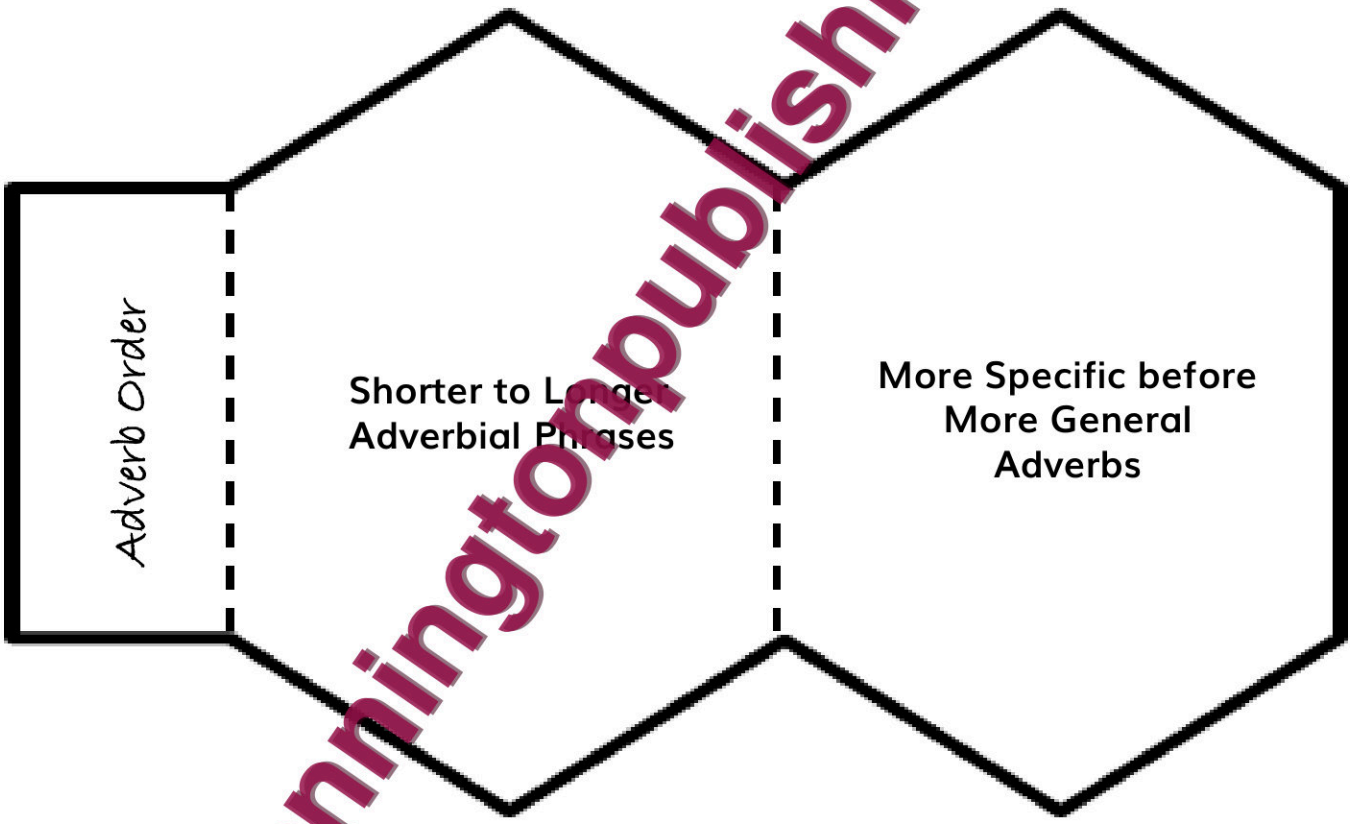
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Write sentences, using examples of adverbial phrases and adverbs, on the back of each flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Compound adverbs can also be written as one word... **Examples:** somewhere, everywhere, anywhere ...or as two words. **Examples:** inside out, round about, fully employed	Use hyphens for compound adverbs that don't end in "_ly," when used before nouns. A compound adverb is two connected adverbs. **Example**: The much-requested song When the compound adverb is after the noun, don't hyphenate. **Example**: Her wishes were always well known.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
Non-standard English is informal, conversational English that does not follow the rules of English. Students using non-standard English need the skills to be able to use standard English in formal speech and writing in school and in the workplace.	When writing in Standard English, don't drop verbs or parts of verbs. **Examples:** She ~~nice~~ (is nice), but I ~~been~~ (had been) nice to her first. Where ~~you~~ (are you) at? Who ~~she~~ (is she)?

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

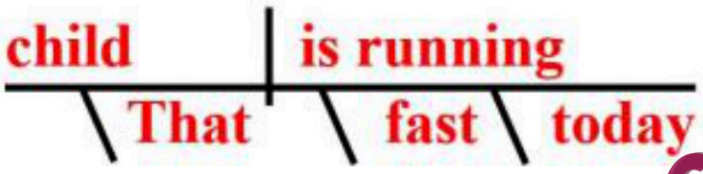
1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The least interested student woke up when the teacher began his story.
The least-interested student woke up when the teacher began his story.
2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Margie was well prepared for her camping trip, but she avoided taking the well worn family tent.
Margie was well prepared for her camping trip, but she avoided taking the well-worn family tent.
3. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English:Harold sweet, but he been acting that way to all the girls.
Harold is sweet, but he has (had) been acting that way to all the girls.
4. Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: Why you always do too much? You try too hard to get noticed.
Why are you always doing too much? or Why do you always do too much? You try too hard to get noticed.
5. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English: My parents been helpful to both my sister and me, but it time we made it on our own.
My parents have (had) been helpful to both my sister and me, but it is (was) time (that) we made it on our own.
6. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English:How you do what you do without any plan?
How do you do what you do without any plan?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence in Standard English and Complete the sentence diagram: "That child running fast today."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Now ever since my birth, I've been cursed since I'm born to wild in case I never get to holla at my unborn child."

Tupac Shakur (American rapper)
(1971–1996)

The writer drops parts of verbs in this lyric to emphasize the action. Continue the lyric, dropping parts of the verb forms.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

The long-awaited decision was well known, but its short-sighted recommendations were dangerous.

Grammar and Usage – Write these sentences correctly in Standard English:
When you be there? I told you it need fixin' before you leave.

When will you be there? I told you it needs to be fixed before you leave.

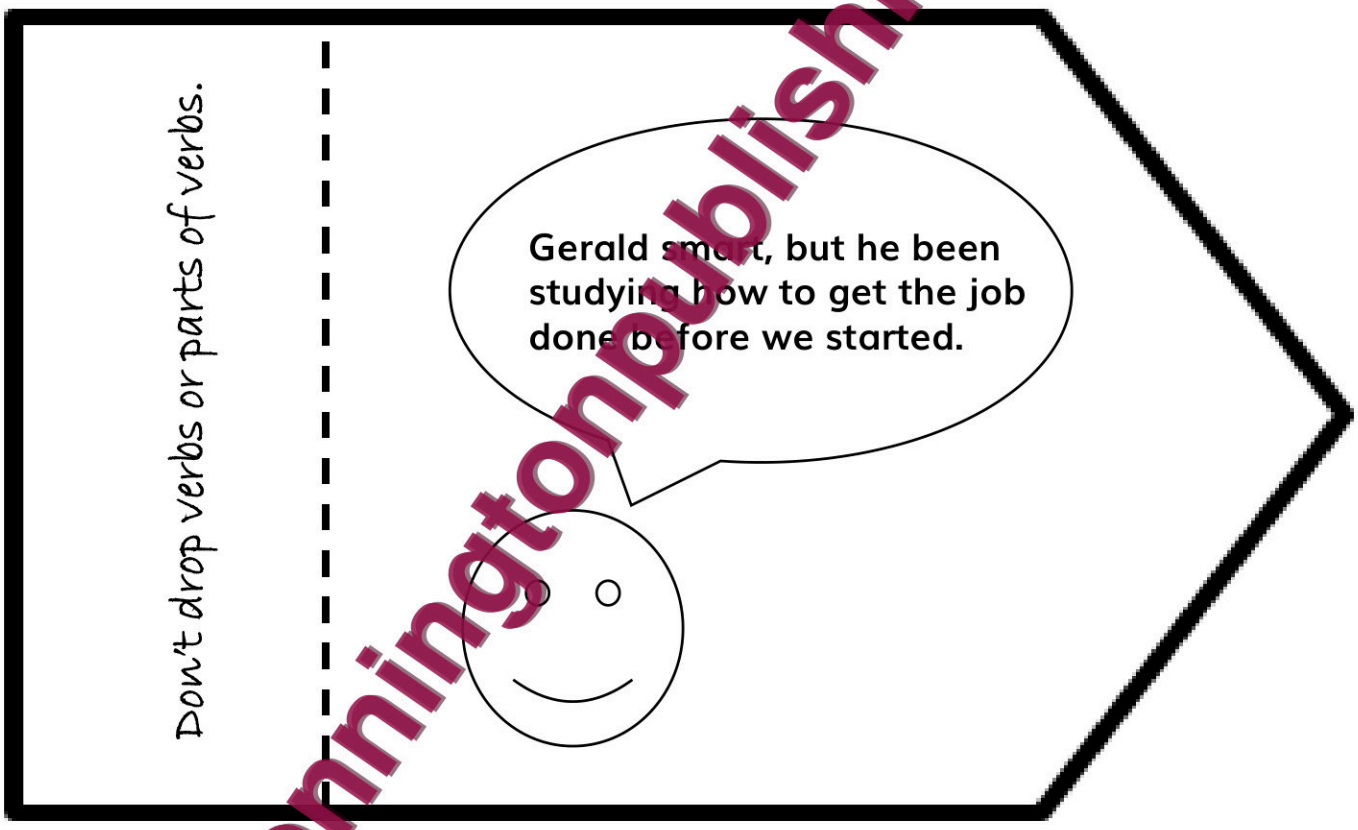
pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Revise the non-standard English on the back of the flap.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
Following are the most common slashed abbreviations: c/o for *care of* l/c for *lower case*. N/A for *not* w/ for *with* w/o for *without* b/c for *because* w/e for *whatever* j/k for *just kidding*	In informal writing, use a slash to separate dates, abbreviate, or to mean *or*. **Examples:** The dinner is scheduled on 3/11/2013 as a b/w (black or white tie) event.

Resources	Grammar and Usage Notes
We speak differently in different social situations. Hopefully, you talk to your mom and teacher differently than the way you talk to your friends. Most of us text differently than the way we write an essay. After all, beginning an essay with "BTW some so reb ldrs thot they really would win the civil war LOL" will probably not impress your history teacher. Students definitely need to learn the fine art of "code switching." To code switch means to consider your audience and adjust what you say or write and how you do so. Using non-standard English in the wrong setting, such as in the classroom, is important to recognize and avoid.	Avoid using non-standard use of contractions. Don't add the *of* or *on* preposition when unnecessary. **Example:** Get off ~~of~~ my couch. Don't hate ~~on~~ me. I'm just doing my job. When writing in Standard English, do *not* use double negatives. **Example:** Don't use ~~no~~ notes on the test. Also, don't use an intensive pronoun without a noun or pronoun reference. **Example:** Dress ~~yourself~~ up for the party.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

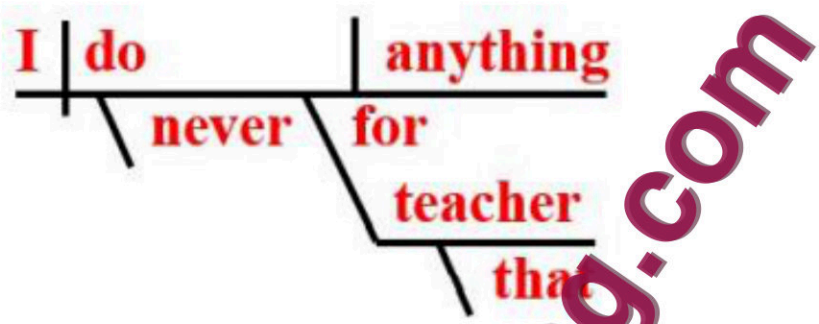
1. Re-write this sentence correctly: We celebrated our best family Christmas ever on 12/25-2017 w/o any presents whatsoever.
We celebrated our best family Christmas ever on 12/25/2017 w/o any presents whatsoever.
2. Re-write this sentence correctly: My mom filled out most of my application for me b/cause it was in Spanish though I had to explain what N/A means to her.
My mom filled out most of my application for me b/c it was in Spanish though I had to explain what N/A means to her.
3. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: It's time you got off of his back and got your life together yourself.
It's time you got off his back and got your life together.
4. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: On which television show are you appearing on and when?
On which television show are you appearing and when?
5. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Believe on me when I tell you... She was never not going to come to your birthday party.
Believe me when I tell you... She was always going to come to your birthday party.
6. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Why won't he get himself ready to go before you leave yourself?
Why won't he get ready to go before you leave?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence in Standard English and Complete the sentence diagram: "I never do nothing for that teacher."



Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"We don't gotta trade our shoes, and you ain't gotta walk no thousand miles."

Eminem (the rap and hip hop artist)
(1972–)

The quotation includes the additions of multiple negatives to emphasize the writer's point. Interpret what the writer means, using non-standard English additions.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence with slashes for dates, for abbreviations, and for *or*.

Is the appointment on 6/3/12 with or w/o the family attorney and/or or your parents?

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: She got off of her chair herself and started a speech. She never push no ideas on me.

She got off her chair and started a speech. She always did push (pushed) her ideas on me.

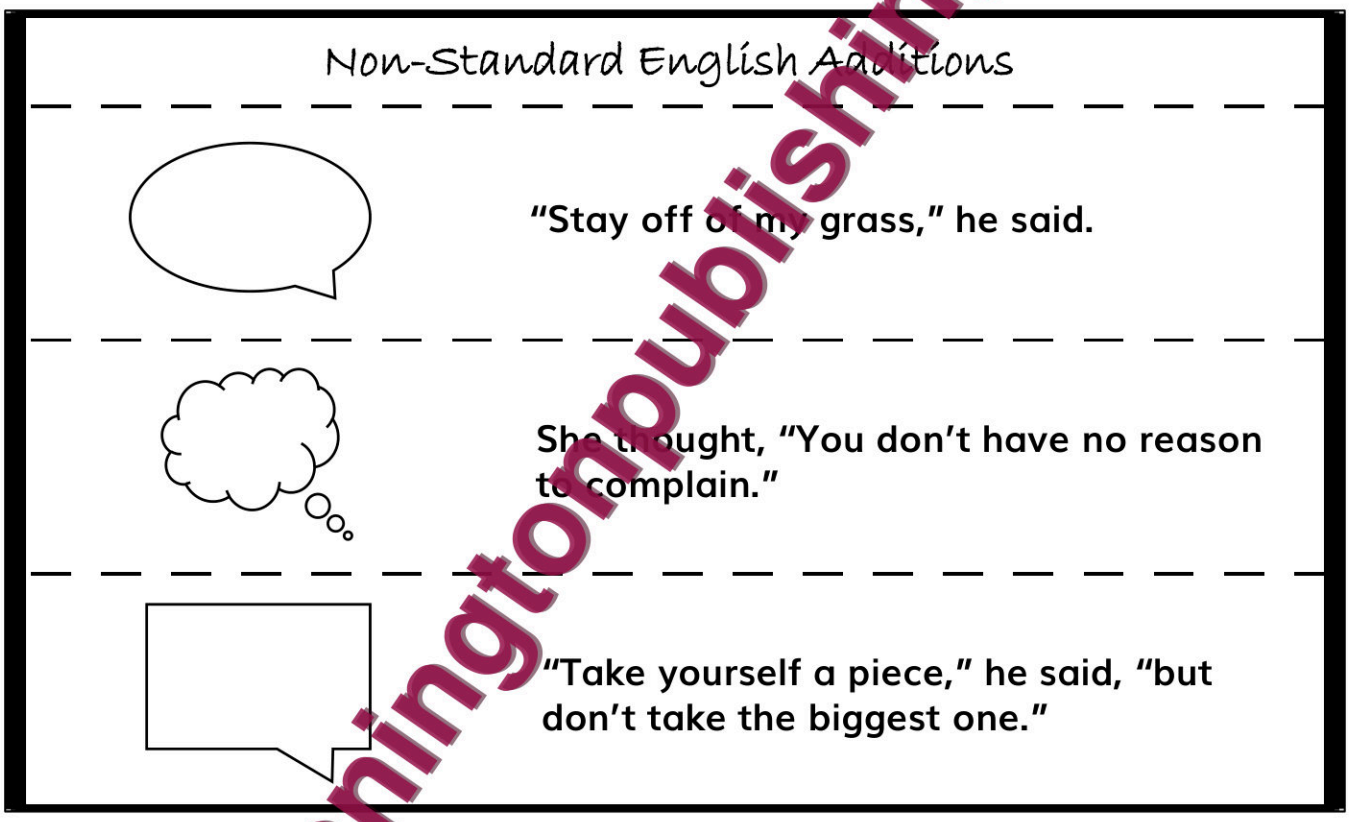
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Revise the non-standard English on the back of the flap.



penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Spell out numbers from one to nine, but use Arabic numerals for #s 10 and larger. However, spell out the number if used at the beginning of a sentence. **Examples:** five, 24, Six is a lot of donuts. If a sentence has one number from one to nine and others larger, use Arabic numerals for all. **Examples:** Both numbers 2 and 12 were selected. If numbers are next to each other, use the Arabic numeral for one and spell out the other. **Example:** We ate 3 six-inch sandwiches.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
Most teachers accept the view that non-standard English is permissible and a form of dialect in informal means of communication, such as non-academic discussion, texting, tweeting, and playground language.	Don't substitute *be* for *am*, *are*, or *is* to create an ongoing action in Standard English. **Example:** He be so funny. Instead, use the present progressive verb tense to connect *am*, *are*, or *is* to a present participle (a verb with an "__ing" ending). **Revisions:** He is so funny; He is being so funny. Also, use the proper form of the "to be" verb to match its subject. **Example:** He were so funny. **Revision:** He was so funny.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Seven slices of pizza were eaten by each of the twenty-two members of the squad in the record time of 5 minutes.

Seven slices of pizza were eaten by each of the 22 members of the squad in the record time of 5 minutes.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Their ages ranged between 8 to eighteen, but the average age was eleven.

Their ages ranged between 8–18, but the average age was 11.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The carpenter needs to saw 9 5-foot boards for the bookcase.

The carpenter needs to saw 9 five-foot boards for the bookcase.

4. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Mike and Amelia was able to complete the work all by themselves, but I was always available to help.

Mike and Amelia were able to complete the work all by themselves, but I was always available to help.

5. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Sheila been thinking that she be the only one to understand the problem.

Sheila had been (was) thinking that she was the only one to understand the problem.

6. Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: His mom be so anxious to retire. She be counting the days.

His mom was so anxious to retire. She was counting the days.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram Answers

Revise this sentence in Standard English and Complete the sentence diagram: "This girl be asking for my help."

Mentor Text and Response Discussion

"Don't be asking me no dumb questions, man," bassist Mark White told *Vox* interviewer Max Bell. "I wouldn't know anything except that we're exploiting the kids. I'm just a useless, talentless, no-good musician."

Mark White (the bass player of The Spin Doctors) (1961–)

The quotation includes the present progressive *be* and the present participle *asking* to add stress to this imperative sentence. Respond to the musician's point, using at least one using non-standard English substitution.

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

Four aces is a great poker hand. I got two of those hands in each of the last three games.

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: I be so ready to move. They was always certain they be living in Florida someday.

I am so ready to move, They were always certain they would be living in Florida someday.

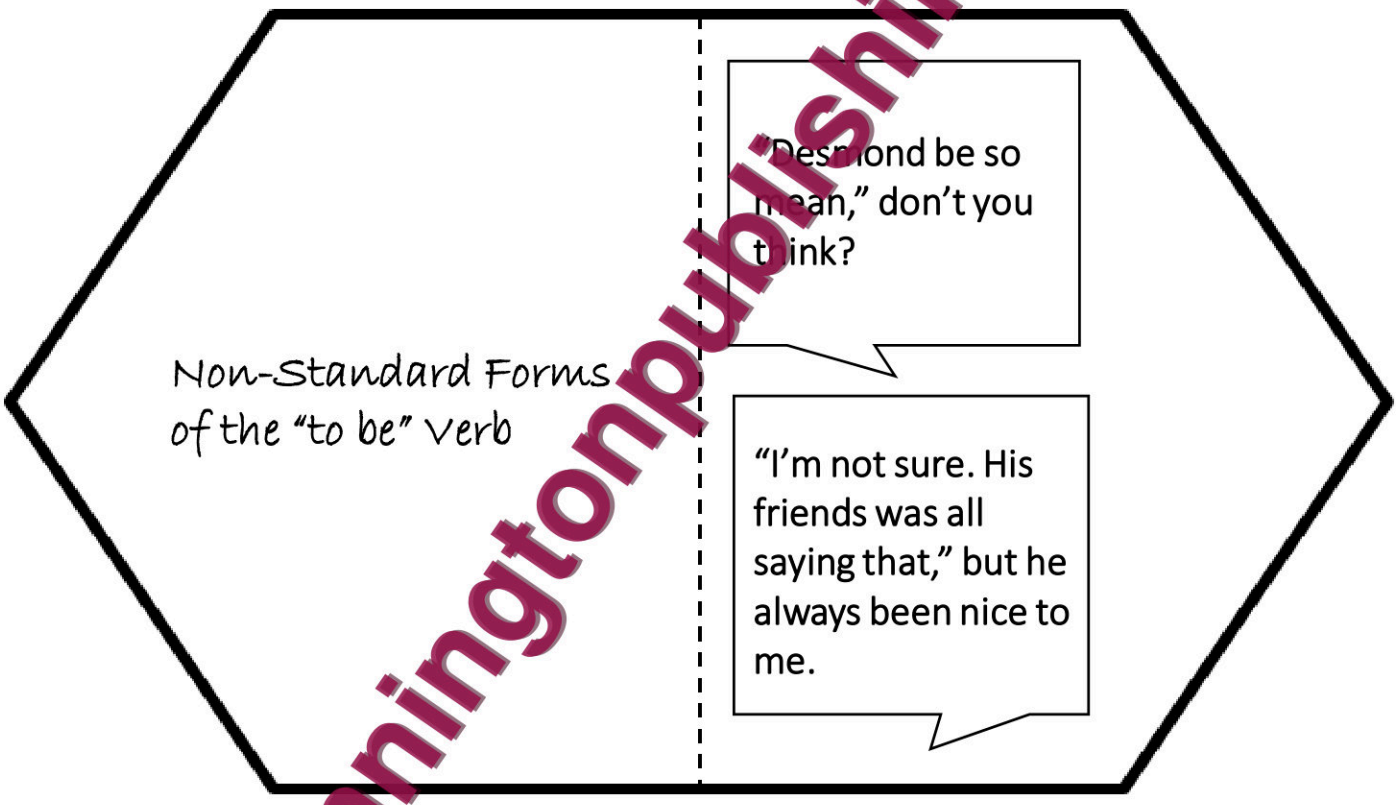
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

3d Graphic Organizers

Directions

1. Color or highlight.
2. Cut at the solid lines, fold at the dotted lines, and glue or tape the tabs.
3. Revise the non-standard English on the back of the flap.



pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Tests

The biweekly Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test is designed to assess student mastery of the content, skills, or rules after teaching four mechanics and four grammar and usage lessons. For example, if the teacher completes lessons 1 and 2 on Tuesday and Thursday for the first week and lessons 3 and 4 on Tuesday and Thursday for the second week, students will be prepared to take the unit test the following day (on Friday).

Administrative Options

The Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test has been designed to take only 15–20 minutes for most students to complete. More time teaching and less time testing! Teachers may elect to give the unit tests every four weeks by combining two of each test to assess mastery of eight lessons. Teachers may choose to give the printable version or the Google forms test format.

Some teachers choose to allow students to use their notes on the test. If choosing this option, teachers may require students to provide their own examples for the sentence application section of the test.

Test Structure and Grading

Each Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test has eight matching questions: two from each mechanics and two from each grammar and usage lesson. Students are required to match definitions and examples. The sentence application section also has eight test problems: two from each mechanics and two from each grammar and usage lesson. Students are required to apply their understanding of the mechanics and grammar and usage content, skills, or rules in the writing context through original sentence applications or revisions. Test answers for each matching section are provided at the end of the unit tests.

Test Review Options

Pretest

Teachers may review key grammar, usage, and mechanics content, skills, and rules the day before the unit test. Students should review their Cornell notes.

Posttest

Teachers may choose to review the matching section answers of the test and/or re-teach any deficiencies. Or teachers may elect to rely upon the individualized assessment-based instruction of the Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheets or slides to fill in any gaps.

As the writers of the Common Core State Standards note regarding the Language Strand Standards, much of the acquisition of the grammar, usage, and mechanics standards is recursive in nature and requires cyclical instruction as is provided throughout the *Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics* High School program.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Unit Tests (Self-Correcting Google Forms)

Lessons 1-4
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1M6RNVVKYDB4Cz6Tx78P5oSFkWjKb6-VpHPSphMhXCbk/copy
Lessons 5-8
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1PG0bdxHjiewmcHdfqWvRFmjJ7JI-fkiA4QX7EbiQ6Zg/copy
Lessons 9-12
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1M5W_YofkrAo8ukU6wMcy4Gym_K8whUvKf3PSyBHmX-I/copy
Lessons 13-16
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1McdV7-JG4T5VHMvsXXIn6OtotNjv2ug3[illegible]erejTIS4M/copy
Lessons 17-20
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1qarQyFuzaJBgCEAGPBVT2BpgOEuA_Yr1fIzWDFDIm5Q/copy
Lessons 21-24
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1nCl9RxJh0YCbLHV4-wcuBNuh[illegible]-jdUdZWk3E/copy
Lessons 25-28
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1ORq74Nukttt44_0246-0gTB[illegible]KovZMosLtqzrIg/copy
Lessons 29-32
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1hRuyOsUVJBoD4YoSfL6G[illegible]BrTAwH3qd2hkKPkfnwi3Y/copy
Lessons 33-36
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1NR9vE47BHJlskN8[illegible]CI3YDT29mWctiSBjXLiak/copy
Lessons 37-40
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1Uk5ElgtO1JK[illegible]xmJ0g9w1qv6epmNhHJ638gt_ac/copy
Lessons 41-44
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1AAW2Hpwc[illegible]79v8h3IPqS2IPzJwRX-hDKcOSnJ6KTY/copy
Lessons 45-48
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1gCKiVY[illegible]77C0DKihMGRWR4nqHSn6rI3TVEhUhd0s/copy
Lessons 49-52
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/1PM[illegible]KnJE0wREIUviuPdjL6HJiET-oOp3s94fl6lZ1M/copy
Lessons 53-56
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/13[illegible]0JEgKLTOExsEkRS2CoV5f8eYU_nmTno0A_NGPQ/copy
Lessons 57-60
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/[illegible]Knt-0NyYhHHUbI3lYMmmk-oal2R7oDxBdnH4x0DYs0/copy
Lessons 61-64
https://docs.google.com/forms/d/19waYEHOZyE5OlONkTtz7xtg9ovPswh_dNibHeIo1dg0/copy

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 1–4

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. i before e Rule	A. Change to i if root ends in consonant then y.
____2. Proper nouns	B. Keep with a soft /c/ or /g/ then "able" or "ible."
____3. Final y Rule	C. Idea, person, place or thing.
____4. Common nouns	D. Subjective, possessive, or object case.
____5. Silent final e Rule	E. "ei" after c or sounding like long /a/
____6. Pronouns	AB. Yes, if all three agree. No, if they don't.
____7. Consonant Doubling Rule	AC. Capitalized to name a person, place, or thing.
____8. Adjectives	AD. Which one? How many? What kind?

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including two of your own "ei" spellings. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence including two types of proper nouns. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence, using two words with suffixes which change and keep the final y.

_____

_____

12. Write a sentence including two types of common nouns. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence, using two words with suffixes which drop and keep the final e.

_____

_____

14. Write a sentence including two types of pronouns. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence, using two words with suffixes which double and don't double the final consonant. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence including two types of adjectives. _____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 5–8

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. "an_" or "en_" Rule	A. Show a relationship to an object.
____2. Verbs	B. What degree? How? Where? When?
____3. "able" or "ible" Rule	C. "cian" for a person.
____4. Adverbs	D. Change f to "ves".
____5. /ion/ Rule	E. Mental or physical action or state of being.
____6. Conjunctions	AB. Coordinate, correlate, subordinate.
____7. Plurals Rule	AC. One spelling if root ends in "ear" or "ure" and the other if root ends in "id" or "ere."
____8. Prepositions	AD. Depends upon whether root is complete or incomplete.

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence, using two words with "an_" and "en_" suffixes. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence including two types of verbs. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence, using two words with "able" and "ible" suffixes. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence including two types of adverbs. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence, using three words with "sion," "cian," and "tion" suffixes. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence including two types of conjunctions. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence, using plural spellings for two nouns ending in o and y. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence with a prepositional phrase at the beginning. _____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 9–12

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. e.g.	A. Asian-American, peace
____2. Noun	B. For example
____3. Abbreviation; acronym	C. Used in place of a noun
____4. Personal pronoun	D. I wonder who left the jar open.
____5. Indirect question	E. U.N., SWAT
____6. Subject (nominative) case pronoun	AB. Organizes with numbers and letters
____7. Decimal outlines	AC. Act upon a verb or refer to a subject
____8. Object case pronoun	AD. Receives the action of the verb

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including *i.e.* and *etc.* _____

_____

10. Write a sentence including a common noun, idea and a hyphenated proper noun. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence including an abbreviation and an acronym. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence including both singular and plural personal pronouns. _____

_____

13. Write an indirect question. Then answer with an intentional fragment. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence including a subject (nominative) case pronoun. _____

_____

15. List a main idea, major detail, and two minor details in decimal outline form. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence using the object case pronoun *whom*. _____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 13–16

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Semicolon	A. Shows ownership
____2. Possessive pronoun	B. I took the girls' presents to the Hernandez' party.
____3. Singular possessive noun	C. What Degree-How-Where-When
____4. Adjectives	D. Which one? How many? What kind?
____5. Plural possessive nouns	E. Bob's running
____6. Verbs	AB. Joins a string of phrases
____7. Compound object possessives	AC. Transitive and intransitive
____8. Adverbial phrase order	AD. I value Caesar's and Kate's different talents.

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including two semicolons to join a string of long phrases. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence including both a possessive pronoun with and without a noun. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence with a singular possessive noun which modifies a gerund. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence with two different adjectives in proper order. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence with a plural possessive noun. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence with both a transitive and an intransitive verb. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence with compound objects possessing the same item. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence with two different adverbial phrases in proper order. _____

_____

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 17–20

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Contractions	A. Asks "What?" or "Whom?" of the object
____2. Coordinating conjunctions	B. After the last date unless at the end of a sentence.
____3. Don't use a comma	C. Colon
____4. Correlative conjunctions	D. to separate parts of a compound predicate
____5. Use a comma	E. Introduces an adverbial clause
____6. Subordinating conjunction	AB. would've, o'clock, she'd
____7. To Whom It May Concern	AC. FANBOYS
____8. Prepositions	AD. Paired conjunctions

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including contractions of *would* and *have*. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence including a coordinating conjunction to join two phrases. _____

_____

11. Revise this sentence: Tim, and Rob moved to, and settled in Atlanta. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence including correlative conjunctions in separate clauses. _____

_____

13. Revise this sentence: On May 18, I graduated, and then I began my job the next Monday, May 27, 2013. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence beginning with a subordinating conjunction. _____

_____

15. Write a greeting and a closing for both a friendly and a business letter. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence beginning with a prepositional phrase. _____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 21–24

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Don't use commas	A. Saskatchewan, Canada
____2. Compound predicate	B. You'll visit him, won't you?
____3. Use commas	C. before and after any educational degrees.
____4. Direct and indirect object	D. Two or more verbs doing the work of the "do-er"
____5. Geographical reference	E. Receive the action of the verb
____6. Phrase	AB. Dependent clause on its own
____7. Tag question	AC. Without a noun and connected verb.
____8. Fragment	AD. before zip codes.

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Revise this sentence: Mail the package to 126 Main Street Folsom California 95630.

_____

_____

10. Write a sentence with a compound subject. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence in which you mention a family title and an educational degree.

_____

_____

12. Write a sentence with both a direct and indirect object. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence including your city, state, and country. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence with a phrase connected to an independent clause. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence with a tag question. _____

_____

16. Revise this fragment: Because I gave him candy.

_____

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 25–28

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Ending noun of direct speech	A. An unexpected surprise
____2. Complex sentence	B. "Please stop talking, Luis and Ariana."
____3. Commas in lists	C. "How can that be my fault?"
____4. Interrogative	D. I'll leave whenever you do.
____5. Emphasized introductory words	E. One independent and one dependent clause
____6. Noun phrase	AB. If you go, I will go.
____7. Introductory clause	AC. However, he did bring me the shovel.
____8. Noun clause	AD. "I bought oranges, apples, and bananas."

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence with an ending noun of direct speech. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence including a complex sentence. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence listing three items found in a teacher's desk. _____

_____

12. Write an exclamatory sentence. Respond with an imperative sentence. _____

_____

_____

13. Write an introductory prepositional phrase of more than four words. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence ending in a noun phrase. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence beginning with an introductory clause. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence ending with a noun clause. _____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 29–32

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Speaker tag commas	A. Does not refer to a specific noun
____2. Gerund	B. Although, he says, if we believe him, he's done.
____3. Comma–coordinating conjunction	C. Joins independent clauses
____4. Gerund phrase	D. I can't help unless you ask me.
____5. Ending dependent clause	E. He said, "No," but continues, "Not right now."
____6. Reflexive pronoun	AB. Running the marathon exhausted her.
____7. Commas with parenthetical words	AC. An "__ing" verb that is used as a noun
____8. Indefinite pronoun	AD. Ends in "self" or "selves"

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a dialogue sentence with a ending speaker tag. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence beginning with a gerund. _____

_____

11. Write a long compound sentence. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence ending in a gerund phrase. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence with a dependent clause in the middle. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence with reflexive pronoun. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence including a parenthetical expression set off by commas. _____

_____

_____

16. Write a sentence with singular and plural indefinite pronouns. _____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 33–36

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Coordinate adjectives	A. who, whom, whose, and which, but *not* that
____2. Pronoun antecedent problem	B. Pronoun refers to a possessive antecedent
____3. Hierarchical adjectives	C. She was a short, pretty girl in a red dress.
____4. Gender-specific pronouns	D. I wore a dark blue sweater.
____5. Appositive	E. Get the hammer, which is on the workbench.
____6. Vague pronoun references	AB. Do not clearly match antecedents
____7. Nonrestrictive relative clause pronouns	AC. The woman, whom I know, will assist.
____8. Nonrestrictive relative clause	AD. he, him, his, himself, she, her, hers, herself

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence with a series of coordinate adjectives. _____

_____

10. Revise this sentence: The glasses of milk were left in its place. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence with a series of hierarchical adjectives. _____

_____

12. Revise this sentence: A man must learn when to speak and when to listen. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence including a restrictive clause describing a person. _____

_____

14. Revise these sentences: Those bunches are terrific. I have the roses in my hands.

_____

_____

15. Write a sentence using the relative pronoun *which*. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence with a nonrestrictive relative clause. _____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 37–40

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Restrictive clause relative pronouns	A. Place outside closing quotation marks
____2. Restrictive relative clause	B. …
____3. Divided quotation	C. Follows a linking verb
____4. Predicate adjective	D. A completed action verb form or an adjective
____5. A question asked about a quotation	E. Limits, restricts, or defines a noun's meaning
____6. Past participle	AB. Don't capitalize the second section.
____7. Ellipsis	AC. Who, whom, whose, that
____8. Past participial phrase	AD. He had not yet heard.

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including a restrictive relative clause beginning with *whose*.

_____

_____

10. Write a sentence including a restrictive relative clause beginning with *that*.

_____

_____

11. Write a sentence with a divided quotation. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence with a predicate adjective. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence asking a question about a direct quotation. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence beginning with a past participle which serves as an adjective. _____

_____

15. Write a direct quotation including an ellipsis. _____

_____

16. Begin a sentence with a past participial phrase which functions as an adjective.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 41–44

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Quotation within a quotation	A. "_er," more or less
____2. Present participle	B. A continuous action or condition
____3. Non-standard quoted language	C. Dad said that we must finish our chores.
____4. Present participial phrase	D. Racing down the track, the car zoomed.
____5. Indirect quotation	E. "_est," most, or least
____6. Modifier comparing two things	AB. Double-spaced with ½ inch hanging indents
____7. MLA Works Cited page	AC. [sic]
____8. Superlative modifier	AD. She said, "Let's sing 'Happy Birthday.'"

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence with a quoted title within a direct quotation. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence with a present participle which functions as an adjective. _____

_____

11. Write a direct quotation with a spelling error. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence including a present participial phrase with a linking verb. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence with an indirect quotation. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence including a modifier to compare two desserts. _____

_____

_____

15. List the information needed to write a full citation for a book on a Works Cited page.

_____

_____

16. Write a sentence with a superlative modifier.

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 45–48

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Books, newspapers, magazines	A. had been arriving early
____2. Misplaced modifier	B. A confusing word or phrase between words
____3. *Mona Lisa*	C. Underlined or italicized
____4. Dangling modifier	D. To run a 10K, good shoes help a woman's feet.
____5. "My Country 'Tis of Thee"	E. I ate one scoop just of the ice cream.
____6. Squinting modifier	AB. Song
____7. I read "Boy Bands" in *Tiger Beat*	AC. Work of art
____8. Verb phrase	AD. Magazine article

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including the title of a website. _____

_____

10. Revise this sentence: I sell often chocolates to that old lady nice. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence including the title of a television show. _____

_____

12. Revise this sentence: Having seen Mt. Everest, Mt. Fuji was not as impressive. _____

_____

_____

13. Write a sentence including the title of a poem. _____

_____

14. Revise this sentence: We decided at our first meeting to stop taking notes. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence including the title of a Blog article. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence with a verb phrase. _____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 49–52

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Quotation marks	A. I celebrate National Peas And Carrots Day.
____2. Verb tense	B. An object that can't be picked up from a table.
____3. Articles	C. "a," "an," "the"
____4. Progressive verb tense	D. "to" + the base form of a verb
____5. Preposition capitalization error	E. "have" + "__d," "__ed," or "__en"
____6. Perfect verb tense	AB. I read "Playing Through the Course" twice.
____7. Conjunction capitalization error	AC. Past, present, and future
____8. Infinitive	AD. An ongoing action

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including the title of a document. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence that changes verb tense. _____

_____

11. Revise this sentence: The Prince of Monaco visited the President of The United States.

_____

_____

12. Revise this sentence into the future progressive tense: We tried to watch the show.

_____

_____

13. Revise this sentence: I met the Lieutenant Governor Of New York. _____

_____

14. Write a sentence including the present perfect verb tense. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence including a holiday. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence with continuous infinitive.

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 53–56

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Event capitalization error	A. She was in a girl Scouts sailing troop.
____2. The indicative (declarative) mood	B. Did I really say, "I won't go"?
____3. Organization capitalization error	C. Many in South Africa speak Zulu and Afrikaan.
____4. Imperative mood	D. shares facts and evidence
____5. Language capitalization error	E. Usually places the verb before the subject
____6. Interrogative mood	AB. could, would
____7. Direct quotation question	AC. Do you have tickets to the State fair?
____8. Conditional mood	AD. I would never have listened to that man.

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including an historical period. _____

_____

10. Revise this sentence into the indicative (declarative) mood: I think that June 21 may be the longest day of the year in the Northern Hemisphere. _____

_____

11. Write a sentence including the name of a business. _____

_____

12. Write a sentence in the imperative mood to inform a friend about a party. _____

_____

_____

13. Write a sentence including a people group and dialect. _____

_____

14. Revise this sentence into the interrogative mood: Come to the dance with me. _____

_____

_____

15. Ask a question about a statement that your teacher made in class. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence in the conditional mood.

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 57–60

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1. Exclamatory sentence	A. A prediction, doubt, regret, guess, or wish
____2. Subjunctive mood	B. Finally, he took the stand; however, he lied.
____3. Colon	C. Introduces long quotation
____4. Voice of a verb	D. Used to identify, explain, or comment upon
____5. Parentheses	E. Begins with a subordinating conjunction
____6. Adverbial clause	AB. Active and passive
____7. Dash	AC. Shows a range of values
____8. Relative adverb	AD. Shows surprise or strong emotion

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including an interjection. _____

_____

10. Write a sentence in the subjunctive mood to express a wish. _____

_____

_____

11. Write a sentence in which you include your best time in the mile run. _____

_____

12. Revise this sentence into active voice: The television show was watched by me. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence with parentheses to comment on the preceding sentence. _____

_____

_____

14. Write a sentence ending with an adverbial clause. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence with a dash. _____

_____

16. Write a sentence beginning with a relative adverb and with a relative adverb following a semicolon. _____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Unit Test: Lessons 61–64

Matching Directions: Place the matching capital letter(s) to the left of the numbers.

____1.Bracket	A. Two Arabic numerals next to each other
____2.Adverb order	B. What Degree-How-Where-When
____3. Compound adverb	C. Provides missing or explanatory information
____4.They be waiting a long time.	D. I wish you would get off of my seat.
____5. Slash	E. Revise with the progressive verb tense.
____6. Non-standard use additions	AB. The most-watched movie of the year
____7. Spell one but not the other	AC. Separates dates, abbreviates, or means *or*
____8. A *be* for *is* substitution	AD. My mom be shopping all the time for us.

Sentence Application Directions: Please respond in complete sentences.

9. Write a sentence including a bracket. _____

_____

10. Revise this sentence with proper adverb order: In the afternoons here mostly she walked.

_____

_____

11. Write a sentence with a compound adverb. _____

_____

12. Revise this sentence: He and she be so sad. _____

_____

13. Write a sentence with a slash. _____

_____

14. Revise these sentences: Why are you hating on me? Get off of my case. _____

_____

15. Write a sentence including two numbers: one below and one above ten. _____

_____

16. Revise these sentences: She be so rude. She be treating everybody so mean. _____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

grammar, usage, and mechanics Unit Tests Answers

Lessons 1–4

1. E
2. AC
3. A
4. C
5. B
6. D
7. AB
8. AD

Lessons 5–8

1. AC
2. E
3. AD
4. B
5. C
6. AB
7. D
8. A

Lessons 9–12

1. B
2. A
3. E
4. C
5. D
6. AC
7. AB
8. AD

Lessons 13–16

1. AB
2. A
3. E
4. D
5. B
6. AC
7. AD
8. C

Lessons 17–20

1. AB
2. AC
3. D
4. AD
5. B
6. E
7. C
8. A

Lessons 21–24

1. AD
2. D
3. C
4. E
5. A
6. AC
7. B
8. AB

Lessons 25–28

1. B
2. E
3. AD
4. C
5. AC
6. A
7. AB
8. D

Lessons 29–32

1. E
2. AC
3. C
4. AB
5. D
6. AD
7. B
8. A

Lessons 33–36

1. C
2. E
3. D
4. AD
5. AC
6. AB
7. A
8. AC

Lessons 37–40

1. AC
2. E
3. AB
4. C
5. A
6. D
7. B
8. AD

Lessons 41–44

1. AD
2. B
3. AC
4. D
5. C
6. A
7. AB
8. E

Lessons 45–48

1. C
2. E
3. AC
4. D
5. AB
6. B
7. AD
8. A

Lessons 49–52

1. B
2. AC
3. C
4. AD
5. AB
6. E
7. A
8. D

Lessons 53–56

1. AC
2. D
3. A
4. AD
5. C
6. E
7. B
8. AB

Lessons 57–60

1. AD
2. A
3. C
4. AB
5. D
6. E
7. AC
8. B

Lessons 61–64

1. C
2. B
3. AB
4. E
5. AC
6. D
7. A
8. AD

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

COMMON CORE STATE STANDARDS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE ARTS & LITERACY IN HISTORY/SOCIAL STUDIES, SCIENCE, AND TECHNICAL SUBJECTS

Language Standards Grade 5 Students:	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
Conventions of Standard English		
1. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.		
a. Explain the function of conjunctions, prepositions, and interjections in general and their function in particular sentences.	7, 8	62-64
b. Form and use the perfect (e.g., *I had walked; I have walked; I will have walked*) verb tenses.	34, 36, 38	45, 46, 49, 50, 53, 54
c. Use verb tense to convey various times, sequences, states, and conditions.	33-40	39, 40, 43, 47, 51
d. Recognize and correct inappropriate shifts in verb tense.*		43, 47, 51
e. Use correlative conjunctions (e.g., *either/or, neither/nor*).	8	63
2. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.		
a. Use punctuation to separate items in a series.*	43	35, 37
b. Use a comma to separate an introductory element from the rest of the sentence.	44	36
c. Use a comma to set off the words *yes* and *no* (e.g., *Yes, thank you*), to set off a tag question from the rest of the sentence (e.g., *It's true, isn't it?*), and to indicate direct address (e.g., *Is that you, Steve?*).		36, 38
d. Use underlining, quotation marks, or italics to indicate titles of works.	52-56	46-48
e. Spell grade-appropriate words correctly, consulting references as needed.		1-64
Knowledge of Language		
3. Use knowledge of language and its conventions when writing, speaking, reading, or listening.		
a. Expand, combine, and reduce sentences for meaning, reader/listener interest, and style.		
b. Compare and contrast the varieties of English (e.g., dialects, registers) used in stories, dramas, or poems.		

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

COMMON CORE STATE STANDARDS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE ARTS & LITERACY IN HISTORY/SOCIAL STUDIES, SCIENCE, AND TECHNICAL SUBJECTS

Language Standards Grade 6 Students:	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
Conventions of Standard English		
1. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.		
a. Ensure that pronouns are in the proper case (subjective, objective, possessive).	3, 21, 22	14-15
b. Use intensive pronouns (e.g., *myself, ourselves*).		16
c. Recognize and correct inappropriate shifts in pronoun number and person.*	25, 26	17-23, 26
d. Recognize and correct vague pronouns (i.e., ones with unclear or ambiguous antecedents).*	23	25
e. Recognize variations from standard English in their own and others' writing and speaking, and use strategies to improve expression in conventional language.*		
2. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.		
a. Use punctuation (commas, parentheses, dashes) to set off nonrestrictive/parenthetical elements.*	42, 67	2, 4, 6, 34, 36, 38
b. Spell correctly.		1-64
Knowledge of Language		
3. Use knowledge of language and its conventions when writing, speaking, reading, or listening.		
a. Vary sentence patterns for meaning, reader/listener interest, and style.*		
b. Maintain consistency in style and tone.*		

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

COMMON CORE STATE STANDARDS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE ARTS & LITERACY IN HISTORY/SOCIAL STUDIES, SCIENCE, AND TECHNICAL SUBJECTS

Language Standards Grade 7 Students:	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
Conventions of Standard English		
1. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.		
a. Explain the function of phrases and clauses in general and their function in specific sentences.		1, 3
b. Choose among simple, compound, complex, and compound-complex sentences to signal differing relationships among ideas.	13-16	1-7
c. Place phrases and clauses within a sentence, recognizing and correcting misplaced and dangling modifiers.*		
2. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.		
a. Use a comma to separate coordinate adjectives (e.g., *It was a fascinating, enjoyable movie* but not *He wore an old[,] green shirt*).		27
b. Spell correctly.		1-64
Knowledge of Language		
3. Use knowledge of language and its conventions when writing, speaking, reading, or listening.		
a. Choose language that expresses ideas precisely and concisely, recognizing and eliminating wordiness and redundancy.*		

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

COMMON CORE STATE STANDARDS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE ARTS & LITERACY IN HISTORY/SOCIAL STUDIES, SCIENCE, AND TECHNICAL SUBJECTS

Language Standards Grade 8 Students:	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
Conventions of Standard English		
1. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.		
a. Explain the function of verbals (gerunds, participles, infinitives) in general and their function in particular sentences.		13, 28, 30, 31
b. Form and use verbs in the active and passive voice.	40	39, 40
c. Form and use verbs in the indicative, imperative, interrogative, conditional, and subjunctive mood.	39	1-4, 60, 61
d. Recognize and correct inappropriate shifts in verb voice and mood.*		
2. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.		
a. Use punctuation (comma, ellipsis, dash) to indicate a pause or break.	41-48	1-8, 37, 33-40, 59
b. Use an ellipsis to indicate an omission.		
c. Spell correctly.		1-64
Knowledge of Language		
3. Use knowledge of language and its conventions when writing, speaking, reading, or listening.		
a. Use verbs in the active and passive voice and in the conditional and subjunctive mood to achieve particular effects (e.g., emphasizing the actor or the action; expressing uncertainty or describing a state contrary to fact).	39, 40	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

COMMON CORE STATE STANDARDS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE ARTS & LITERACY IN HISTORY/SOCIAL STUDIES, SCIENCE, AND TECHNICAL SUBJECTS

Language Standards Grades 9-10 Students:	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
Conventions of Standard English		
1. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.		
a. Use parallel structure.*		
b. Use various types of phrases (noun, verb, adjectival, adverbial, participial, prepositional, absolute) and clauses (independent, dependent; noun, relative, adverbial) to convey specific meanings and add variety and interest to writing or presentations.		1, 3, 12, 28, 31, 32, 57-61, 64
2. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.		
a. Use a semicolon (and perhaps a conjunctive adverb) to link two or more closely related independent clauses.	66	26, 56
b. Use a colon to introduce a list or quotation.	70	
c. Spell correctly.		1-64
Knowledge of Language		
3. Apply knowledge of language to understand how language functions in different contexts, to make effective choices for meaning or style, and to comprehend more fully when reading or listening.		
a. Write and edit work so that it conforms to the guidelines in a style manual (e.g., *MLA Handbook*, Turabian's *Manual for Writers*) appropriate for the discipline and writing type.		

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

COMMON CORE STATE STANDARDS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE ARTS & LITERACY IN HISTORY/SOCIAL STUDIES, SCIENCE, AND TECHNICAL SUBJECTS

Language Standards Grades 11-12 Students:	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
Conventions of Standard English		
Conventions of Standard English		
1. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking. a. Apply the understanding that usage is a matter of convention, can change over time, and is sometimes contested. b. Resolve issues of complex or contested usage, consulting references (e.g., *Merriam-Webster's Dictionary of English Usage, Garner's Modern American Usage*) as needed.		
2. Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing. a. Observe hyphenation conventions. b. Spell correctly.		1-64
Knowledge of Language		
3. Apply knowledge of language to understand how language functions in different contexts, to make effective choices for meaning or style, and to comprehend more fully when reading or listening. a. Vary syntax for effect, consulting references (e.g., Tufte's *Artful Sentences*) for guidance as needed; apply an understanding of syntax to the study of complex texts when reading.		

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

Language Progressive Skills, by Grade Language Standards	Direct Instruction	Individualized Instruction
The following skills, marked with an asterisk (*) in Language standards 1–3, are particularly likely to require continued attention in higher grades as they are applied to increasingly sophisticated writing and speaking.		
L.3.1f. Ensure subject-verb and pronoun-antecedent agreement.	9-12, 25-28, 23	1-4, 9, 25, 37-54
L.3.3a. Choose words and phrases for effect.		37-54
L.4.1f. Produce complete sentences, recognizing and correcting inappropriate fragments and run-ons.	17-20	1-7
L.4.1g. Correctly use frequently confused words (e.g., *to/too/two; there/their*).		
L.3.3a. Choose words and phrases for effect.		
L.4.3b. Choose punctuation for effect.	7?	
L.5.1d. Recognize and correct inappropriate shifts in verb tense.	33-38	
L.5.2a. Use punctuation to separate items in a series.†	43, 47, 66	3, 35
L.6.1c. Recognize and correct inappropriate shifts in pronoun number and person.	25-28	17-26
L.6.1d. Recognize and correct vague pronouns (i.e., ones with unclear or ambiguous antecedents).	23, 25-28	25
L.6.1e. Recognize variations from standard English in their own and others' writing and speaking, and identify and use strategies to improve expression in conventional language.		
L.6.2a. Use punctuation (commas, parentheses, dashes) to set off nonrestrictive/parenthetical elements.	42, 67	2, 4, 6, 34, 36, 38
L.6.3a. Vary sentence patterns for meaning, reader/listener interest, and style.‡		1-64
L.6.3b. Maintain consistency in style and tone.		
L.7.1c. Place phrases and clauses within a sentence, recognizing and correcting misplaced and dangling modifiers.		1, 3, 12, 28, 31, 32, 57-61, 64
L.7.3a. Choose language that expresses ideas precisely and concisely, recognizing and eliminating wordiness and redundancy.		
L.8.1d. Recognize and correct inappropriate shifts in verb voice and mood.	39, 40	60, 61
L.9–10.1a. Use parallel structure.		

Subsumed by L.7.3a
†Subsumed by L.9–10.1a
‡Subsumed by L.11–12.3a

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

©2019 Pennington Publishing penningt

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **i before e song at** http://bit.ly/2c8afAb. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qRNpkl.	**i before e Song** (to the tune of "Rig 'a Jig Jig") **Spell i before e 'cause that's the rule** *Rig-a-jig-jig and away we go,* **that we learned back in school.** *Away we go, away we go!* **Examples:** _____ **But e before i comes after c,** *Rig-a-jig-jig and away we go,* **Examples:** _____ **and when you hear long /a/. Hey!** *Hi-ho, hi-ho, hi-ho.* **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of a proper noun at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A proper noun is the name of a person, place, or thing and must be capitalized. A proper noun may be a single word, a group of words (with or without abbreviations), or a hyphenated word. Don't capitalize articles a, an, the, coordinating conjunctions for, and, or, and prepositions such as in, by, of, on, to, and with in the middle of titles. **Examples** **Person:** _____ **Person:** _____ **Person:** _____ **Place:** _____ **Thing:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I yeild to the researcher's conclusion that the supposed ancient documents were a hoax.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The concieted young man failed to keep his receipt.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Our teacher tried to fiegn surprise, because her friend accidentally told her about the party.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Let's have lunch at Eat An Apple in the food court at the Sunrise Mall.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the proper nouns: The family visited Cardiff by the Sea on their vacation to see Uncle J. P. at his ranch.

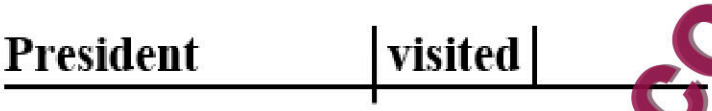
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: We saw the Statue Of Liberty and toured Ellis Island in New York city.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Proper nouns can serve as subjects or objects. A subject is placed to the left of the main vertical line, and an object is placed to the right of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "Lemke" and "Seattle."



Mentor Text and Response

"'Aslan a man!' said Mr. Beaver sternly. 'Certainly not. I tell you he is the King of the Wood and the son of the great Emperor-Beyond-the-Sea. Don't you know who is the King of Beasts? Aslan is a lion—*the* Lion, the great lion.'"

C. S. Lewis (author of *The Chronicles of Narnia*)
(1898–1963)

This quotation includes a variety of proper nouns. Re-write a sentence, using your own proper nouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **Hickory Dickory Y** song at http://bit.ly/2cvcZWl. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2rYjKL0.	**Hickory Dickory Y** (to the tune of "Hickory Dickory Dock") **If a root ends in a vowel and after that a y,** *Hickory, dickory dock. The mouse ran up the clock.* **just keep the *y*–and then said I, "Add on the suffix to end."** *The clock struck one–the mouse ran down.* *Hickory dickory dock.* **Examples:** _____ **But if a consonant then a *y* should end a word,** *Hickory, dickory dock. The mouse ran up the clock.* **just change the *y* into an *i*** *The clock struck two—the mouse ran down,* **except if the suffix has *i*.** *Hickory dickory dock.* **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of a common noun at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A common noun is an idea, person, place, or thing. It can act or be acted upon and is capitalized only at the start of a sentence. **Examples** **Idea:** _____ **Person:** _____ **Place:** _____ **Thing:** _____ Some common nouns are *collective nouns* and refer to a group of people, animals, or things. Collective nouns act as one unit and so match with singular verbs, such as "That class *is noisy.*" **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The employees obeyed their emploiers' work safety rules.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: I hurryed to the art show. I was horrified to see her painting displayed next to the garbage can.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: The special needs child had a helper, who carried supplys and pushed her wheelchair.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The Math was due on Friday, so their Teacher could grade it during a holiday vacation.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the common nouns: Her bravery and self-awareness make her a wonderful member of our team.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the common nouns. [Bracket] the collective common noun: The flock of Canadian geese remained in the park despite efforts to remove the birds.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Common nouns can serve as subjects or objects. A subject is placed to the left of the main vertical line, and an object is placed to the right of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "bees" and "honey."

Mentor Text and Response

"Self-respect is the fruit of discipline; the sense of dignity grows with the ability to say no to oneself."

Abraham Herschel (American rabbi and philosopher)
(1907–1972)

This quotation includes a variety of common nouns. Respond to the text, using different types of common nouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the common nouns:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **Final e Memory Rap** at http://bit.ly/2cuR5Fy. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qVq8Cs.	**Final e Memory Rap** Drop the final *e* when adding on an ending if it starts with a vowel up front. Keep the final *e* when adding on an ending if it starts with a consonant. **Examples:** _____ Also keep the *e* when you hear soft */c/* or */g/* before "able" or "o-u-s." **Examples:** _____ Mostly keep the *e* when the ending is "y-e", "e-e", or even "o-e". YEO! **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of a pronoun at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A pronoun is used to take a noun's place. Singular or plural pronouns are classified as first, second, or third person. A *subject case pronoun* acts as the subject of a sentence. **Examples:** _____ An *object case pronoun* receives the action of the verb. **Examples:** _____ A *possessive case pronoun* shows ownership and may be used before a noun or without a noun. **Examples:** _____ When a possessive pronoun is used without a noun, the verb must match the noun which the pronoun represents. **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Is she agreable to letting me publish some of her writing in my journal?

_____

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Tom was pursuing his goals, but he could not hide his discouragment sometimes.

_____

_____

_____

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: She texts him, but he won't respond. It bothered hers, but she was quite used to them by now.

_____

_____

_____

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: They enjoyed yours book report, but you should let they revise its more.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write these sentences and underline the pronouns: He doesn't understand whom you mean. Is it he or is it Pedro?

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the pronouns: Who stole them and where did they hide the candy bars?

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Personal pronouns can serve as subjects or objects. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “them” and “we.”

Mentor Text and Response

"From pacifist to terrorist, each person condemns violence and then adds one cherished case in which it may be justified."

Gloria Steinem (women's rights advocate)
(1934–)

This quotation includes pronouns to avoid repetitious nouns. Respond to the author's point with a subject, object, and possessive case pronoun.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the pronouns:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **Consonant Doubling Doodle** song at http://bit.ly/2bP2tHm. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qZZ0xp.	**Consonant Doubling Doodle** (to the tune of "Yankee Doodle") **Double the last consonant when adding on an ending** *Yankee Doodle went to town 'a riding on a pony* **if these three do all agree (on this you'll be depending):** *Stuck a feather in his cap and called it macaroni* **Is the accent at the end?** *Yankee Doodle keep it up!* **With a vowel then consonant?** *Yankee Doodle da-an-dy* **Does the ending you must add begin with a vowel?** *Mind the music and the step and with the girls be handy.* **Examples:** _____

Cues	Parts of Speech Notes
Check out the **Parts of Speech Song** to practice the definition of an adjective at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	An adjective modifies a noun with Which one? How many? or What kind? When using more than one adjective to modify the same noun in a sentence, follow this order of adjectival functions: Which One-How Many-What Kind. **Examples** **Which One:** _____ **How Many:** _____ **What Kind:** _____ Place adjectives before nouns, even when they are compound adjectives. A compound adjective joins two or more adjectives with a hyphen (-) to modify a single noun or pronoun. Don't use a hyphen if you can use the word *and* between the two adjectives. **Examples:** _____ Don't use redundant adjectives. Redundant means something that is unnecessary or repetitive. **Examples:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The students rejected the new cafeteria menu and stoped buying the school lunches.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mr. Jones permited 30 minutes for the test, but accidentally allowed us 40 minutes to finish.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: It was at night late when I lay my head down on the soft two pillows.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: I don't want to go until I get my prize well-deserved, but we have to leave in five short minutes.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectives: It's a crazy idea, but it's the only real approach that just might work.

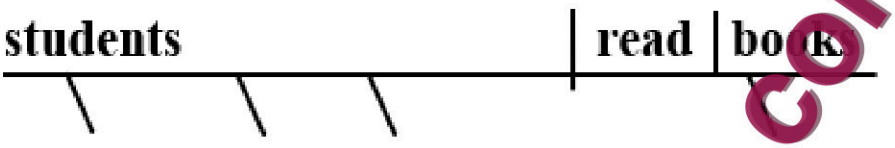
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectives: After ten weeks we were frustrated that we hadn't improved, but now we see that it takes more time than we thought to get better.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Adjectives are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “many,” “five,” “those,” and “smart.”



Mentor Text and Response

“There is always a well-known solution to every human problem—neat, plausible, and wrong.”

H. L. Mencken (The American journalist and essayist)
(1880–1956)

This quotations includes proper adjectival order. Respond to the author's point, using all three types of adjectives.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the adjectives.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to to the **This Old "an" and "en"** song at http://bit.ly/2bP2JWN. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2sLthRR and http://bit.ly/2sxlere.	**This Old "an" or "en"** (to the tune of "This Old Man") **If you see, "e-a-r", or there is a "u-r-e",** *This old man, he played one, he played nick-nack on my thumb* **in the root, or if you hear hard /*c*/ or /*g*/,** *With a nick-nack paddy-whack, give a dog a bone,* **then spell "ant", "ance", or "ancy".** **Examples:** _____ *This old man came rolling home.* **If you see, "id" like "fid", or there is an "e-r-e"** *This old man, he played two, he played nick-nack on my shoe* **in the root, or if you hear soft /*c*/ or /*g*/,** *With a nick-nack paddy-whack, give a dog a bone,* **then spell "ent", "ence", or "ency"** *This old man came rolling home.* **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the three types of verbs and practice the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A verb can mentally or physically act or states what a subject is to be. **Examples** **Mental:** _____ **Physical:** _____ **State of Being Verbs:** _____ When a "to be" verb or other verb links a noun to something else in the sentence to rename or describe it, it is called a *linking verb*. **Linking Verbs:** _____ The "to be" verb, the "to have" verb (have, has, had), and the "to do" verb (do, does, did, done) can be placed before a main verb as a *helping verb* to show verb tense (past, present, future). The *conditional* helping verbs (could, should, would, can, shall, will, may, might, must) show possibility. **Helping Verbs:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The young girl's appearence was different than that of her friends.

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: It may be significant to note that the detergant he used included bleach.

_____

_____

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the mental verbs. [Bracket] the physical verbs: I can't conceive of a different way to communicate our company's vision.

_____

_____

_____

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the "to be" verbs. [Bracket] the physical verbs: Being twelve years old means that you are in seventh grade and attend middle or junior high school.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the linking verbs: It sounds like he is willing to taste her appetizers.

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the helping verbs: My friends did ask if they could come to the party.

_____

_____

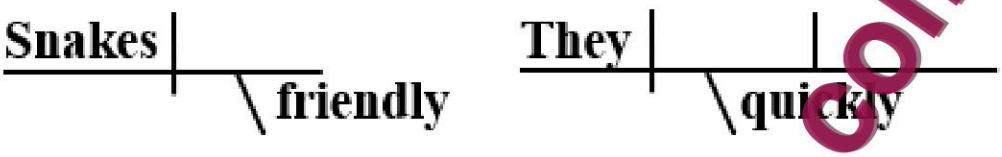
_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Verbs are placed to the right of the main vertical line in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagrams: “strike,” “look,” and “victims.”



Mentor Text and Response

"Suddenly the storm hit. It came from all corners of the cavern at once, howling, shrieking, and raging."

Jules Verne (one of the first science fiction authors)
(1828–1905)

This quotation includes strong action verbs to create suspense. Describe the reaction of the cavern explorers to the storm, using all three types of verbs.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the verbs:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **John "able" or "ible" Schmidt** song at http://bit.ly/2bZEuHG. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2qVbBqA and http://bit.ly/2rNxoQi.	**John "able" or "ible" Schmidt** (to the tune of "John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt") **Base words add "able" to the end, as do word parts,** *John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt: that's my name, too.* **that end in silent *e* or with hard /*c*/or /*g*/,** *Whenever we go out, the people always shout,* **Examples:** _____ **but for all others add "i-b-l-e".** *Saying, "John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt."* **Examples:** _____

Cues	Parts of Speech Notes
Check out the four questions adverbs ask of adjectives, adverbs, or verbs in the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	An adverb modifies an adjective, adverb, or verb with What degree? How? Where? or When? Many adverbs end in "_ly." **Examples** **What Degree:** _____ **How:** _____ **Where:** _____ **When:** _____ **Modifying an Adjective:** _____ **Modifying an Adverb:** _____ **Modifying a Verb:** _____ Adverbs can be part of a phrase (a group of related words). Avoid stringing together adverbial phrases. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Even though the television volume was barely audable, the woman talked unbelievably loud.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The highway sign read, "Chains advisable" even though there was only a negligable amount of snow.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs which answer *What Degree*. Tom ultimately agreed with his wife that less is usually better.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs which answer *How*. She acted secretively when she suspiciously dropped the letter on his desk.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs and adverb phrases which answer *Where*. Somewhere in the woods, the children walked around looking for wild mushrooms.

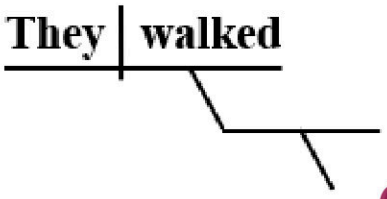
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adverbs and adverb phrases which answer *When*. I can often tell when she wants to leave though she seldom will say so.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Adverbs are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “almost” and “silently.”



Mentor Text and Response

“No one can speak well, unless he thoroughly understands his subject.”

Cicero
(106 B.C.–43 B.C.)

This quotation includes adverbs before and after the words they modify. Respond to the author's point, using at least three types of adverbs.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the adverbs:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **Ending "ion" Twinkle** song at http://bit.ly/2c1tAjd. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2sbfxmR.	**Ending "ion" Twinkle** (to the tune of "Twinkle Twinkle Little Star") **1. If the *shun* sound you do hear and it follows *l* or *s*,** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **or if you hear a *zyun* –for both spell "s-i-o-n".** *Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky.* **Both these rules will serve you well, learning all the ways to spell.** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **Examples:** _____ **2. When a person you describe, you should spell "c-i-a-n".** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **In most every other case, simply spell "t-i-o-n".** *Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky.* **Both these rules will serve you well, learning all the ways to spell.** *Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are.* **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the three types of conjunctions in the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A conjunction joins words, phrases, or clauses to coordinate, correlate, or subordinate. The common coordinate conjunctions are F.A.N.B.O.Y.S. _____ Correlative conjunctions are paired conjunctions. _____ Subordinating conjunctions begin adverbial clauses. The **BUD IS WISE, BUT HOT AAA WWW** memory trick will help you memorize the subordinating conjunctions. A clause has a noun and a connected verb. _____ before, unless, despite (in spite of) _____ in order that, so _____, while, if, since, even though (if) _____ because, until, that _____ how, once, than _____ after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though) _____ whether, when (whenever), where (wherever)
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The mathematician earned a commission on every sale of his long division product.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Some compulsion drove her to respond in silence to his frequent aggression.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the coordinating conjunctions: We ate breakfast and lunch together, not lunch, so we all planned on gathering for dinner.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the correlative conjunctions: Both Mr. Lewis and Ms. Kinney's classes donated to the canned food drive.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the subordinating conjunctions: As long as you practice daily, you will continue to improve despite what you may think.

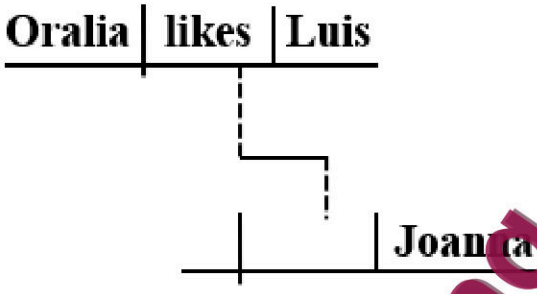
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the subordinating conjunctions: So we could get along, we tried to keep quiet while they talked in spite of their attempts to engage us in their conversation.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Coordinating conjunctions are placed on a dotted vertical line connecting parts of speech in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “he,” “loves,” and “but.”



Mentor Text and Response

"Sorrow is so easy to express and yet so hard to tell."

Joni Mitchell (Canadian singer-songwriter)
(1943–)

This quotation includes a coordinating conjunction to connect contrasting thoughts that include adverbs normally used as coordinating conjunctions. Respond to the author's point, using a least two types of conjunctions.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Re-write the sentence with coordinating conjunctions:
They like the rain though they enjoy the snow, but they would rather it be sunny or hot

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out the article and listen to the **Plurals Had a Little Lamb** song at http://bit.ly/2caBN9u. More practice? Check out these spelling worksheets at http://bit.ly/2saVqFj.	**Plurals Had a Little Lamb** (to the tune of "Mary Had a Little Lamb") **1. If there is a vowel before the letters *o* or *y*,** Mary *had a little lamb, little lamb, little lamb.* **"Add an *s* onto the end and to most nouns," said I.** *Mary had a little lamb. Its fleece was white as snow.* **2. If there is a consonant before the *o* or *y*,** *And everywhere that Mary went, Mary went, Mary went.* **"Add "e-s" onto the end, but change the *y* to *i*."** *Everywhere that Mary went the lamb was sure to go.* **Examples:** _____ **3. "Add "e-s" onto an *x, to /ch/, /sh/, /s/, or z.*** *It followed her to school one day, school one day, school one day.* **Also add onto an *f*, but change the *f* to *v*."** *It followed her to school one day, which was against the rules.* **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Parts of Speech Notes**
Check out the definition of a prepositional phrase in the **Parts of Speech Song** at http://bit.ly/29aK4EV.	A preposition shows some relationship, location, time, or position between the preposition and its object. The preposition is always part of a phrase and comes before its object. The preposition asks "What?" or "Whom?" and the object provides the answer. **Examples:** **Relationship:** _____ **Location:** _____ **Time:** _____ **Position:** _____ aboard, about, above, according to, across, after, against, along, among, around, as, as to, at, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between, beyond, but, by, despite, down, during, except, for, from, in, inside, instead of, into, in place of, in spite of, like, near, next, of, off, on, onto, outside, out of, over, past, since, than, through, throughout, to, toward, under, underneath, unlike, until, up, upon, with, within, without
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The house painters uses the same paintbrushs for each room to get perfect matches.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: Their work portfolioes went to the wrong addresses. Fortunately, the security videos located them.

3. Re-write this sentence and underline the *location* prepositions: Beyond the river and over the mountains, we traveled throughout the countryside.

4. Re-write this sentence and underline the *position* prepositions: Above the clouds the birds flew in their v-formation past hills and valleys.

5. Re-write this sentence and underline the *time* prepositions: Since the last game we always cheered during the National Anthem.

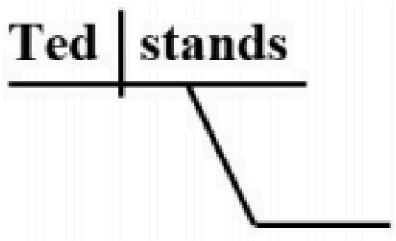
6. Re-write these sentences and underline the prepositions: Everyone stays until the final out. During the earlier part of the season this was not the case.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Prepositions are placed to the right of slanted vertical lines and connect the predicate to the object of the preposition. Complete the sentence diagram: "Ted stands near Kate."



Mentor Text and Response

"Every man, as to character, is the creature of the age in which he lives. Very few are able to raise themselves above the ideas of their times."

Voltaire (French philosopher and playwright)
(1694–1778)

This quotation includes a variety of prepositional phrases Respond to the author's point, using at least two types of prepositions.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the prepositions.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use periods following the first letter of each key word in an abbreviated title or expression, and pronounce each of these letters when saying the abbreviation. Latin abbreviations are set off from the rest of the sentence by commas or parentheses. ▪ etc. (*et cetera*), which means and so on. **Examples:** _____ ▪ et al. (*et alii*), which means and others. **Examples:** _____ ▪ e.g. (*exempli gratia*), which means for example. **Examples:** _____ ▪ i.e. (*id est*), which means that is. When using the i.e., think *in other words* to explain or define, not to signal examples. **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A proper noun is the name of a person, place, or thing and must be capitalized. A proper noun may be a single word, a group of words (with or without abbreviations), or a hyphenated word. **Examples:** _____ A common noun is an idea, person, place, or thing. It can act or be acted upon and is capitalized only at the start of a sentence. **Examples:** _____ Some common nouns are *collective nouns* and refer to a group of people, animals, or things. Collective nouns act as one unit and so match with singular verbs, such as "That class *is noisy.*" **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I eat green vegetables, i.e., kale, beans, and peas. I also exercise, drink plenty of water, etc.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Tom read the research study by Dupont, Jones, et al., and responded with emails, texts, et al.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: I offered them drinks, e.g., sodas, and desserts, e.g., cake, pie, and cookies.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Washington d.c. is our nation's capital, and Ms. Gibson-Lee lived there for two years.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the proper nouns: I attended school at Balboa Elementary School where Ms. Lee Smith was principal.

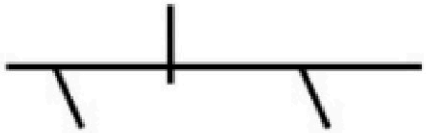
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the common noun. [Bracket] the collective noun: The [class] got to hear the vice-president.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Complete this sentence diagram: "The herd moves slowly."



Mentor Text and Response

"Maybe Christmas, the Grinch thought, doesn't come from a store."
Dr. Seuss (pseudonym for children's author Theodor Seuss Geisel)
(1904–1991)

This quotation includes specific proper noun and common noun placement to emphasize its point. Respond to the author's point, using a variety of common and proper nouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence with proper Latin abbreviations: Congress, that is, the Senate and the House of Representatives, makes laws, declares war, etcetera.

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the nouns:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Place periods following shortened words. Pronounce these abbreviations as words, not as letters. **Examples:** _____ Place periods following the first letter of each key word in most abbreviated titles or expressions, and pronounce each of these letters when saying the abbreviations. **Examples:** _____ Don't use periods after some very common abbreviations known as *initialisms*. **Examples:** _____ Also don't use periods or pronounce the letters in acronyms. Acronyms are special abbreviated titles or expressions that are pronounced as words. Most all acronyms are capitalized. **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A personal pronoun is a word used in place of a proper or common noun. The *first person* personal pronouns are different in the singular and plural forms. **Examples:** _____ The *second person* personal pronouns are the same in the singular and plural forms. **Example:** _____ The *third person* personal pronouns are different in the singular and plural forms. Avoid using gender-specific singular third-person pronouns to refer to males and females. Use plural third-person pronouns instead. **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Doct. Perez wrote me a prescription to take with me to W. Virginia.

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Tim B Lee learned about UNICEF on CBS News.

_____

_____

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: I visited U.C.L.A. and on my trip to So. Cal. I tried surfing lol.

_____

_____

4. Re-write this sentence and underline the first person pronouns: I want to know if you would like to see it with us.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write this sentence and underline the second person pronouns: You should let me help you help while you and I have the time.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write these sentences and underline the third person pronouns in these sentences: They left her to explain to him how we gave away their bikes. She liked our answer, but he didn't.

_____

_____

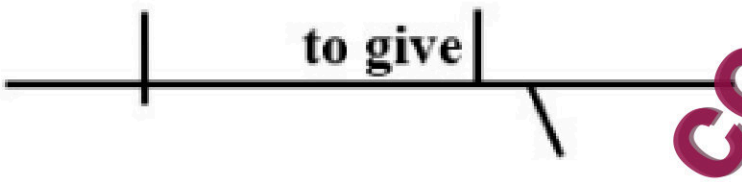
_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence to avoid gender-specific pronouns. "He/she has to give enough materials."



Mentor Text and Response

"Plenty of people miss their share of happiness, not because they never found it, but because they didn't stop to enjoy it."

William Feather (American author and publisher)
(1889–1981)

This quotation includes a variety of personal pronouns. Respond to the author's point, using at least three personal pronouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Replace each noun with third person pronouns:
Linda gave a pencil to the woman.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Indirect questions do not end with a question mark but with a period. Like direct questions they ask for a response, but they are written as declarative or imperative sentences. **Examples:** _____ Intentional fragments also end with periods. An intentional fragment is part of a sentence that is treated as a complete thought for literary effect. **Examples:** _____ An unintentional sentence fragment has a noun and connected verb, but does not express a complete thought. One way to correct a sentence fragment is to combine it with the sentence before or sentence after it. **Fragment Examples:** If you showed me. I could learn it. **Revision:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	Writers use pronouns to take the place of nouns. One type of pronoun is called a *subject case pronoun* because it acts as the subject of a sentence. If unsure whether a pronoun should be in the subject case, rephrase the sentence with the pronoun at the start of the sentence. **Examples:** _____ Use singular (*I, you, he, she, it, who*) or plural (*we, you, they, who*) subject case pronouns: ▪ As the subject of a sentence. ▪ As the last subject in compound subjects. ▪ After *than* or *as* (the rest of the thought is suggested). ▪ After a "to be" verb: (*is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*) to identify or refer to the subject as a *predicate nominative*. ▪ *Who* (not *whom*). Check whether who is correct by substituting he in place of who. Rephrase, if necessary. The first person *I* and second person *you* pronouns do *not* match verbs ending in an *s*. **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I said, "John asked if you were leaving? "Certainly," he replied.

2. Re-write these sentences and underline the intentional sentence fragment. [Bracket] the indirect question: Nice. I wonder if you knew. You don't have to tell me though.

3. Revise the sentence fragment by combining with the other sentence: He was able. Because he listened to complete the work.

4. Re-write these sentences correctly: I wonder if them would like to see that movie. Whom is the one who wants to go?

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: John, I, and Martha like to visit whom we want even though they are more insistent than me.

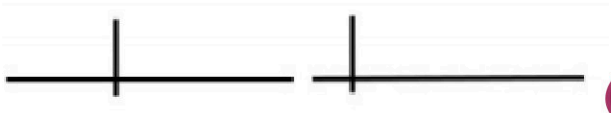
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Them left our books next to the library; it wasn't I, but her and Mary remember it that way.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Subject case pronouns are placed to the left of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Complete these sentence diagrams: "Who is going?" "I will attend."



Mentor Text and Response

"You have to promise not to touch the dear things for the rest of the trip or I won't go."
Jack London (American adventurer and author of *Call to the Wild*)
(1876–1916)

This quotation includes subject case pronouns to keep dialogue personal and realistic. Respond to the dialogue with at least two different uses of the subject case pronouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly and change each noun to subject case pronouns: Charles and John are smarter than Rachel and me.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Decimal Outlines use numbers to organize information. The first letter of the word, group of words, or sentence that follows each symbol is capitalized. Decimal Outlines begin with an Arabic numeral followed by a period and then a zero to represent the first main idea. The first major detail is indented from the main idea. It repeats the Arabic numeral followed by a period and then a "1." The second major detail would end in a "2," etc. The first minor detail is indented from the major detail. It repeats all the symbols of the major detail followed by a period and then a "1." The second minor detail would end in a "2," etc. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	One type of pronoun is called an *object case pronoun* because it receives the action of the verb. Use singular (*me, you, him, her, it, whom*) or plural (*us, you, them, whom*) object case pronouns: ▪ As a direct or indirect object. **Examples:** _____ ▪ As objects of prepositions. **Examples:** _____ ▪ *Me* and *us* last in compound objects. **Examples:** _____ ▪ *Whom* (not *who*). Check whether *whom* is correct by substituting *him* in place of *whom*. Rephrase, if necessary. **Examples:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The sixth main idea, fourth major detail. and second minor detail would be listed as 6.2.4.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The third main idea and third major detail were listed as 3.0 and its first minor detail was 3.3.1.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: These were the main ideas: 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0. His fourth main idea was 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.22.

4. Re-write these sentences correctly: I sure would like he to help us. Who helped you, and who did you help?

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: Did he let you copy they? They gave it to me.

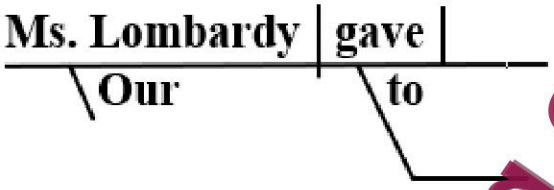
6. Re-write these sentences correctly: Whom does Lacy like best: you or I? Me and Joanie let her watch we practice.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Object case pronouns are placed to the right of the predicate in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “it” and “them.”



Mentor Text and Response

“I don't know half of you half as well as I should like, and I like less than half of you half as well as you deserve.”

J. R. R. Tolkien (the British author of *The Lord of the Rings*)
(1892–1973)

This quotation includes both subject and object case pronouns in some clever word play. Explain what the hobbit, Bilbo Baggins, means here, using at least two object case pronouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this decimal outline in correct order (Model the proper indentations). 2.2, 2.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.1, 2.0

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use the semicolon between two sentences joined by a coordinating conjunction. **Example:** _____ _____ _____ A semicolon (;) can be used to join a string of phrases. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Possessive pronouns show ownership and may be used before a noun or without a noun. **Before a noun**—*my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their* When a possessive pronoun is used before a noun, it modifies the noun. The connected verb must match the noun, not the pronoun. **Examples:** _____ **Without a noun**—*mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs* When a possessive pronoun is used without a noun, the verb must match the noun which the pronoun represents. **Examples:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this correctly: Anna studied hard for her exam, Bob didn't study at all. Anna passed; Bob didn't.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Chocolate, strawberry, ice cream; cherry, berry, and lemon pies and cookies are my favorites.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Both boys love music they love sports even more.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mine basket had sunflowers; her basket was filled with his roses; theirs had daisies.

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: That rose is your, not hers. Please give Bobby the jacket; it's his, not their.

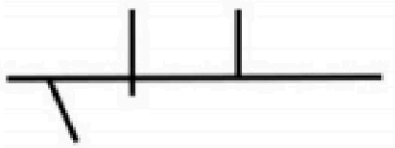
6. Re-write these sentences correctly: Sue's jewelry was her, not Amanda's. Ours was a reminder of what her could have been.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Possessive pronouns are placed below the nouns they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “our” and “their.”



Mentor Text and Response

"Life is like riding a bicycle. To keep your balance, you must keep moving."
Albert Einstein (famous physicist noted for his Theory of Relativity)
(1879–1955)

This quotation includes a possessive pronoun before a noun. Explain what Einstein means, using a possessive pronoun before a noun and a possessive pronoun without a noun.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Combine these sentences without a conjunction:
Their tacos had salsa. Ours had none.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	A possessive noun shows ownership. To form a singular possessive noun, add an apostrophe then an *s* ('s) to the end of the noun. **Examples:** _____ For nouns ending in *s*, it is not necessary to add another *s* after the apostrophe. **Examples:** _____ A singular possessive noun can also modify a ***gerund*** (a verb form ending in "ing" that serves as a noun). **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	An adjective modifies a noun or pronoun and answers Which one? How many? or What kind? When using more than one adjective to modify the same noun or pronoun in a sentence, follow this order of adjectival functions: Which One-How Many-What Kind. **Examples:** _____ _____ Place adjectives before nouns, even when they are compound adjectives. A compound adjective joins two or more adjectives with a hyphen (-) to modify a single noun or pronoun. Don't use a hyphen if you can use the word *and* between the two adjectives. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Chriss' coat was black and so was Mike's.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Gus'es commitment and Kyle's training made them a dynamic duo.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Karlas' wedding was wonderful, but Bess' wedding was incredible.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The four friendly students drove this car to the park beautiful.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: He ate two those crunchy cookies.

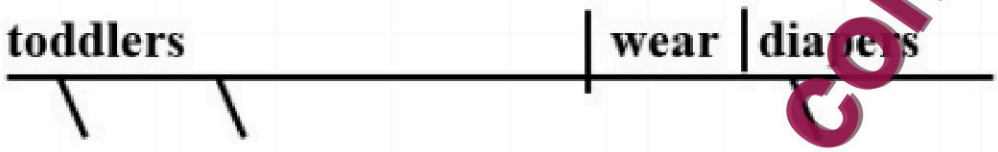
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectives: This email that you already sent was mean, thoughtless, and unnecessary.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Adjectives are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “pull-up,” “three-year-old,” and “these.”



Mentor Text and Response

"Men acquire a particular quality by constantly acting a particular way... you become just by performing just actions, temperate by performing temperate actions, brave by performing brave actions."

Aristotle (Greek philosopher)
(384 B.C.–322 B.C.)

This quotation includes the same four words as both nouns and adjectives. Explain how his use of these four adjectives emphasizes his point. Include one compound adjective in your response.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	To form a plural possessive noun, place an apostrophe after the plural ending (usually "_s," "_es," or "_ves"). **Examples:** _____ Add an apostrophe then an *s* to an irregular plural noun. **Examples:** _____ When family names ending in a /z/ sound are used as plural possessives, add on the apostrophe at the end of the plural name and pronounce as /zes/. Don't use an apostrophe when the family name is simply used as a plural. **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A *transitive* verb is a mental or physical action that acts upon a direct object. The direct object answers *Whom*? or *What*? from the verb. **Examples:** _____ An *intransitive verb* acts without an object. Linking verbs are all intransitive verbs. Linking verbs include the "to be" verbs: *is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*, and others such as *become*, *seem*, *look*, *feel*, *smell*, and *appear*. **Examples:** _____ A verb can be singular or plural and must match the noun or pronoun that the verb acts upon in the sentence. In other words, the action or state of being must agree with the subject. Singular verbs usually end in s and match singular nouns and third person singular subject case pronouns (he, she, it and who). **Examples:** _____ Plural verbs don't end in s and match plural nouns and the third person plural subject case pronouns (we, you, they, and who). **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girls' shoe colors match their dresses for the Gomez' wedding at the Jone's.

_____

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Is this the children's or your wive's cookies?

_____

_____

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: I could see Liz' cats and Jimmy's dogs walk past the two church'es windows.

_____

_____

_____

4. Identify the types of verbs in this sentence: They are ready if they leave now, but they seem uncertain.

are: _____

leave: _____

seem: _____

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: John play basketball every day at lunch. He are trying out for the school team.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: They always complains that the dogs gets more attention than the cats.

_____

_____

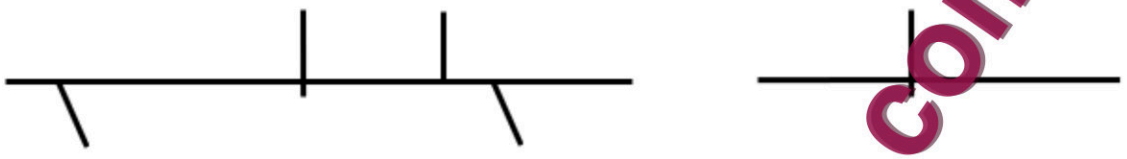
_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Both transitive and intransitive verbs are placed to the right of the main vertical line. Complete these sentence diagrams: "Athletic Samantha runs 10K races." "Mary watches."



Mentor Text and Response

"Everything is funny as long as it is happening to somebody else."

Will Rogers (American humorist)
(1879–1935)

This mentor text uses a transitive "to be" linking verb to contrast with a "to be" helping verb. respond to the author's point, using both a transitive and intransitive verb.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the transitive verb. [Bracket] the intransitive verb.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	The word compound means two or more. For example, a compound word combines two words, such as in baseball, fireworks, and peppermint. With compound subjects or objects, if each of the nouns possesses the same type of item, use an apostrophe then an *s* at the end of each possessive noun. **Examples:** _____ If both or all of the nouns share ownership of the same item, place an apostrophe then an *s* at the end of the last noun listed. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	An adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb and answers What degree? How? Where? When? **Examples:** _____ Many adverbs end in "_ly." **Examples:** _____ Adverbs are very flexible in English. The adverb may be found before or after the words they modify to make verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs more specific. **Examples:** _____ Most professional writers suggest using specific, vivid verbs rather than weak verbs supported with adverbs.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: My father-in-laws' golf clubs and my two sister-in-law's golf bags were at Tom and Sherry's house.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Les's and Holly's hobbies were cooking and needlepoint.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Her mother-in-law's house was always Linda, Bert, and Todds last stop.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: I drove quickly, but got very late there.

5. Re-order these adverbs as they should appear in a sentence: earlier, there, hopefully, less

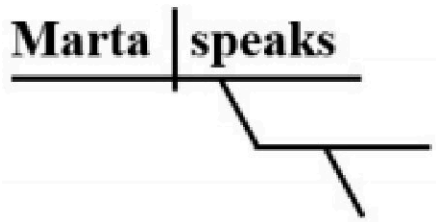
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Thomas and Suzanne drank there slowly more by the stream yesterday.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Adverbs are placed below the parts of speech they modify in sentence diagrams. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “almost” and “silently.”



Mentor Text and Response

"One's dignity may be assaulted, vandalized and cruelly mocked, but cannot be taken away unless it is surrendered."

Morton Kondracke (journalist and author)
(1939–)

This quotation includes two well-chosen adverbs, "cruelly" and "away." Explain the author's point and offer your own opinion, using at least two different types of adverbs.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: In her office she cautiously opened the package that afternoon.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	These words can be contracted with apostrophes in the middle of words: *not*, *will*, *would*, *have*, *had*, and the forms of the "to be" verb (*is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*). **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ Words can be contracted at the beginning or ending of words. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A coordinating conjunction connects words, phrases, or clauses with related meanings. The memory trick FANBOYS (For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So) may help you remember the common coordinating conjunctions. A comma is placed before the conjunction if it joins two or more long independent clauses. A long independent clause would be five or more words. **Example:** _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: He'd told us the secret, but we should've already known it.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Shel'l do whatever we ask, but she isn't happy.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Twas the night before Christmas and I tried to stay up 'til the reindeer arrived.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Iris and Mike like chocolate or vanilla, so they prefer strawberry or orange sherbet.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: It's late, and the players can't really see the ball very well.

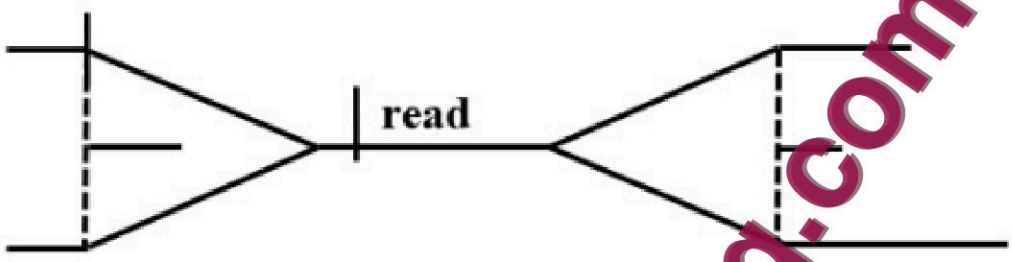
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: They are either ready for the quiz, nor are they ready for the test.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Coordinating conjunctions are placed in the middle of a dotted vertical line to join words, phrases, and clauses. Complete this sentence diagram: "Bo and I read books or magazines."



Mentor Text and Response

"All I want is cake and ice cream, so you can have the rest."

Maya Angelou (poet and author)
(1928–2014)

This quotation includes two coordinating conjunctions. Share your priorities in life, including at least two coordinating conjunctions.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly using contractions whenever possible.
They will always remember us even though she had tried to forget.

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:
I decided to surprise my teacher, and my teacher wasn't surprised at all.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
All 22 comma rules in one place: http://bit.ly/2dtfyKH.	Don't use a comma to separate a subject from its verb. **Example:** _____ Also, don't use a comma to separate compound subjects, compound objects, or compound predicates. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions used in the same sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ If used within the same phrase or clause, don't use a comma to separate the correlative conjunctions. A comma is placed before the second of the paired conjunctions, if that conjunction begins a different independent clause. **Examples:** _____ _____ The verb which follows two subjects joined by "*or*" must agree with the second subject, not the first. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Wendy with her long blonde hair, and Sue with her beautiful eyes kept love-struck Rafael, and Miguel's attention.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Noel and Bill gave Lulu, and Lester a surprise party.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Marta worked hard, and saved her money to buy Frances and Scott an expensive wedding present

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The man with the beard, and the man with the mustache asked Amanda and I to leave.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Both Julie or Chris want to help plan the party.

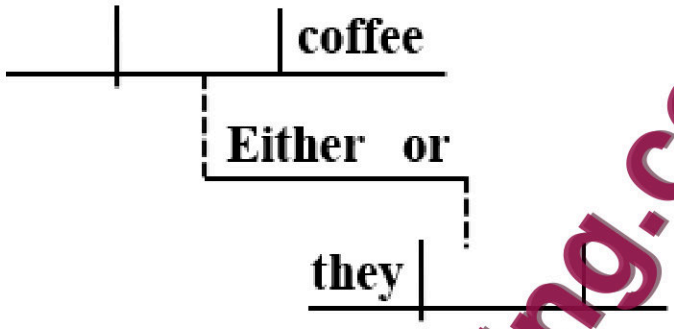
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Whether he stays nor he leaves does not matter.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Correlative conjunctions are placed to the right of a dotted vertical line that connects the predicates of a compound sentence. Complete the sentence diagram: "Either they drink coffee, or they drink tea."



Mentor Text and Response

"Either this man is dead or my watch has stopped."

Groucho Marx (American comedian and actor)
(1904–1991)

This quotation includes correlative conjunctions to set up the humorous punchline. Explain the joke or write your own, using your own pair of correlative conjunctions.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:
Either the children nor the parents needs to clean up the mess.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use a comma to separate the day from the month and the date from the year. Use a comma after the last date or number unless it is placed at the end of the sentence. **Examples:** _____ If the parts of the date serve as the object of a prepositional phrase, no comma is needed. **Example:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A subordinating conjunction always introduces an adverbial clause. The subordinating conjunction signals the relationship between the adverbial clause and the independent clause. Use this memory trick to remember the subordinating conjunctions: **Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ Use a comma to set off an introductory adverbial clause, but not an adverbial clause that ends a sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: She graduated on Wednesday June 3 2021, after years of study.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: On March 4, 2017 we left on our vacation.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: On February 14 we got engaged and were married last May 5 2017.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Until we finish our tests we can't talk even if we have questions.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Because the principal has an office, we can meet there, whenever we need to do so.

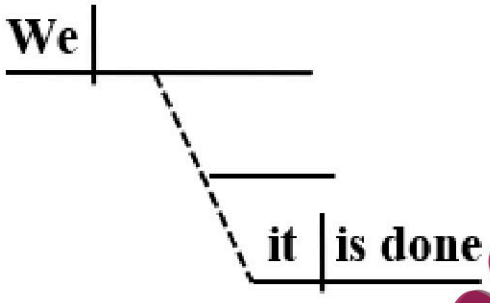
6. Combine these sentences into one by beginning with an adverbial clause: The song had ended. The audience continued to sing.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Subordinating conjunctions are placed to the right of a dotted, slanted line that connects the verbs of a complex sentence. Add these words to the sentence diagram: “leave,” “will,” and “when.”



Mentor Text and Response

"Whenever people agree with me, I always feel I must be wrong."

Oscar Wilde (Irish writer and poet)
(1904–1991)

This quotation includes a general subordinating conjunction to contrast with a specific independent clause. Respond to the author’s point, using a subordinating conjunction.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Check out friendly and business letter greetings and closings at http://bit.ly/2qYbKWf.	Each word in a letter greeting is capitalized. Place a comma after the greeting in a friendly letter. Place a colon (:) after the greeting in a business letter. **Examples:** _____ Only the first word of a letter closing is capitalized. Place a comma after the closing in both friendly and business letters. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A preposition shows some relationship, location, time, or position between the preposition and its object. The preposition is always part of a phrase and comes before its object. The preposition asks "What?" or "Whom?" and the object provides the answer. **Examples:** _____ _____ **Following are the most common prepositions:** aboard, about, above, according to, across, after, against, along, among, around, as, as to, at, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between, beyond, but, by, despite, down, during, except, for, from, in, inside, instead of, into, in place of, in spite of, like, near, next, of, off, on, onto, outside, out of, over, past, regardless of, since, than, through, throughout, to, toward, under, underneath, unlike, until, up, upon, with, within, without Place a comma after introductory prepositional phrases with more than four words. **Examples:** _____ Avoid stringing together too many prepositional phrases. Don't end sentences with prepositions. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence with the correct types of letters: He signed his friendly letter "Sincerely," and his business letter "Yours truly,".

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: His business letter greeting was "To Whom it may Concern,"

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mom's friendly letter greeting was "Dear Ken," and her closing was "Sincerely, Mom".

4. Re-write this sentences correctly: Near the light and fluffy cloud, the sun shone brightly. With him, I run every afternoon.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: After all I don't know where you're going to visit.

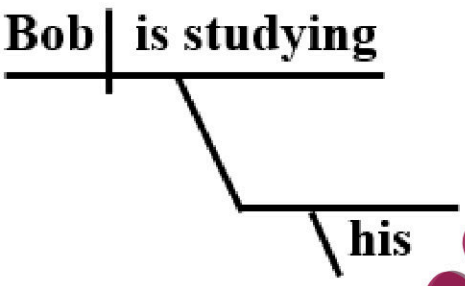
6. Re-write this sentence without the prepositional phrase strings: The rabbit in the story, ran under the fence, under the log, into his burrow, and finally in his bed he went to sleep.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Prepositions are placed to the right of slanted vertical lines and connect the predicate to the object of the preposition. Complete the sentence diagram: "Bob is studying in his bedroom."



Mentor Text and Response

"It is not unseemly for a man to die fighting in defense of his country."

Homer
(800 B.C. ?)

This quotation includes three prepositional phrases. Respond to the author's point, using at least two prepositional phrases.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	To properly address a letter or package, the top line(s) identifies the name and/or company. The middle line includes the street number and name. The bottom line(s) contains the city, state or province (two-letter capitalized abbreviation), zip code, and country (if other than that of the addressee). **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ Don't use abbreviations when addresses are listed in formats other than on letters and packages. Commas follow the name and/or company, the street name, the city, and the state or province. Commas are never placed before zip codes. **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	To identify the subject and predicate in a sentence, first look for the main verb and then ask 'Who?' or 'What?' The answer is the subject and the main verb is the predicate. The subject is never part of a prepositional phrase or dependent clause. Both the subject and predicate must be part of an independent clause. The subject is the "do-er" of the sentence. It tells whom or what the sentence is about. The simple subject is the noun or pronoun that acts or is acted upon. The complete subject includes additional words which describe the simple subject. The compound subject has two or more nouns or pronouns. **Examples:** _____ The predicate does the work of the "do-er" of the sentence. It shows a physical or mental action or describes a state of being. The simple predicate is the main verb that acts upon the subject. The complete predicate includes additional words which modify the predicate. The compound predicate has two or more verbs. **Examples:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: He sent the letter to Mabel Mosely 124 Post St., Beverly Hills, California, 91201.

2. Write your own mailing address as you would on a letter:

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the simple subject: On the lake the boat sailed despite the lack of wind.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the complete subject: Across the classroom sat an antagonistic young man.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the simple predicate: Racing into the wind, the bikers kept their heads close to the handlebars.

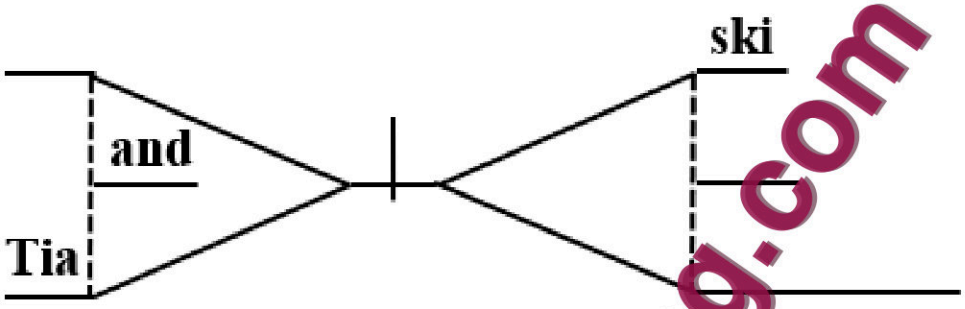
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the compound predicate: Kendra and Luis whistled and cheered for every contestant.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Compound subjects are connected by coordinating conjunctions and a dotted vertical line. Compound predicates connect predicates with a coordinating conjunction and a dotted vertical line. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "and," "snowboard," and "Bill."



Mentor Text and Response

Indifference and neglect often do much more damage than outright dislike."
J.K. Rowling (British author of the Harry Potter series)
(1965–)

This quotation includes a compound subject and compound predicate. Respond to the author's comment, using a compound predicate.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this address correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the complete subject. [Bracket] the compound predicate:

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Place a comma before and after any educational degrees and special qualifications which follow peoples' last names. Educational degrees and special qualifications are often abbreviated. **Examples:** _____ Family titles that follow first names, such as Jr. for Junior or IV for the fourth family member with the same first name, are not set off by commas, but family titles that follow first and last names are set off by commas. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A direct object tells whom or what receives the action of the verb. **Examples:** _____ A linking verb (a verb that expresses no action) doesn't signal a direct object. **Examples:** _____ Also, an object of a preposition or a possessive pronoun isn't a direct object. **Examples:** _____ An indirect object answers To whom? For whom? To what? or For what? the action of the verb is completed. A sentence with an indirect object must also have a direct object. Usually, the indirect object is found between a verb and a direct object. **Examples:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The dentist's name on the door was Maureen Solom, D.D.S. so I had found the right place.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lucas, Jr., had an appointment with Michael Gadsen, M.D.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: If Jonathan Smith, III, had a son with the same first name, he would be Jonathan Smith IV.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the direct objects: I dropped him on the couch and left money for the babysitter to buy pizza for him.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the direct objects. [Bracket] the indirect object: I loaned him a dollar, but he spent it.

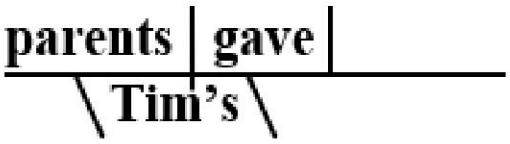
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the direct object. [Bracket] the indirect object: She told her mother a lie.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Direct objects are placed after the second vertical line. Indirect objects are placed below the predicates they modify. Add these objects to the sentence diagram: "him" and "money."



Mentor Text and Response

"Great minds discuss ideas; Average minds discuss events; small minds discuss people."
Eleanor Roosevelt (First Lady and Committee Chair of the United nations committee which authored the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*)
(1884–1962)

This quotation includes parallel direct objects to build toward her key point. Respond to her point, using both a direct and indirect object.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the direct object. [Bracket] the indirect object:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	When a geographical reference has two or more places, use a comma after each place (town or city, region, state or province, country) and place a comma after the last place name, unless it is placed at the end of the sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A phrase is a group of related words without a noun and connected verb. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ A noun and connected verb forms a clause. A clause is either *independent* or *dependent*. An independent clause is a sentence or part of a sentence that expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause has a noun and verb, but does not express a complete thought. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Orlando, Florida is a popular vacation destination.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lake Tahoe Nevada, has a number of famous ski resorts and casinos.

3. Re-write this sentence and underline the phrase. During the game I munch peanuts and popcorn.

4. Re-write this sentence and underline the phrase. The detective has been looking everywhere.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the dependent and [bracket] the independent clause: Unless you ask politely I will not answer you.

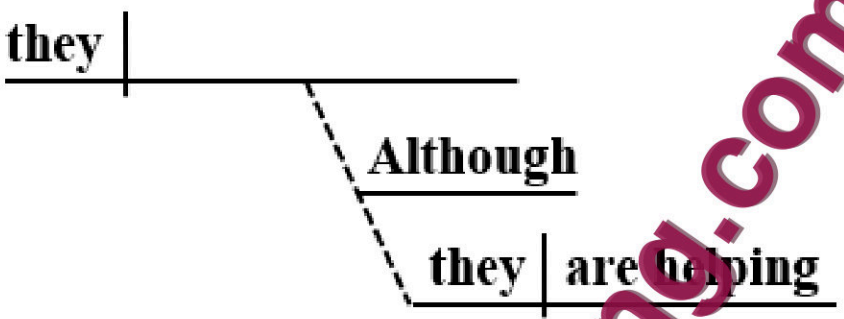
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the dependent and [bracket] the independent clause: His reaction was stratling, although she had warned us about his outbursts.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Dependent clauses are placed below the main horizontal line and connect with a dotted and slanted line to the predicates they modify. Complete the sentence diagram: "Although they are helping, they will have to wait."



Mentor Text and Response

"When the winter months arrived, he wrote in his study and he read the great masters."
Dave Hood (Canadian naturalist and blogger)
(1965–)

This quotation includes a dependent clause and two independent clauses, forming a compound-complex sentence. Write a compound-complex sentence to describe what you do during the summer months.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the dependent clause. [Bracket] the independent clause:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	A tag question is a brief question added to a declarative sentence. Remember that a declarative sentence makes a statement. Use commas to set off tag questions. Place a question mark at the end of the sentence, even though most of the sentence is a statement. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A complete sentence has three characteristics: 1. It tells a complete thought. 2. It has both a subject and a predicate. 3. It makes the voice drop down at the end of a statement or go up at the end of a question. **Examples:** _____ _____ A fragment is only part of a complete sentence. A sentence fragment is usually a dependent clause (a noun and verb that does not express a complete thought). To fix a sentence fragment, combine the dependent clause with an independent clause to form a complex sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ A run-on connects independent clauses without expressing a complete thought. When the run-on connects the independent clauses with a comma, it is called a *comma splice*. To fix a run-on, join the independent clauses with a comma-conjunction or semicolon or add a dependent clause to form a compound-complex sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Ian will complete his project won't he?

_____

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The fireworks were great. Weren't they!

_____

_____

_____

3. Identify the following as a complete sentence, a fragment, or a run-on: Even though we tried to pay attention to details.

Answer: _____

4. Identify the following as a complete sentence, a fragment, or a run-on: Ariel left school early, she did not have a note from her parents.

Answer: _____

5. Identify the following as a complete sentence, a fragment, or a run-on: Because the students failed to follow the rules, the dance was cancelled.

Answer: _____

6. Revise the sentence fragment by combining the fragment with an independent clause. Since the husband had tried to help with the housework. His wife forgave him.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Complete the sentence diagram with the complete sentence found in this song lyric:
"Because of it. He never gave me a chance, he didn't even try. I should have stopped him."

Mentor Text and Response

"I do not want people to be agreeable, as it saves me the trouble of liking them."
Jane Austen (the author of *Pride and Prejudice*)
(1775–1817)

Note that "As it saves me the trouble of liking them." would be a fragment and "I do not want people to be agreeable, it saves me the trouble of liking them" would be a run-on. Respond to the author's comment with an intentional fragment and a complete sentence.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Revise to form a complete sentence. Because it snowed. The road was dangerous it was icy.

_____

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	When we talk to a person in our speech or writing, that person is a *noun of direct speech*. The person could be a proper noun or a common noun. Place a comma after nouns of direct speech used at the beginning of a sentence. Place commas before and after nouns of direct speech used in the middle of sentences. Place commas before nouns of direct speech used at the end of sentences. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	English has four basic types of sentence structures: 1. A simple sentence has one independent clause and no dependent clause. **Example:** _____ 2. A compound sentence has two or more independent clauses, but no dependent clauses. **Example:** _____ _____ 3. A complex sentence has an independent clause and at least one dependent clause. **Example:** _____ _____ 4. A compound-complex sentence has two or more independent clauses, and a dependent clause. **Example:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Pedro you should listen to your mother. She knows what's best for you, son.

_____

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: If you would pay attention, Camille I'm sure that you would enjoy the performance.

_____

_____

_____

3. Identify this type of sentence: When I can, I like to help my neighbor with her yard and her shopping.

Answer: _____

4. Identify this type of sentence: Despite the fact that it's cold, I walk the dog, and I always take time to play fetch with him.

Answer: _____

5. Identify this type of sentence: In the morning my dad plans to cut down the oak tree and chop it up for firewood.

Answer: _____

6. Identify this type of sentence: Let's go home and let's build a fire.

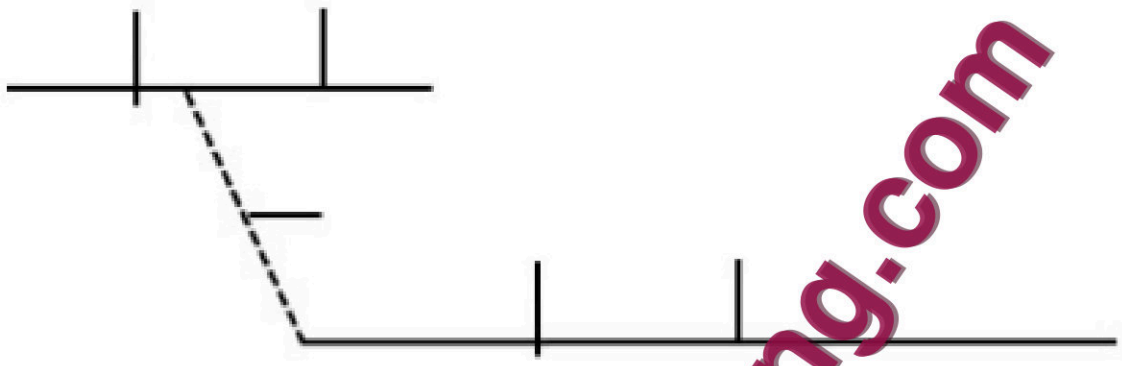
Answer: _____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Subordinating conjunctions are placed to the right of a dotted, slanted line that connects the verbs of a complex sentence. Complete this sentence diagram: "If Joel fights Bill, nothing will be accomplished."



Mentor Text and Response

"Nearly all men can stand adversity, but if you want to test a man's character, give him power."

Abraham Lincoln (the 16th President of the United States and author of *The Gettysburg Address*)
(1809–1865)

This quotation begins with an independent clause, follows with a dependent clause, and ends with another independent clause—an interesting compound-complex sentence. Respond to Lincoln's point with a compound-complex sentence.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write each sentence and list the types of sentences in parentheses

_____

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use commas after each item in lists, except the last one. Newspapers, magazines, and documents omit the comma before the coordinating conjunction that joins the last item in the list. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Sentences can be classified in four ways: 1. A *declarative* is a statement and ends in a period. **Example:** _____ 2. An *interrogative* is a question and ends in a question mark. **Example:** _____ 3. An *imperative* is a command and ends in a period. **Example:** _____ 4. An *exclamatory* expresses surprise or strong emotion and ends in an exclamation point. **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: At the store I bought two liters of soda, a king-size candy bar and a pack of gum.

_____

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: This year I plan to play baseball soccer, and lacrosse.

_____

_____

_____

3. Identify this type of sentence: What should you do if you get lost on a hike?

Answer: _____

4. Identify this type of sentence: I'm amazed that she doesn't remember!

Answer: _____

5. Identify this type of sentence: Please give me more time to complete the project.

Answer: _____

6. Identify this type of sentence: I've heard it said that the apple doesn't fall far from the tree.

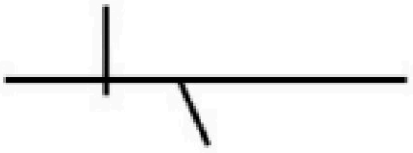
Answer: _____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Interrogative pronouns, such as *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *why*, and *how* are placed below the predicate in sentence diagrams. Remember that sentence diagrams do not include punctuation. Complete the sentence diagram: "Why are you leaving?"



Mentor Text and Response

"Ratty, is that really you?" came a weak voice from inside a hollow in the tree. "I've been so frightened!"

Kenneth Grahame (the author of *The Wind in the Willows*)
(1859–1932)

This quotation includes different types of sentences for variety. Add additional dialogue with at least two different types of interrogative pronouns.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and after each identify the type of sentence:

_____

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use commas after introductory words which receive special emphasis. **Example:** _____ Use comma after introductory words that modify other words in the main clause or to avoid confusion. **Example:** _____ _____ Place a comma after introductory prepositional phrases with more than four words and after each phrase in a prepositional phrase string. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A noun phrase consists of a named or unnamed person, place, thing, or idea and any words which modify or identify the noun. It acts as a single part of speech and can be referred to with a single pronoun. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Afterwards, we went out for ice cream. Usually I would agree to go.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Before the show, I climbed under the ropes beneath the chairs, to get a view of the stage.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrase: We sat down next to the dog on the couch.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrase: They stayed in the cabin by the lake.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrases: Freedom and liberty are such key rights.

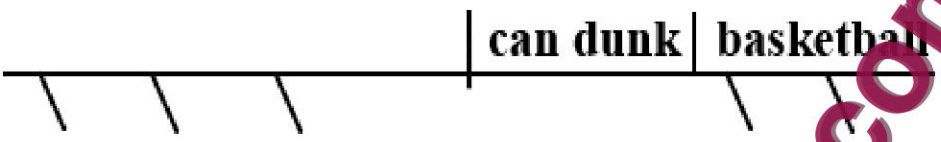
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the noun phrases: The mine workers hurried to clean up the muddy mess of the landslide.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Complete the sentence diagram: "All our starting players can dunk the regulation basketball."



Mentor Text and Response

"After she wrote the letter, she handed it to Constance, along with a bag containing one thousand pistoles [gold coins]."

Alexandre Dumas (the author of *The Three Musketeers*)
(1802–1870)

This sentence diagram uses noun phrases to avoid using excessive verbs and relative clauses. Continue the narrative with a noun phrase of your own.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the noun phrases:

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use commas after introductory clauses. An introductory clause is a dependent clause (a noun and connected verb that *does not* express a complete thought). The introductory clause usually begins with a subordinating conjunction and ends with a comma. **Example:** _____ _____ **Subordinating Conjunctions** **BUD IS WISE BUT HOT! AAA WWW** before, unless, despite (in spite of), in order that, so, while, if, since, even though (if), because, until, that, how, once, than, after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though), whether, when (whenever), where (wherever)

Cues	Parts of Speech Notes
	A noun clause is one type of a dependent clause and begins with *if*, *how*, *however*, *that*, the "wh" words: *what*, *when*, *where*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *why*, or the "wh"-ever words: *whatever*, *whenever*, *wherever*, *whichever*, *whoever*, or *whomever*. Place a comma following an introductory noun clause if a noun or pronoun follows. **Example:** _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Because the movie has some violence, and foul language, it was rated PG-13.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: After I take a long walk I take an even longer shower.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: Where I should go next, I'm not sure.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: Whichever way you want to go, seems fine with me.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: I would be rich if I had a dollar, for every time I told you.

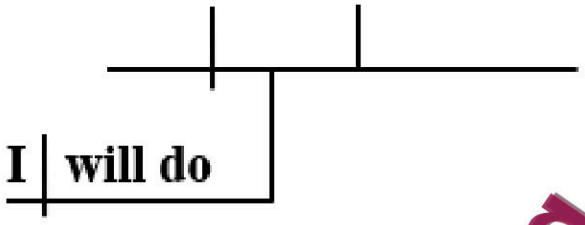
6. Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the noun clause: Whoever started the fire, will be in some serious trouble.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Noun clauses are placed above the main horizontal line and the verb connects to the predicate of the independent clause. Add this noun clause to the sentence diagram: "whatever you want."



Mentor Text and Response

"Well, all I know is what I read in the papers."

Will Rogers (20th Century American humorist)
(1879–1935)

This short quotation includes two noun clauses. Explain what Will Rogers means, using your own noun clause.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the noun clauses:

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	In dialogue sentences, place commas: After a beginning speaker tag to the left of the quotation marks. **Example:** _____ Before and after a middle speaker tag to the left of both quotation marks. **Example:** _____ _____ Before an ending speaker tag to the left of the quotation marks. **Example:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A gerund is an "_ing verb" that is used as a noun. **Examples:** _____ _____ A possessive pronoun can connect to a gerund. **Example:** _____ A possessive noun can connect to a gerund. **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Matt replied, "That's really not funny." I responded "I know, but you did laugh."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: "If you were ready," she whispered "We would be half way there by now."

3. Re-write these sentences correctly:
"I wonder why you care" she mumbled.
"She must be hiding something," he added.

4. Re-write these sentences and underline the gerunds:
Writing helps me sort out my thoughts.
However, reading gives me new ones.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the possessive pronoun. [Bracket] the gerund:
I hear their singing is simply the best of any junior competitors.

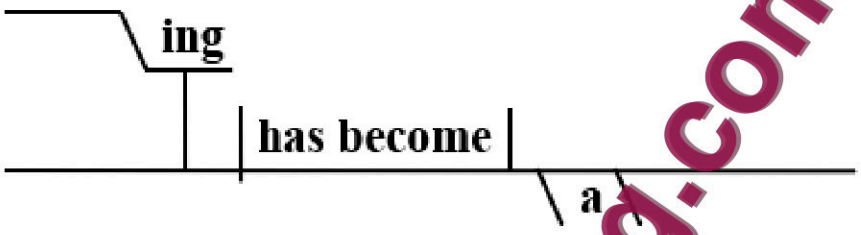
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the possessive noun. [Bracket] the gerunds:
Rafael's pitching still keeps those hitless wonders winning.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

The "_ing" endings of gerunds are placed under the base forms of the verb. The gerund is placed above the main horizontal line and connects to the subject or object place. Complete the sentence diagram: "Driving has become a necessary skill."



Mentor Text and Response

"Gardening was becoming a serious hobby for me, and the better I got at it, the more I wanted to grow."

John Grogan (the journalist and author) (1957–)

This quotation includes a gerund connected to a present participle. Write a sentence or two with a gerund to describe your own hobby.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this dialogue correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the possessive noun. [Bracket] the gerunds:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Place a comma before the coordinating conjunction(s) to join independent clauses if one or both of the independent clauses is long and always before *but* or *yet*. If one of the independent clauses has 5 or more words, use the comma. The memory trick **FANBOYS** (For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So) may help you remember the common two or three-letter coordinating conjunctions. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A gerund phrase is a noun phrase with a gerund serving as the noun. A possessive pronoun can be placed before a gerund phrase. **Example:** _____ _____ A singular possessive noun can connect to a gerund phrase. **Example:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: He enjoys the blues band, so he always attends the show. I want to go, and she does, too.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: I wish we would attend yet I know we won't go. I shouldn't have left and I knew it.

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: Love is wonderful, but it takes commitment. Love can change people, and often it does.

4. Re-write these sentences and underline the gerund phrases: Staying on top of things requires plenty of time and effort. When walking away from a problem won't work, try running.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the possessive pronoun. [Bracket] the gerund phrase: Our producing the play turned out to be the wrong decision.

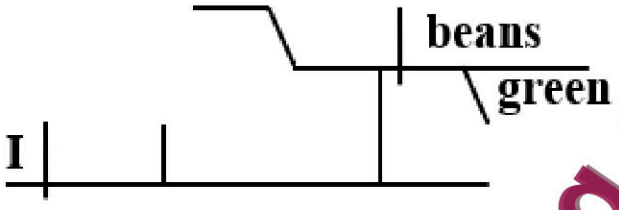
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the singular possessive noun. [Bracket] the gerund phrase: Bob's failing to arrive left us one player short for the game.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

The "_ing" endings of gerunds are placed under the base forms of the verb. Gerund phrases are placed above the main horizontal line and connect to the subject or object. Complete the sentence diagram: "I hate eating green beans."



Mentor Text and Response

"Not by his calm, lazy spouting was he seen, but rather by his wondrous breaching—the tossing of his entire body out of the water and high into the air. This breaching was Moby Dick's act of defiance!"

Herman Melville (the American author of *Moby Dick*)
(1819–1891)

The quotation includes a gerund connected to a present participle. Write a sentence or two, using a gerund to describe your hobby.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and underline the gerund phrases:

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Remember to place a comma after a dependent clause that begins a sentence. Also place commas before and after a dependent clause in the middle of the sentence. Don't place a comma before a dependent clause that ends a sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Reflexive pronouns end in "self" or "selves" and refer to the subject of a sentence. The reflexive pronoun cannot serve as the subject of the sentence. Reflexive pronouns are necessary to the meaning of the sentence and usually follow verbs or prepositions. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ Intensive pronouns are used to emphasize subject or object case nouns or pronouns. Unlike reflexive pronouns, removing the intensive pronoun does not change the meaning of the sentence. Intensive pronouns generally follow nouns or pronouns in the sentence and are not separated by commas. These pronouns take the same form as reflexive pronouns **Example:** _____ The two reciprocal pronouns, *each other* and *one another*, are used to describe the same action shared by two or more things or people. Usually, *each other* is used to refer to two people; *one another* is used to refer to more than two people. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Before I leave I'll need to eat. Unless Paul releases the rope, you will have to stay where you are.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I enjoy playing guitar, even if I don't practice enough and I'm not that talented.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The cat crawled away despite the fact that she was severely injured.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the reflexive pronouns:

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the intensive pronouns:

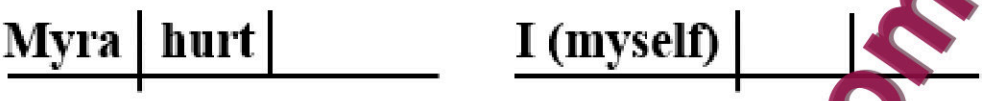
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Ariel, Misty, and Jillian do enjoy each other's company.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Intensive pronouns are placed within parentheses following the subjects or objects. Add these words to the sentence diagram: "great," "feel," and "herself."



Mentor Text and Response

"And since you know you cannot see yourself, so well as by reflection, I, your glass, will modestly discover to yourself, that of yourself which you yet know not of."

William Shakespeare (the famous poet and playwright) (1564–1616)

The quotation includes a clever use of reflexive pronouns. Explain the author's meaning, using a reflexive, intensive, or reciprocal pronoun.

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write the sentences with commas in the proper locations:

_____

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage – Write these sentences correctly:
Pete hurt hisself during the game. I myself sat out with an injury.
The two teams play well against one another, but they all enjoy playing each other.

_____

_____

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Transition words in writing are followed by commas. Check out this list of writing transition words: http://bit.ly/2q58UgE	Place commas following transitions or contrasts at the beginning of a sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ Place commas before and after parenthetical expressions used in the middle of a sentence or before a parenthetical expression used at the end of a sentence. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	An indefinite pronoun does not refer to a specific noun. Indefinite pronouns ending in "_body" or "_one" are singular. **Examples:** _____ _____ These indefinite pronouns are plural: *both*, *few*, *many*, and *several*. Indefinite pronouns that express quantity or measurement may be singular or plural depending upon the surrounding word clues. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Furthermore, the movie was not over. Although you could have waited for me.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: Moreover I could have won probably if I wanted to do so. However, I did not.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the indefinite pronouns: Everybody is here, but no one is there.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the indefinite pronouns: All are helping the teacher, but few seems to know what they are doing.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the indefinite pronouns: Several remains behind the curtain, but everyone takes a bow at the end of the performance.

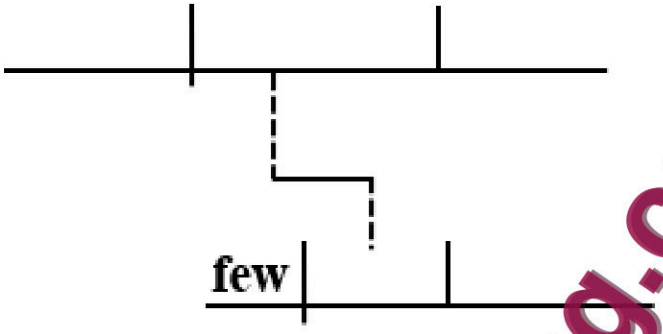
6. Re-write these sentences and underline the indefinite pronouns: Half of them show up for all of my parties. None of the class help clean up the mess afterwards.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Indefinite pronouns can serve as subjects and objects in sentences. Complete the sentence diagram: "Anyone can make money, but few earn fortunes."



Mentor Text and Response

"All would live long, but none would be old."

Benjamin Franklin (one of our nation's founders)
(1706–1790)

The quotation includes indefinite pronouns to generalize the author's comment. Explain Franklin's point, using at least one indefinite pronoun.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: Everybody is here and ready to go. Any of this candy are tasty as are all of these desserts.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	To determine whether adjectives are coordinate adjectives, try placing the word *and* between the adjectives. Second, try reversing them. If, the phrases sound fine both ways, the adjectives are coordinate adjectives and require commas between each. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A pronoun must clearly and specifically refer to just one noun or pronoun (the antecedent). Generally, the pronoun refers to the noun or pronoun immediately before the pronoun. **Examples:** _____ _____ To avoid pronoun antecedent problems: 1. Keep pronouns close to their references or use synonyms. 2. Don't have a pronoun refer to the object of a prepositional phrase. **Examples:** _____ _____ **Revision:** _____ _____ 3. Don't have a pronoun refer to a possessive antecedent. **Examples:** _____ _____ **Revision:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Bill jumped into the large, deep, swimming pool.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: She wore a green silk scarf over her black, v-neck sweater.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Let's order a pizza with red peppers, black olives and ranch dressing.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The company of soldiers was lined up in their proper position.

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: Are theirs the dark chocolate bars? They might be.

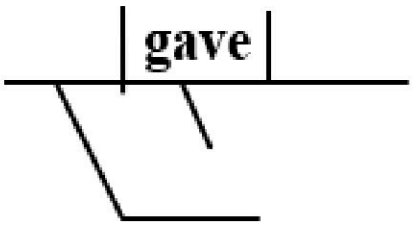
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: The ants' hill was next to the fence post, but I still had to paint it.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise the pronoun antecedent problem and Complete the sentence diagram by using a proper noun to refer to the object of the prepositional phrase: "One of them gave him mine."



Mentor Text and Response

"Cleanliness and order are not matters of instinct; they are matters of education, and like most great things, you must cultivate a taste for them."

Benjamin Disraeli (the Nineteen Century British Prime Minister)
(1804–1881)

The quotation includes properly matched pronoun antecedents and clever pronoun placement. Respond to the author's point, using a properly matched pronoun and antecedent.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: If the children don't eat the ice cream bars, put them back in the freezer.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Hierarchical adjectives build upon each other with different levels or degrees to modify the same noun. Hierarchical adjectives are not separated by commas. If the adjectives make no sense when placing the word *and* between them or reversing their order, the adjectives are hierarchical. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A personal pronoun must match singular pronouns to singular nouns or pronouns and plural pronouns to plural nouns or pronouns. **Example:** _____ **Revision:** _____ Often number errors are made when trying to avoid gender-specific pronouns. Revise by making the antecedent nouns plural. **Example:** _____ **Revision:** _____ Or revise the sentence without the pronouns. **Revision:** _____ A personal pronoun must also be in the same person as its antecedent. Pronouns are in the first, second, or third person. Revise pronoun person problems by matching the pronoun person to its antecedent. **Example:** _____ **Revision:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lois was a smart, happy woman, but she was the worst dressed, employee at her workplace.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The band concert was well-attended, crowd-pleasing, fun and as good as the last, spring concert.

3. Re-write this sentence to avoid using the gender pronoun by changing the singular pronoun antecedent to a plural noun: Everybody in class has his own ideas about the party.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly by removing the pronoun reference: Parents should pick up her fundraising packets after school.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Anyone should know your solo part by now.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Robert has their own ideas about decorating his room.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Personal pronouns serve as subjects or objects. Complete the sentence diagram: "They should tell him their problems."

Mentor Text and Response

"But we in our green youth have to settle the eternal questions first of all. That's what we care about."

Fyodor Dostoyevsky (a Russian novelist and essayist)
(1821–1881)

This quotation includes a pronoun number shift to change a plural into a singular idea. Respond to the author's statement with at least two pronouns, matching in number and person.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: People should help theirselves. Each doctor should send his nurses to the conference.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	An appositive is a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase that identifies or explains another noun or pronoun before or after it. If the appositive is non-essential to the meaning of the sentence, commas, parentheses, or dashes are used to signal and separate this identification or explanation. **Examples:** _____ _____ If the appositive is essential to the meaning of the sentence, no punctuation is used. **Example:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Four types of vague pronoun references have pronouns which do *not* clearly identify their antecedents: 1. Demonstrative pronouns (*this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*) are used on their own without a clear location. Revise by adding a noun following the pronoun. **Example:** _____ 2. More than one antecedent could match the pronoun. Revise by repeating the noun. **Example:** _____ _____ _____ 3. The antecedent is an adjective. Revise by changing the antecedent from an adjective to a noun. **Example:** _____ _____ 4. The pronoun has no antecedent. Revise by adding the antecedent. **Example:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The gentleman the one in the black raincoat, waited outside of the store.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Myra Bannecker (the famous) English ballerina performed for the queen.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The rock star, Bruce Springsteen sold out three concerts.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: I love art galleries, especially paintings. This seems to be from the Italian artists.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: The books were already on the students' desks, but we didn't need them.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: I asked to speak to Maribel's father, but she would not talk to me.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence diagram by adding a noun or pronoun: "This fits those screws."

Mentor Text and Response

"Anyone who goes to a psychiatrist ought to have his head examined."
Samuel Goldwyn (a motion picture producer and studio executive)
(1882–1974)

The quotation includes a vague pronoun for comedic effect. Explain the humor in this remark, using a properly matched pronoun and antecedent.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Re-write the sentence, underline the appositives, and punctuate correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: Please get your paper out of your backpack and pass it forward.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	The relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *which*, but not *that*, begin nonrestrictive relative clauses. Use commas to set off nonrestrictive relative clauses from the noun or pronoun before the clause. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Nonrestrictive relative clauses serve as adjectives to modify the preceding noun or pronoun, but they do *not* limit, restrict, or define the meaning of that noun or pronoun. The clause could be removed without changing the basic meaning of the sentence. The relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *which*, but not *that*, begin nonrestrictive relative clauses. The *who* is a subject case pronoun and refers to a specific person. **Example**: _____ _____ The *whom* is an object case pronoun and also refers to a specific person. **Example**: _____ _____ The *whose* is a possessive case pronoun. **Example**: _____ _____ The *which* pronoun refers to a specific thing. **Example**: _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The teacher whose article was published in the New York Times, was thrilled.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: That chocolate layer cake, which I want to order is delicious.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Joshua and Curtis whom we know, plan on leaving as soon as the show is over.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girl, whose would not stop talking, sat down right behind us in the movie theater.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: The boy, which liked the red-haired girl, was the one who arrived early but left late.

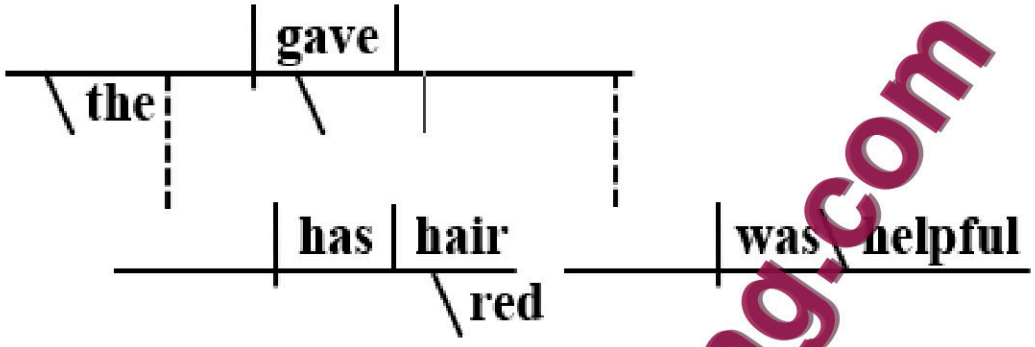
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: That man, who left town, who went to Chile, and which disappeared, is back.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Relative clauses are connected to subjects and objects by vertical dotted lines. Complete the sentence diagram: "The woman who has red hair gave him money, which was helpful."



Mentor Text and Response

"Roger Chillingworth made his advent to the town... What could he, whose sphere was in great cities, be seeking in the wilderness?"

Nathaniel Hawthorne (the author of *The Scarlet Letter*)
(1804–1864)

The quotation includes a nonrestrictive clause to contrast the two locations. Write a sentence, contrasting two locations, in which you use a different relative pronoun to begin each nonrestrictive clause.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly: The store sold me the bike that I did not want.

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: That man, which is funny, told a joke about our town.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	The relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *that*, but not *which* introduce restrictive clauses. Do *not* use commas, dashes, or parentheses to set off restrictive relative clauses from the noun or pronoun before the clause. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Restrictive relative clauses serve as adjectives following a noun to limit, restrict, or define the meaning of that noun. The clause could *not* be removed without affecting the basic meaning of the sentence. A restrictive relative clause begins with the relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *that*, but not *which*. The *who* refers to a specific person or group of people. **Example**_____ The *whom* is an object case pronoun and also refers to a specific person. **Example**_____ The *whose* is a possessive case pronoun. Be careful not to confuse *whose* with the contraction *who's*. **Example**_____ The *that* refers to things or people in general. **Example**_____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The child, who sits up front needs your help.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: A medal that I won in second grade, was for second place.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The student who's house was destroyed in the flood came back to school today.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The mean waiter which served us was also rude.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: My friend who we all know is ill.

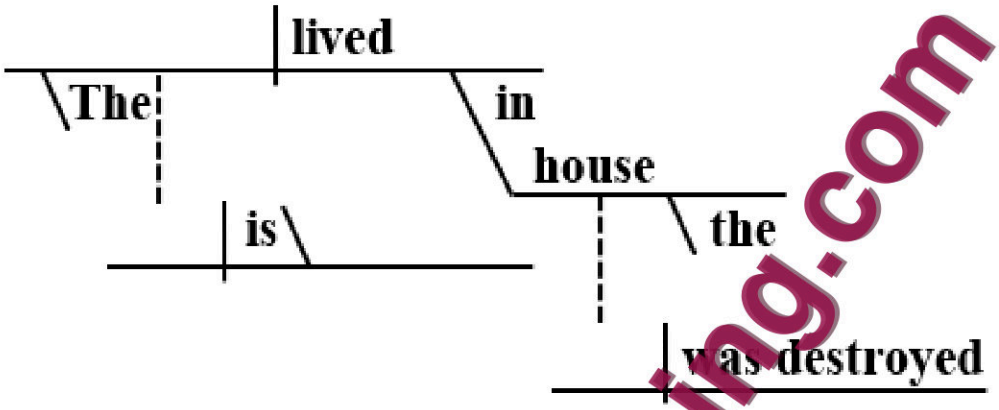
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: No team which I like is playing tonight.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Relative clauses are connected to subjects and objects by vertical dotted lines. Complete the sentence diagram: "The gentleman who is homeless lived in the house that was destroyed."



Mentor Text and Response

"A flatterer is a friend who is your inferior, or pretends to be so."

Aristotle (the Greek philosopher and scientist)
(384 B.C.–322 B.C.)

The quotation includes a restrictive clause to define the subject. Explain what the author means, using a different relative pronoun to begin a restrictive clause.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly: Class bullies which make fun of others, are cruel. The author who's story I just finished won a prize.

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: The Smiths which I've met are a nice family.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	When using dialogue or a direct quotation, the first word of a complete sentence must be capitalized, even if it is in the middle of a sentence. **Example:** _____ Dialogue and direct quotations are not capitalized if they are only part of a sentence. **Example:** _____ _____ Both parts of a divided quotation are enclosed within quotation marks. The first word of the second part is not capitalized unless it begins a new sentence. **Example:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	An adjective that follows a linking verb to describe a preceding noun or pronoun is called a *predicate adjective*. **Example:** _____ Because predicate adjectives serve as objects, they often include modifiers to form adjectival phrases. An adjectival phrase consists of more than one adjective and a connected noun or pronoun that acts as a single part of speech. **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Ray did say, "they left early."

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I should have guessed that it "Had to happen that way."

_____

_____

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: "That movie, my aunt said, was really scary."

_____

_____

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the predicate adjectives in these sentences: Suzanne is beautiful and she is kind-hearted. Tom, however, seems mean and self-centered.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the predicate adjectives in these sentences: Something smells funny and it's not my cooking. He appears qualified, but I have my doubts.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the adjectival phrases in these sentences: Our teacher was a perfect role model. She was a true mentor to her students.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Predicate adjectives are placed in the object position after the second vertical line.
Complete the sentence diagram: "The long skinny dog was extremely quick."

Mentor Text and Response

"A friend is one before whom I may think aloud."
Ralph Waldo Emerson (the Nineteenth Century author and essayist)
(1803–1882)

The quotation includes a predicate adjective to define its subject. Explain the author's meaning, using a predicate adjective.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and underline the predicate adjectives: A few questions seemed difficult, but most were easy.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Question marks go inside (to the left of) the quotation marks if they are part of the quoted sentence, but outside (to the right of) the quotation marks if you, the writer, ask a question about the quotation. **Example:** _____ _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	When used as a verb form, a regular past participle consists of a linking or helping verb, which determines the verb tense, + the base form of a verb + an "__ed" ending. The past participle indicates a completed action. **Examples:** _____ However, many past participles end in "__d," "__t," or "__en." **Examples:** _____ A past participle can also function as an adjective to indicate a condition with or without a linking or helping verb. **Example:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: Did he say, “Global warming will continue.” Did she say, “Humans caused these problems”?

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: “Why should we wait”? she asked. His mom complained, “How can we help her”?

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles: My dad had swept all the floors and had dusted each of the lampshades.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles: Has Aunt Jane spoken to you about what the girls have planned to do for her party?

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles: Proven wrong, he still had insisted on continuing the discussion.

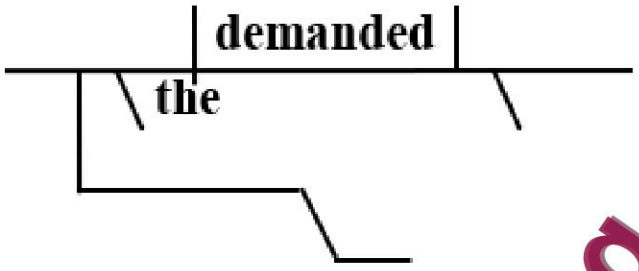
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participles: Abandoned, the poor little puppy had slept under the dumpster in the alley.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Participles are placed below the nouns that they modify. Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Frustrated, the boys demanded their snacks."



Mentor Text and Response

"However confused the scene of our life appears, however torn we may be who now do face that scene, it can be faced, and we can go on to be whole."

Muriel Rukeyser (an American poet and political activist)
(1913–1980)

The quotation includes past participles to create parallelism. Respond to the author's point, using at least two past participles.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the past participles:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	An ellipsis is punctuated as three periods (...) and is used in direct quotations to delete unnecessary parts of the quotation. The ellipsis is also used as a "thinking pause" in stories. When ending a sentence, don't add on the additional period. Also, add on a space after the ellipsis before the next word or punctuation. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	When used as a verb form, a regular past participial phrase consists of a linking or helping verb + the base form of a verb + and "__ed" ending + related words to indicate a completed action. **Examples:** _____ _____ The architect had carefully designed the home. However, many past participles end in "__d," "__t," or "__en." **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ A past participial phrase can also function as an adjective to indicate a condition with or without a linking or helping verb. **Example:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The author claims that "...Over 2,300 refugees died at sea ... " (Crain 23).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: "I've been thinking-We shouldn't judge her too harshly," she said.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase: The workers had carelessly chosen the wrong building materials.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase: All three children had barely lost in the final round of the spelling bee.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase: Harry has already said that he doesn't expect to return to school.

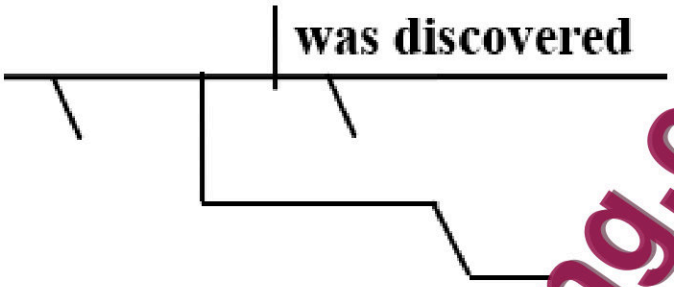
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the past participial phrase: Beaten by a lesser team, the Los Angeles Dodgers changed their management.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Sentence diagrams don't apply spelling rules, but the modifiers below the horizontal line do follow the word order of the sentence. Complete the sentence diagram: "Her mistaken identity soon was discovered."



Mentor Text and Response

"Finally, tired and spent with nothing more to add or fix, it seemed to me its success or failure was out of our hands."

Janet Tiessen (a Canadian musician)
(1951–)

The quotation includes past participial phrases, used as adjectives and verbs. Predict what the object of the author's comments might be, using a past participial phrase.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the past participial phrases:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	When quotations or quoted titles are placed within quoted speech, use single quotation marks ('__') at the beginning and end of the inside quotations. Use double quotation marks ("__") at the beginning and end of the entire quotation. **Example:** _____ _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A present participle adds an "__ing" onto the base form of a verb to indicate a continuous action or condition. A present participle is preceded by a linking verb when used as a verb form. The linking verbs indicate past, present, or future tense. **Examples:** _____ _____ A present participle can also function as an adjective with or without a linking verb. **Example:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The Pledge of Allegiance states, "Our country is "indivisible, with liberty and justice for all.'"

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: "We closed the ceremony by singing 'America the Beautiful,' reported the business owner.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: My mom and dad were listened to every word that my brother said.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: The parents is waiting in the parking lot for the bus to arrive.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: We will be asking you earlier for your help.

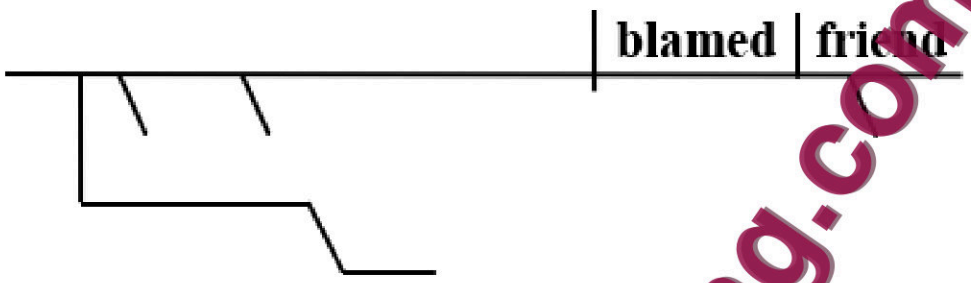
6. Re-write this sentence correctly, using the present participle: Trotted, the horse and rider came into view.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Tripping, the embarrassed girl blamed her friend."



Mentor Text and Response

"As he was wandering about there came upon a lion lying down moaning and groaning."
Aesop (the famous author of fables)
(620 B.C.–560 B.C.)

The quotation includes present participles used as verbs and adjectives. Continue the narrative with your own present participles.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Revise this sentence with present participles: Ran, the girl tried to catch up when she fell.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Direct quotations which include incorrect or non-standard spelling, word usage, mechanics, and grammar must include the bracketed *sic* [sic] after any grammar, usage, mechanics, word choice, or spelling mistake. The [sic] means "as the original said." **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	A present participial phrase adds an "__ing" onto the base form of a verb to indicate a continuous action or condition. A present participial phrase is preceded by a linking verb when used as a verb form and adds on related words to form the phrase. The linking verbs: *is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been* indicate past, present, or future tense. **Example:** _____ _____ _____ _____ A present participial phrase can also function as an adjective with or without a linking verb. **Example:** _____ _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: "I've always wonderred [sic] why the cure are worse than the disease" (Bonnin 23).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The author stated, "Finally I want to ask you a question very difficult [sic]" (Langston 110).

3. Re-write this sentence correctly with the present participle: My brothers were frequently arrived late for our Sunday family dinners.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly with the present participle: Lauren will be wanted to know the facts before she decides.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the present participial phrase: We will be watching carefully to see if her promises made will be kept.

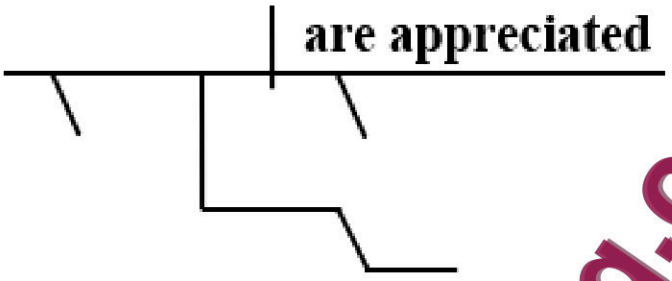
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the present participial phrase: Skating on thin ice, the boys and girls played their first hockey game of the winter season.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Participial endings are placed under the base forms of verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Her helping hands are always appreciated."



Mentor Text and Response

"In taking revenge, a man is but even with his enemy: but in passing it over, he is superior."
Sir Francis Bacon (the British scientist and philosopher)
(1561–1626)

The quotation includes present participial phrases to describe human response to revenge. Explain what the author means, and include a present participial phrase in your response.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly: The mayor said, "She could of known that the landowner have bribed the official" (Ky 34).

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Change the present participial verb form to an adjectival phrase. The three-year-old was swimming in the pool without a life jacket.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
Some writing style guides require footnotes at the bottom of each page. **Footnote Examples** Annie Addams, *The Ambassadors* (Rockville: Serenity, 2009), 34-40. Bob Saeturn, "Clowns" http://www.circum.com, (June 15, 2017).	A citation is the author's last name and the page number where the author's words are found. If no author is listed, list the title of the source of information and page number. The citation is placed within parentheses after the quotation. Place a period after the citation, but include question marks and exclamation points within the quotation marks if they are part of the quote. An indirect quotation reports someone else's ideas without quoting each word. Indirect quotations still need proper citations, but not quotation marks. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. **Examples:** _____ Use the suffix "_er" for a one-syllable modifier to compare two things. **Example:** _____ Use "_er" or *more (less)* for a two-syllable modifier to compare two things. **Example:** _____ Use *more* or *less* for adverb comparative modifiers ending in "__ly." **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentence correctly: “Over 75% of voters approve“ (Pan 4).” However, “… will they vote for it” (“The Final List” 3)?

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mr. Lansing said “that she would be ready (Jolly 8)."

3. Re-write these sentences correctly: I said, “The story is false (‘Fake News’ 2). He thought “that the facts will come out (Stems) 3.”

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Her sisters are more happier than ever, yet they haven’t faced up to all of their problems.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Samuel is less handsome than Luke; however, he is considerably more politer.

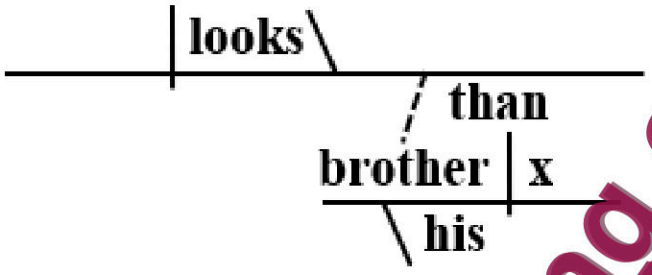
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Lacy was more surprising ready to give her speech although Bill was less prepared than ever.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Comparative modifiers are placed to the right of the predicate after a backward slanted line in sentence diagrams. The object of comparison is placed under the comparative modifier and is connected with a dotted, slanted line. The unstated verb is marked as an "X" to the right of the main vertical line. Complete the sentence diagram: "Rafael looks shorter than his brother."



Mentor Text and Response

"I believe that unarmed truth and unconditional love will have the final word in reality. That is why right, temporarily defeated, is stronger than evil triumphant."

Martin Luther King Jr. (the civil rights leader)
(1929–1968)

The quotation includes a comparative modifier to contrast love and evil. Respond to the author's point, using a comparative modifier.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: Marna is happier than Frank. Frank was more kind than Keith.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	The Works Cited page is placed at the end of an essay or research report and lists all of the sources you used in alphabetical order. Double space all Works Cited entries. **Examples:** Fill in the punctuation in the this Works Cited. Works Cited Baker John *How to Use MLA* El Dorado Hills Pennington Publishing, 2015 Print. "Citations. *The American Encyclopedia* 3rd ed 2015. Web Jones, Amanda and King, Melissa. "Using MLA. *mla.org*. 2 May 2015. Web 24 May 2015.

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. **Examples:** _____ The superlative modifier indicates which is the *most* or *least*. Use the suffix "_est" for a one-syllable superlative modifier to compare three or more things. **Example:** _____ Use "_est," *most*, or *least* for a two-syllable or longer superlative modifier to compare three or more things. **Example:** _____ Use *most* or *least* for adverb comparative modifiers ending in "__ly." **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this Works Cited reference correctly: Stuart Johnson, Clouds. San Diego: Lister Publishing, 2017. Print.

2. Re-write this Works Cited reference correctly: Weston, Dylan: Under My Thumb. New York City, Barney Publishing, 2017. Print.

3. Re-write this Works Cited reference correctly: "Teach Today." Bee Online Encyclopedia. 4th ed. 2017.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Of the watch, belt, and pants, the belt was the most nice gift, and the watch was the cheapest.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Compared to Julia, Sammi, and me, Linda is the most prettiest, although she has the least talent.

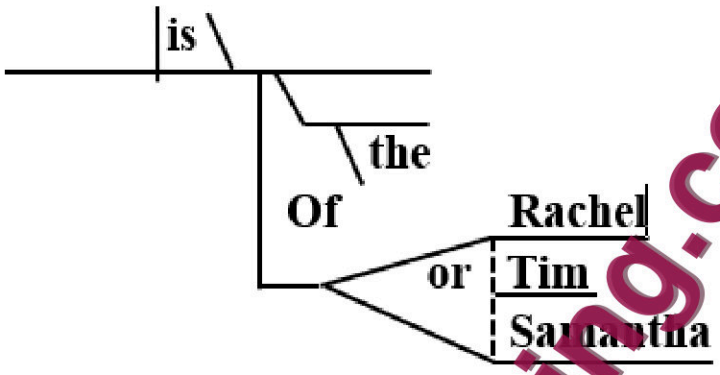
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Of the three brothers I worked more consistently to ensure that Mom did not have to struggle.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Superlative modifiers are placed to the right of the predicate after a backward slanted line in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "Of Rachel, Tim, or Samantha, Rachel is the most talented."



Mentor Text and Response

"It is not the strongest of the species that survives, nor the most intelligent, but the one most responsive to change."

Charles Darwin (the author of *Origin of the Species*)
(1809–1882)

The quotation includes superlative modifiers to compare species. Respond to the author's point, using a superlative modifier.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this Works Cited source correctly: Le, Ty. "Eat for Fun." Azusa: Lee Publishing, 2014, Print.

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly: Of the five speakers, Sue spoke most confident. She was the better speaker by far.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Underline or italicize the titles of books, newspapers, websites, and magazines. As a general rule, we underline or italicize *whole things*, *big things*, or *things that can be picked up from a table*. Never underline and italicize. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. A misplaced modifier modifies something that the writer does not intend to modify because of its placement in the sentence. Place modifiers close to the words that they modify. **Examples:** _____ _____ These sentences have two different meanings. The first means that I drank nothing but water. The second means that all I did with the water was to drink it.

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Our English teacher made us read "Pride and Prejudice."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Jonathan has a subscription to "The Washington Post."

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Manuel left enough food usually on his plate to feed his dog.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girl before she was ready finished the project.

5. Re-write these sentences correctly: We found the phone she lost yesterday by the trash can. We gave it to her this morning.

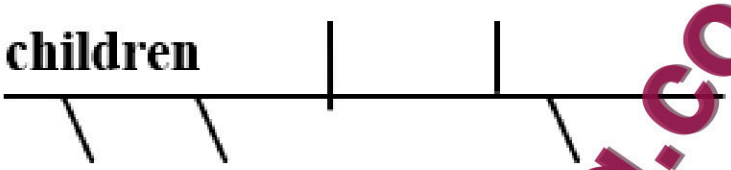
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: The singer was asked by an enthusiastic fan for his autograph after the song.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Modifiers are placed under the parts of speech that they modify. Complete the sentence diagram: "Our own children loved their presents."



Mentor Text and Response

"England and America are two countries separated by a common language."
George Bernard Shaw (the British author and humorist)
(1856–1950)

The quotation includes an adjectival phrase to modify "countries" for humorous effect. Explain the author's point, using at least one adjective and one adverb modifier.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence correctly and underline the modifiers:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Underline or italicize the titles of plays, television shows, movies, and works of art. As a general rule, we underline or italicize *whole things*, *big things*, or *things that can be picked up from a table*. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. A dangling modifier is an adjective or adverb that does not have a clear connection to the word, phrase, or clause to which it refers. A dangling modifier usually takes the form of a present participle ("__ing"), a past participle ("__d," "__t," "__ed," "__ en"), or an infinitive (*to* + the base form of a verb). To eliminate the dangling modifier, place it close to the word or words the adjective or adverb modifies. **Example:** _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The audience applauded at the close of the curtain on our last performance of "Mulan."

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: "St. George and the Dragon" is a painting by Raphael. It hangs in the Louvre in Paris.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: "One morning I shot an elephant in my pajamas" (Groucho Marx).

4. Re-write this classified ad correctly: FOR SALE: Walnut table by original owner. Has decorative legs.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Abe Lincoln wrote the Gettysburg Address while riding on a train on the back of an envelope.

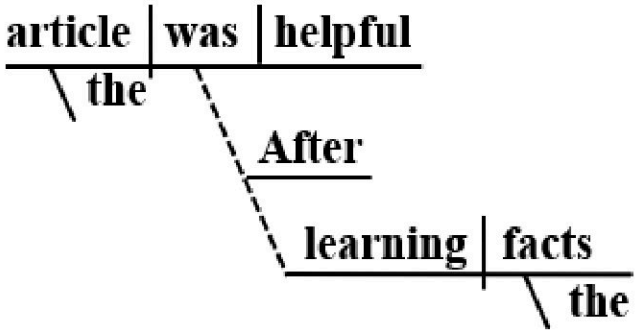
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Kept safe in a box for 9 years, the owner of the gold coins came forward to announce their sale.

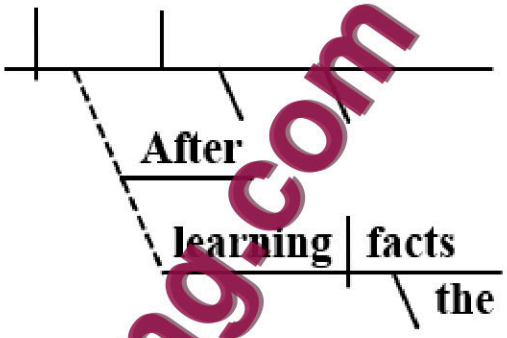
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Modifiers are placed under the parts of speech that they modify. Revise the dangling modifier found in the top sentence diagram in the one below:





Mentor Text and Response

"We are each responsible for our own life... no other person is or even can be."
Oprah Winfrey (the television and movie star)
(1954–)

The quotation includes several modifiers. Respond to the author's point with two modifiers.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: To eat a juicy burger, two napkins had helped him stay neat.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Place quotation marks before and after the titles of songs and poems. Think of songs and poems as *parts of whole things*, *small things*, *or things that can't be picked up from a table*. **Examples:** _____ Also place quotation marks before and after the titles of book chapters. Think of book chapter titles as *parts of whole things*, *small things*, *or things that can't be picked up from a table*. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A modifier is an adjective or adverb that defines, changes, describes, or limits the meaning of a word or words. A squinting modifier is a word or phrase placed between two words so that it could be misunderstood to describe either word. Revise by placing the modifier before or after the word, phrase, or clause that it modifies. **Squinting Modifier Example:** _____ _____ _____ **Explanation:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: I asked if "Wheels on the Bus" appears on 100 Favorite Children's Songs.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The best chapter in Great Americans was titled The Railsplitter and discussed Abraham Lincoln.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: I said we had to meet before lunch today at five o'clock.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Waiting awhile to think things over clearly improves your decisions.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Listening to loud music slowly brings on a migraine.

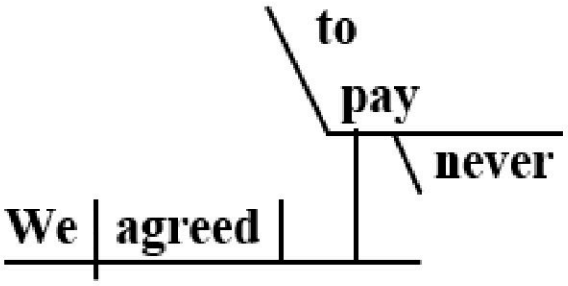
6. Re-write this sentence correctly: John promised never to listen to her advice.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Modifiers are placed under the parts of speech that they modify. In the top sentence diagram, revise the squinting modifier: "We agreed never to pay" in the one below.



Mentor Text and Response

"Why is it that our memory is good enough to retain the least triviality that happens to us, and yet not good enough to recollect how often we have told it to the same person?"
Rochefoucauld (the French author)
(1613–1680)

The quotation includes several modifiers. Respond to the author's point with two modifiers.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence correctly: I said after noon you have to ask me today.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Place quotation marks before and after the titles of articles. An article is a short written work such as a newspaper article, magazine article, or blog article that is part of the larger publication. Think of articles as *parts of whole things*, *small things*, *or things that can't be picked up from a table* in order to remember that they are punctuated with quotation marks. **Example:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	A verb phrase consists of the main verb with a linking verb, helping verb, adverb, and/or prepositional phrase. **Example:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The article, The First 100 Days, was written by Jim Marshall and appears in Atlantic Weekly magazine.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I wrote "Verb Phrases as the first in a series of articles for the Pennington Publishing Blog.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrases: Thomas is excited and happy, and will be pleased with his gift.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrases: My mom was willing to help on the condition that she could present my project at her meeting.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrases: The contagious disease rapidly spread and quickly caused the school to close its doors.

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb phrase: The pre-schoolers learned to draw between the lines in their coloring books.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Verbs are placed to the right of subjects after the main vertical line. Modifiers are placed under the verbs. Complete the sentence diagram: "Terry most always visits her mother."

Mentor Text and Response

"When visiting the palace he was respectful without humility, and careful to avoid all intimacy with people whom he at heart did not care for."

Leo Tolstoy (the Russian author of *War and Peace*)
(1828–1910)

The quotation includes a variety of verb phrases. Continue the narrative with at least two verb phrases.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly and underline the verb phrases:

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Place quotation marks before and after the titles of short stories and documents. A document is a written record that provides official information or evidence. Think of short stories and documents as *parts of whole things, small things, or things that can't be picked up from a table* in order to remember that they are punctuated with quotation marks. **Examples:** _____ _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	Verb tense is the form of the verb that indicates time. There are three basic verb tenses: the past, present, and future. The past tense adds "_ed" onto the end of the base form of the verb; the present tense is the base form of the verb; and the future tense adds "will" before the base form of the verb. **Examples**: _____ _____ Many past tense verbs are irregular. Either the ending of the past tense is not "_ed" or the base form of the verb is spelled differently than that of the base form of the verb. Generally, keep the same verb tense within sentences unless a shift is necessary. **Examples:** I _____ (present tense/base form of the verb) the man. I _____ (past tense with irregular verb ending) the man. She _____ (present tense/base form of the verb) the test. They _____ (past tense with different base form spelling) the test.
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Nathaniel Hawthorne's Twice Told Tales includes this short story: the "Village Uncle."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: The best two short stories are "A Day for Use" and The Snows of Winter.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the past tense verbs: Jamie left last Tuesday and arrived early Wednesday morning.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the present tense verbs: Pedro enjoys the fresh vegetables from his garden and hopes that the watermelon will be bigger than last year.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the future tense verbs: Gabriella will search for her missing phone later, but she will need my help.

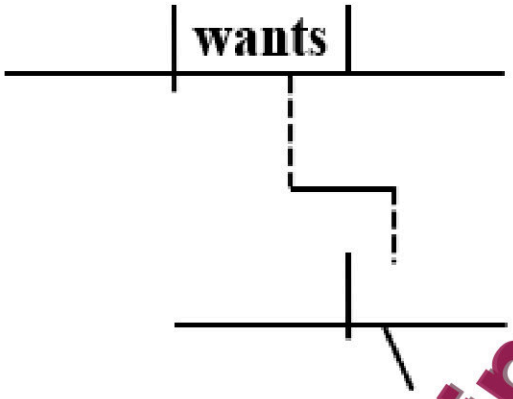
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verbs. Identify the tense of each verb in parentheses, following the verbs: He took his time, but now hurries to finish.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence into the present tense to fix the verb tense shift. Complete the sentence diagram: "Laura wants it, but I did not."



Mentor Text and Response

"Exalted from so base original, With heavenly spoils, our spoils. What he decreed He effected: Man he made, and for him built Magnificent this World, and Earth his seat."

John Milton (the British poet and author of *Paradise Lost*)
(1608–1674)

The quotation uses vivid verbs. Respond to the author's description of creation.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and label the verb tense in parentheses following each verb:

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize people's and characters' names, but not the articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of any names. **Example:** _____ Also capitalize family names and nicknames. **Examples:** _____ Don't capitalize family names when a possessive pronoun (*my*, *our*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *their*), a possessive noun, or an adjective is before the family names. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	The past progressive verb tense shows an action that took place over a period of time in the past or a past action which was happening when another action took place. The past progressive uses *was* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" and *were* + the base form of the verb + "__ing." **Examples:** _____ _____ The present progressive verb tense shows an action that takes place over a period of time in the present or an action taking place at the same time the statement is written. The present progressive uses *I am* + the base form of the verb + "__ing," *is* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" and *are* + the base form of the verb + "__ing." **Examples:** _____ _____ The future progressive verb tense shows an ongoing action that will be completed over a period of time or a continuous action that will be repeated and not completed. The future progressive uses *will be* + the base form of the verb + "__ing." **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Michael, Chuckerino the clown, and pepper arrived late to the party.

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Both dad and Grammy tried to cheer my sister up, but nothing seemed to work.

_____

_____

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: His uncle and all three of their cousins attended our family dinner.

_____

_____

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the past progressive verb tense: We were hoping that you would be able to stay, but we understand why you have to leave so early.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the present progressive verb tense: I'm pretty sure that your parents are inviting all of your friends over for dessert following the ceremony.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the future progressive verb tense: Taylor and Camille will be visiting three colleges on their spring road trip after they spend two days in Santa Cruz.

_____

_____

_____

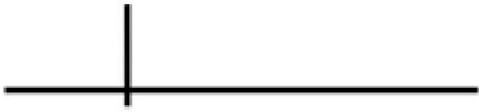
penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

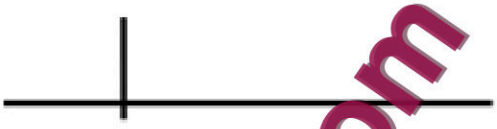
Sentence Diagram

Revise into the progressive verb tenses to Complete the sentence diagrams: "Jim walked."

Past Progressive



Present Progressive



Future Progressive

Mentor Text and Response

"I was thinking about how disjointedly time seemed to flow, passing in a blur at times, with single images standing out more clearly than others. And then, at other times, every second was significant, etched in my mind."

Stephenie Meyer (the author of the *Twilight* series)
(1973–)

The quotation includes extensive use of the progressive verb tense. Respond to the author's point, using a progressive verb tense.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the verbs formed with the progressive verb tense:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize named things and products. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of named things and products. **Examples**: _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	The perfect verb tense is used for a physical or mental action or state of being that refers to something that has already been completed or something that happened before another action or a specific time in the past. The past perfect is formed with *had* + the past participle. The past perfect verb tense is formed with the past, present, or future tenses of the "to have" verb (had, has or have, will have) and a past participle (the base form of a verb and a verb ending in "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "__en" for regular verbs). **Example:** _____ The present perfect refers to something that happened at an unnamed time before the present. The present perfect verb is formed with *has* or *have* + the past participle. **Examples:** _____ _____ The future perfect refers to something that will happen before another action in the future or something that will happen before a specific time in the future. The future perfect is formed with *will have* + the past participle. **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The Liberty bell is one of the popular historical attractions in the City Of Brotherly Love.

_____

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Our family has taken our Two a Day vitamins for the last ten years.

_____

_____

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the past perfect verb tense: Timmy had practiced his trombone for two hours every day before his mother got home from work.

_____

_____

_____

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the present perfect verb tense: The principal has expected the fire department to issue a warning since 2012.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the verb formed with the future perfect verb tense: The town will have had more than its fair share of celebrity visitors by next summer.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the verbs formed with the perfect verb tense: Grandad has promised since I was a child that we would one day hike to the top of Mt. Snowden, and we will have climbed it by this time next year.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence into the perfect verb tenses to Complete the sentence diagrams: "Jim will walk."

Past Perfect

Present Perfect

Future Perfect

Mentor Text and Response

"When you have loved as she has loved, you grow old beautifully."
W. Somerset Maugham (the British author)
(1874–1965)

The quotation includes the perfect tense. Continue the narrative with an example of the perfect verb tense.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the perfect verb tenses.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize the names of holidays and dates. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of a holiday. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	The infinitive uses "to" + the base form of a verb. The present infinitive uses "to" + the base form of a verb. **Example:** _____ The past participle infinitive uses "to be" + the past participle. **Example:** _____ The present perfect infinitive uses "to have" + the past participle. **Example:** _____ The past perfect participle uses "to have been" + the past participle. **Example:** _____ The continuous infinitive uses "to be" + the present participle. **Example:** _____ _____ The perfect continuous infinitive uses "to have been" + the present participle. **Example:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Groundhog day is in February and May Day is on May 1.

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Juneteenth is celebrated as African-American emancipation Day on June 19.

_____

_____

_____

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form: To be listed by the talent agency was quite an achievement.

_____

_____

_____

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form: They were to have waited until we arrived before eating lunch.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form: The songwriters' songs were to have been recorded by the jazz band.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the infinitive verb form: The masterpiece is believed to have been painted over several years.

_____

_____

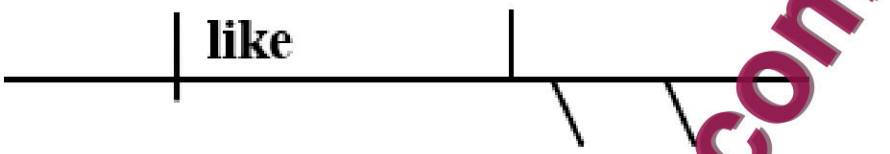
_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

When connected to verbs, infinitives are placed to the right of the subject after the main vertical line. Complete the sentence diagram: "I like to write my own letters."



Mentor Text and Response

"I think it's the duty of the comedian to find out where the line is drawn and to cross it deliberately."

George Carlin (the American comedian)
(1937–2008)

The quotation includes infinitive phrases to define a comedian's duty. Explain the author's point, using an infinitive phrase.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the infinitive verb phrase:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize the names of special events and historical periods. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of a special event or historical period. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
Fact, Belief, or Neither? 1. **The "Pledge of Allegiance" says that our nation is "indivisible, with liberty and justice for all."** 2. **2 + 2 = 4** 3. **The major cause of the Civil War was the issue of slavery.** 4. **I walked into the room at 5:00 p.m.** 5. **She thinks chocolate ice cream is better.** 6. **My mom said, "The moon is made out of cheese."** 7. **If I sit in that chair, it won't break.**	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. The indicative (declarative) mood is used to share facts and beliefs. A *fact* is something that has been said or done. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the indicative mood. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ A *belief* is an acceptance or conclusion that something exists or is true. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: We looked forward to watching the next Games Of the Olympiad this summer.

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: During the Middle ages in Europe, vassals served their lords and the lords served their kings.

_____

_____

_____

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood in these sentences: She will move to Los Angeles on June 13 before she begins the movie. The movie will be a hit, but I think she should move first.

_____

_____

_____

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood: Jenny plays guitar every Friday night from 8:00 p.m. to 10:00 p.m. and makes money from tips.

_____

_____

_____

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood in these sentences: That Mexican food is tasty. Is it really that spicy? The menu warns about the spices and the waiters all remind their customers before they order.

_____

_____

_____

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood in these sentences: The band will be unable to perform, but the musicians will sit in the audience. I wonder why they can't play. The promoters sold 2,115 tickets to the concert.

_____

_____

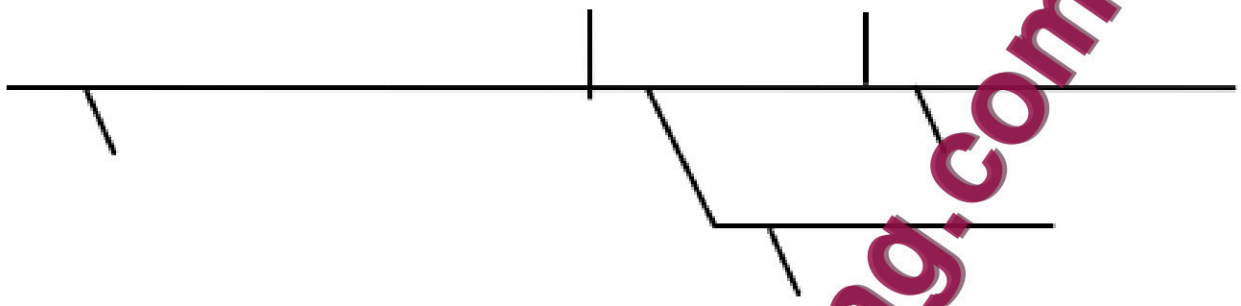
_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Complete the sentence diagram: "Our Chief Executive Officer presented the report to the stockholders."



Mentor Text and Response

"A journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step."

Lao-tzu (the Chinese philosopher)
(604 B.C.–531 B.C.)

The quotation includes infinitive phrases to define a comedian's duty. Explain the author's point, using an infinitive phrase.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the indicative mood:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize the names of organizations and businesses. Don't capitalize articles, conjunctions, and prepositions in the middle of the named organization or business. **Examples**: _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The imperative mood is used to command, request, or prohibit. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. Often, the subject is implied (suggested, but not stated). Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the Imperative mood. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: My mom and I joined We do Care last May and volunteered one afternoon per week for the organization.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: My friends work for Roddy Keel and Sons Plumbing.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood: Knock it off! That wasn't funny at all.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood: I want Robert to be more kind to his parents.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood: Will your family be attending my graduation in June?

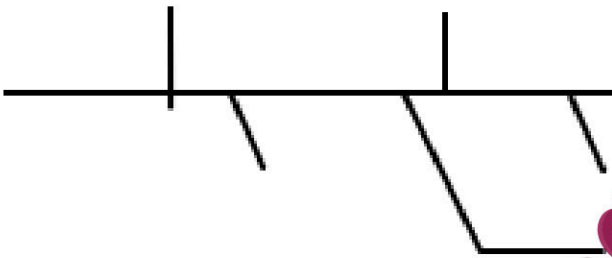
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood: "You may never wear my skirt," her sister ordered.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Imperatives frequently use implied (suggested) subjects, which are placed in the subject position within parentheses. Complete the sentence diagram: "Do not lend any money to her."



Mentor Text and Response

"He who has begun has half done. Dare to be wise; begin!"

Horace (the Roman poet)
(65 B.C.–8 B.C.)

The quotation includes the imperative mood. Respond to the author's point, using the imperative mood in one of your sentences.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the imperative mood.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Capitalize the names of languages, dialects, and people groups. *Dialect* refers to a variety of a language that is different in pronunciation, grammar, and vocabulary than other varieties of that language. **Examples:** _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The interrogative mood is used to ask questions. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. In interrogative sentences, the verb usually is placed before the subject or between the linking or helping verb and its connected verb. Only five pronouns are interrogative pronouns: *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *what*, and *which*. Use *what* to refer to a general thing and *which* to refer to a specific thing. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the interrogative mood. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: His cockney English accent made him difficult to be understood by anyone in San Francisco.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: I heard that afrikaans is a language of south Africa which was derived from the Dutch colonists.

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronouns: Who wrote this letter and to whom was it addressed?

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronoun: Whose is this jacket with the fur collar?

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronoun: Well, what will happen to the puppies if no one adopts them?

6. Re-write the sentence and underline the interrogative pronoun: I'd like to know which one of you will pick me up in the morning?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Place relative (interrogative) pronouns below the objects that they modify in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "Whose notes were you using?"

Mentor Text and Response

"After they had walked together for some time the tattered man mustered sufficient courage to speak. 'Was pretty good fight, wa'nt it?'"

Stephen Crane (author of *The Red Badge of Courage*)
(1871–1900)

The author uses the interrogative mood. Continue the dialogue, using both the indicative (factual) and interrogative moods.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the interrogative mood:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
.	Use question marks for all direct questions. Place a question mark inside (to the left of) ending quotation marks (?") when the writer is quoting a question that was asked. **Example:** _____ Place a question mark outside (to the right of) ending quotation marks ("?) when you, the writer, ask a question about a quotation made in the form of a statement or a command. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The conditional mood is used to discuss something that is possible, but that which can only take place if certain conditions are met. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. Conditional sentences often use the modal helping verbs *could*, *would*, *may*, or *might*. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the conditional mood. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: I asked my friend, "How come you simply never told me that story? Were you afraid of my reaction?

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Why did Mr. Jamison reply, "You're just too young for this"?"

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood: If Dad had only been here, he might have rescued that drowning man.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood: "John, could you possibly wait just one more minute for us to get ready?"

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood: When would you be available if you could help us?

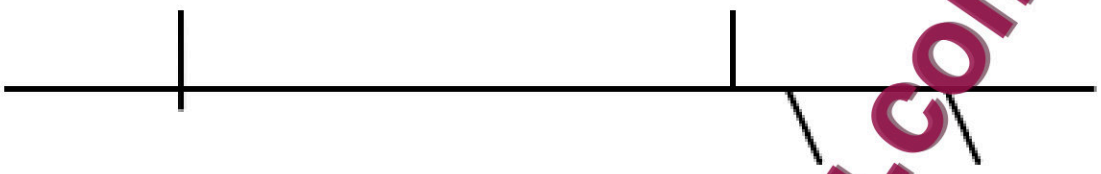
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood: Perhaps Tammy and I may let you share a bit of her fresh boysenberry pie.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Place the entire conditional verb forms to the right of the main vertical line in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "She should have to pay her fair share."



Mentor Text and Response

"You might not have been my first love, but you were the love that made all other loves seem irrelevant."

Rupi Kaur (Indian-born Canadian poet and illustrator) (1992–)

Explain what the author means by "irrelevant," using the conditional mood.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the conditional mood:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use one exclamation point to show surprise or strong emotion in an exclamatory sentence or following an interjection. An interjection is a short sentence fragment used to show extreme emotion and is often used within dialogue. **Examples:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	The mood of a verb refers to how the writer chooses to express the physical action, mental action, or state of being. The subjunctive mood is used to express a doubt, demand, regret, guess, wish, or a hypothetical situation. Other words within the sentence or related sentences need to be consistent with that mood. Often, the subjunctive mood is signaled with these words: *if*, *that*, *as though*, or *unless* and may include these modal helping verbs: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *will*, *would*, *shall*, *should*, and *must*. When the subjunctive mood uses the "to be" verb, use *were or be*, no matter what the tense or subject happens to be. Note the underlined verbs and surrounding words in the examples which are consistent with the subjunctive mood. **Examples. Doubt**– _____ **Demand**– _____ **Regret**– _____ **Guess**– _____ **Wish**– _____ **Hypothetical**– _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write these sentences correctly: How surprising! I had no idea she would be here.

2. Re-write these sentences correctly: I can't believe that you said that to your mother. She must have been scared to death!

3. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood: I really doubt if she were the only one who knew.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood: If I were the only one to accuse you, I might be regretting my decision to speak up.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood: I guess you could say that things would never be the same.

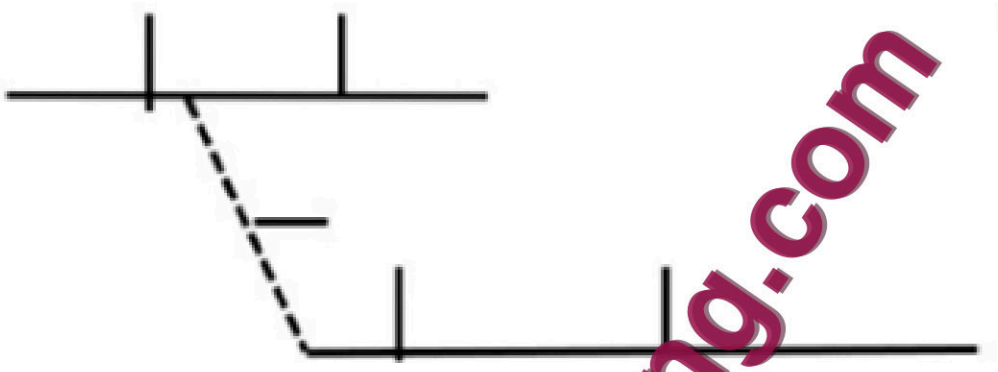
6. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood: I wish we were able to spend more time with her before she had to leave.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Place the subjunctive verb forms to the right of the main vertical line in sentence diagrams. Complete the sentence diagram: "If Jane leaves him, he might be devastated."



Mentor Text and Response

"If I were a rich man. Yubby dibby dibby dibby dibby dibby dibby dum. All day long I'd biddy biddy bum. If I were a wealthy man."

Sheldon Harnick (1924–) and Jerry Bock (1928–2010)
(the composers of the score for *Fiddler on the Roof*)

The song lyric is written in the subjunctive mood. Continue the song lyric with subjunctive mood verbs.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Resources	Mechanics Notes
	Colons serve as ending punctuation, so the following letter is capitalized. Colons are used to show relationships within titles. **Example:** _____ Colons are used to show relationships within numbers. **Example:** _____ Colons are used to show relationships within ratios. **Example:** _____ Colons are used at the end of speaker tags to introduce long quotations. If a quotation consists of more than four lines, begin a new paragraph after the introductory speaker tag that ends in the colon. Indent each line of the quotation to form a *block quotation*.
Resources	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	The voice of a verb refers to the relationship between the subject and the action of the sentence: The active voice is used when the subject performs the action. **Example:** _____ The passive voice is used when the subject receives the action. **Example:** _____ Don't shift from the active to the passive verb voice. **Example:** _____ _____ **Revision:** _____ _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Eric wrote "Facts We Should Know; Ten Surprising Issues."

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Daniel walked the mile in 12:42.40.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The girls outnumbered the boys 4:1, but the mosquitoes outnumbered them all 4,000;1.

4. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the passive voice: I decided to leave because it had all happened to me before.

5. Re-write the sentence and underline the words which show the active voice: Jaime walked into the restaurant and talked to the head waiter.

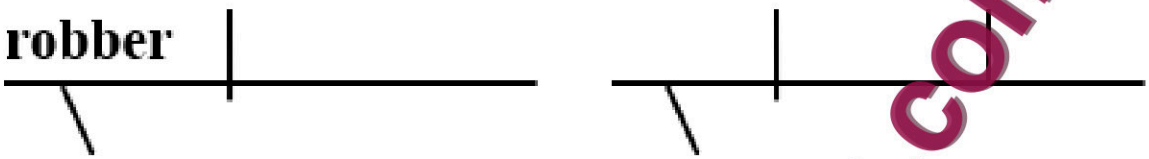
6. Revise this sentence into the active voice: The money was handed to me by my cousin and I spent it all on candy.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Complete these two sentence diagrams: "The robber was caught." "The police caught him."



Mentor Text and Response

"Here is life, an experiment to a great extent untried by me; but it does not avail me that they have tried it."

Henry David Thoreau (the author of *Walden*)
(1817–1862)

The quotation includes both active and passive voice to counsel young people not to listen to the advice of their seniors. Respond to the author's point, using both active and passive voice.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the words which show the subjunctive mood:

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Parentheses can be used in a variety of ways: As an aside. **Example:** _____ As an appositive. **Example:** _____ With numbers to clarify what has been said in the sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ To punctuate letters which list key points within the sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ As a separate sentence to comment on a preceding sentence. Place the period, question mark, or exclamation point inside the closing parenthesis. **Example:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	An adverbial clause is a dependent clause that begins with a subordinating conjunction and modifies an adjective, adverb, or verb. Adverbial clauses can be placed at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ **Subordinating Conjunctions: Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW** before, unless, despite (in spite of), in order that, so, while, if, since, even though (if), because, until, that, how, once, than, after, although (though), as (as if, as long as, as though), whether, when (whenever), where (wherever)
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The comedian closed her show with her best joke—by far—and the audience laughed (heartily).

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Juan the businessman (in the dark suit) asked me about the manufacturing plant (the one in China).

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: She listed four reasons as to why attendance at school is so important: (a) grades (b) money (c) pride and (d) learning.

4. Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunction. [Bracket] the adverbial clause. While no one was looking, she jumped off the ten-foot diving board.

5. Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunction. [Bracket] the adverbial clause. They left for their week-long vacation, even though their was no gas in the tank, and started down the long highway.

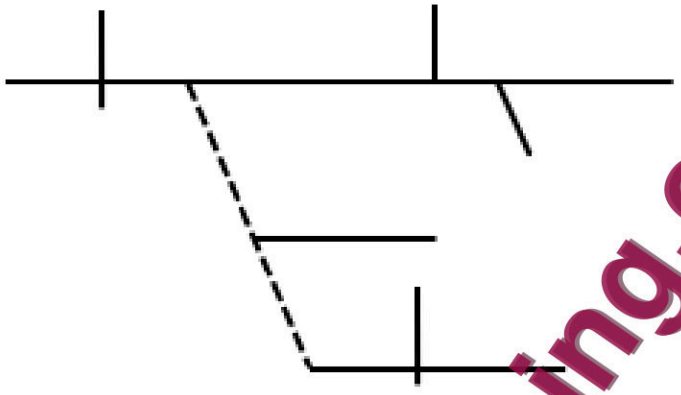
6. Grammar and Usage– Re-write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunction. [Bracket] the adverbial clause. I usually am the one to decide where we will go for dinner.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Adverbial clauses are placed below the main horizontal line and connect to the predicate with a dotted, slanted line. Complete the sentence diagram: "He is finishing the project while we wait."



Mentor Text and Response

"Whenever people agree with me, I always feel I must be wrong."
Oscar Wilde (an Irish writer and poet)
(1854–1900)

The quotation includes a subordinating conjunction to express a condition modifying the main clause. Respond to the author's point, using an adverbial clause.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly, applying the parentheses rules:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and underline the subordinating conjunctions. [Bracket] the adverbial clauses.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Dashes come in three sizes and serve different purposes. These are the three sizes: hyphen (-), en dash (–), and em dash (—). The hyphen (-) is used for a compound word or for a close connection between words. **Examples:** _____ The en dash (–) is used to show a range of values between dates, times, and numbers. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ The em dash (—) is used to show a pause in thought or for appositives instead of parentheses or commas. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	These relative adverbs are used as transition words at the beginning of a sentence or following a semicolon: *however, also, furthermore, otherwise, then, besides, similarly, therefore, consequently, moreover, still, thus, finally, nevertheless, supposedly, on the other hand*. Place commas after relative adverbs, not before. **Examples:** _____ _____ The *when*, *where*, and *why* relative adverbs are used to begin certain adverbial clauses. These relative adverbs replace the formal preposition + *which* grammar construction. **Examples:** _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: From 1:00–3:00 p.m. she loaded the truck and Frances Jones—Diaz ready took off on her September 9-12 trip.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Wait—I heard that 40–50 soldiers were stationed on the French to Spanish border.

3. Re-write the sentence, [bracket] the relative adverbs, and correct the punctuation.
Similarly, the boys were dressed in blue; otherwise, they were quite different.

4. Re-write this sentence, underline the relative adverb, and [bracket] the adverbial clause.
When I threw the baseballs, the fans went wild.

5. Re-write this sentence, underline the relative adverb, and [bracket] the adverbial clause.
I don't know where they went, but they took forever to return.

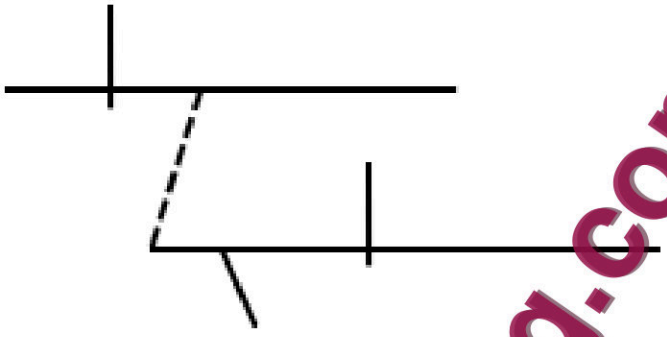
6. Re-write this sentence underline the relative adverb, and [bracket] the adverbial clause. The neighbors never realized why you asked to borrow the lawnmower.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Relative adverbs are placed on slanted dotted lines below the verbs they modify. Complete the sentence diagram: "He understood why his sister had to lie."



Mentor Text and Response

"It will, therefore, be of use to begin by examining the advantages of that Union... This shall accordingly constitute the subject of my next address."

Alexander Hamilton (the first Secretary of the Treasury)
(1757–1804)

The quotation includes relative adverbs to argue for the adoption of the proposed Constitution. Use at least one relative adverb to argue that the Constitution has or has not been a positive force to support democracy.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write this sentence and [bracket] the relative adverbs. Underline the adverbial clauses.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
The British use brackets like Americans use parentheses.	Use brackets to provide missing or explanatory information within direct quotations. **Example:** _____ _____ _____ In scripts and plays, brackets are also used as stage directions both inside and outside of dialogue. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____ _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	As a matter of good writing style, place shorter adverbial phrases in front of longer ones. **Example:** _____ _____ Also, place specific adverbs before general ones. **Example:** _____ _____ When using more than one adverb in a sentence, follow this order of adverbial functions: What Degree-How-Where-When. **Example:** _____ _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Add brackets to this direct quotation: "Why would the Franks leave them their phones in the locker room?" the author asked.

2. Add brackets to this dialogue:

Omri: Excitedly Oh I hope my mom and dad will attend! Edward: If they do [pausing to think] they may not like what they see.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: Halley after dinner walked into her room carefully.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly: Sue spoke with a much more determined voice and loudly.

5. Re-write this sentence correctly: Clark apologized generally to the whole family and specifically to me.

6. Re-write this sentence correctly: Mary pedals strenuously less since her knee surgery up hill on her bike.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Multiple adverbs are placed under the verb they modify in proper adverb order. Revise and Complete the sentence diagram: "The track star runs quickly now less."

Mentor Text and Response

"They talk loudly, especially about 'conspiracies of monopolists'; they beat upon the table with their fists; and they secrete fragments of their inventions about their persons."

Rudyard Kipling (the British poet and author)
(1865–1936)

The quotation includes numerous adverbs in proper adverbial order. Respond to the author's point, using at least two adverbs in proper adverbial order.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences and underline the adverbial phrases:

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Use hyphens for compound adverbs that don't end in "_ly," when used before nouns. A compound adverb is two connected adverbs. **Example:** _____ When the compound adverb is after the noun, don't hyphenate. **Example:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	When writing in Standard English, don't drop verbs or parts of verbs. **Examples:** _____ _____ _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: The least interested student woke up when the teacher began his story.

_____

_____

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Margie was well prepared for her camping trip, but she avoided taking the well worn family tent.

_____

_____

_____

3. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English:Harold sweet, but he been acting that way to all the girls.

_____

_____

4. Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: Why you always do too much? You try too hard to get noticed.

_____

_____

_____

5. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English: My parents been helpful to both my sister and me, but it time we made it on our own.

_____

_____

_____

6. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English:How you do what you do without any plan? How do you do what you do without any plan?

_____

_____

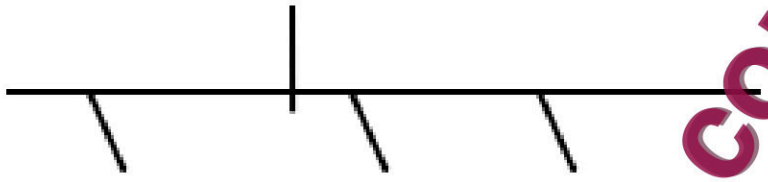
_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence in Standard English and Complete the sentence diagram: "That child running fast today."



Mentor Text and Response

"Now ever since my birth, I've been cursed since I'm born to wild in case I never get to holla at my unborn child."

Tupac Shakur (American rapper)
(1971–1996)

The writer drops parts of verbs in this lyric to emphasize the action. Continue the lyric, dropping parts of the verb forms.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly in Standard English:
When you be there? I told you it need fixin' before you leave.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS 🔎

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	In informal writing, use a slash to separate dates, abbreviate, or to mean *or*. **Examples:** _____ _____

Cues	Grammar and Usage Notes
	Avoid using non-standard use additions. Don't add the *of* or *on* preposition when unnecessary. **Example:** _____ _____ When writing in Standard English, do *not* use double negatives. **Example:** _____ Also, don't use an intensive pronoun without a noun or pronoun reference. **Example:** _____

SUMMARY/REFLECTION

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: We celebrated our best family Christmas ever on 12/25-2017 w/o any presents whatsoever.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: My mom filled out most of my application for me b/cause it was in Spanish though I had to explain what N/A means to her.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: It's time you got off of his back and got your life together yourself.

4. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: On which television show are you appearing on and when?

5. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Believe on me when I tell you... She was never not going to come to your birthday party.

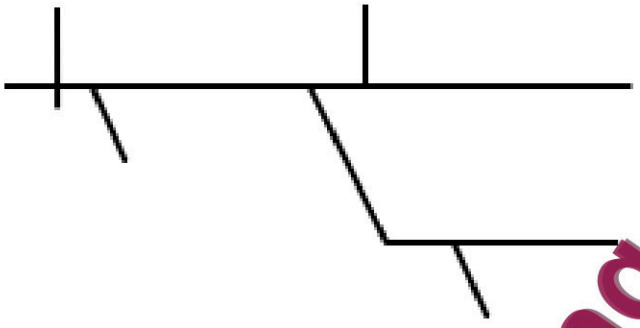
6. Re-write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Why won't he get himself ready to go before you leave yourself?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence in Standard English and Complete the sentence diagram: "I never do nothing for that teacher."



Mentor Text and Response

"We don't gotta trade our shoes, and you ain't gotta walk no thousand miles."

Eminem (the rap and hip hop artist)
(1972–)

The quotation includes the additions of multiple negatives to emphasize the writer's point. Interpret what the writer means, using non-standard English additions.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write this sentence with slashes for dates, for abbreviations, and for *or*.

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: She got off of her chair herself and started a speech. She never push no ideas on me.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

FOCUS

Cues	Mechanics Notes
	Spell out numbers from one to nine, but use Arabic numerals for #s 10 and larger. However, spell out the number if used at the beginning of a sentence. **Examples:** _____ _____ If a sentence has one number from one to nine and others larger, use Arabic numerals for all. **Examples:** _____ _____ If numbers are next to each other, use the Arabic numeral for one and spell out the other. **Example:** _____
Cues	**Grammar and Usage Notes**
	Don't substitute *be* for *am*, *are*, or *is* to create an ongoing action in Standard English. **Example:** _____ _____ **Revision:** _____ _____ Also, use the proper form of the "to be" verb to match its subject. **Example:** _____ **Revision:** _____
SUMMARY/REFLECTION	

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Guided Practice

1. Re-write this sentence correctly: Seven slices of pizza were eaten by each of the twenty-two members of the squad in the record time of 5 minutes.

2. Re-write this sentence correctly: Their ages ranged between 8 to eighteen, but the average age was eleven.

3. Re-write this sentence correctly: The carpenter needs to saw 9 5-foot boards for the bookcase.

4. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Mike and Amelia was able to complete the work all by themselves, but I was always available to help.

5. Write this sentence correctly in Standard English: Sheila been thinking that she be the only one to understand the problem.

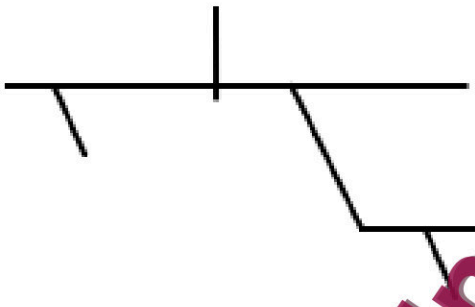
6. Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: His mom be so anxious to retire. She be counting the days.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Sentence Diagram

Revise this sentence in Standard English and Complete the sentence diagram: "This girl be asking for my help."



Mentor Text and Response

"Don't be asking me no dumb questions, man," bassist Mark White told *Vox* interviewer Max Bell. "I wouldn't know anything except that we're exploiting the kids. I'm just a useless, talentless, no-good musician."

Mark White (the bass player of The Spin Doctors)
(1961–)

The quotation includes the present progressive *be* and the present participle *asking* to add stress to this imperative sentence. Respond to the musician's point, using at least one using non-standard English substitution.

_____

_____

_____

Sentence Dictations

Mechanics– Write these sentences correctly:

_____

_____

Grammar and Usage– Write these sentences correctly in Standard English: I be so ready to move. They was always certain they be living in Florida someday.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment
Directions for Preparation, Administration, Correction, and Recording the Data

The purpose of this whole class assessment is to determine which of the previous grade-level Common Core grammar and usage Standards have and have not been mastered.

Preparation

This four-page assessment should be copied back-to-back for each student.

Administration

Inform students that this is a test on grammar and usage. Tell them to read each set of directions as they take the test. Read the first set of directions aloud to get them started. The assessment is given "whole class" and is un-timed. Most students finish in 20–25 minutes.

Correction

Grade the assessment, marking errors.

Recording the Data

Write the names of your students in alphabetical order on the recording matrix. Record the grammar and usage deficits for each student in numerical order on the Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment Mastery Matrix. Mark a / for each error in the student's row on the matrix and assign that Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet for remediation.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment

Directions: Place the letter in the space to the left of the number that identifies the parts of speech in the sentence below.

Although they apologized, either Kim or Tom was always arriving late for their team practices and league games.

___1. The proper nouns in the sentence are _____ and _____.
A. practices, games B. always, late C. Kim, Tom
D. they, their E. Tom, games

___2. The common nouns in the sentence are _____ and _____.
A. team, practices B. practices, games C. Kim, Tom
D. they, their E. Kim, games

___3. The pronouns in the sentence are _____ and _____.
A. they, their B. Kim, Tom C. team, league
D. apologized, arriving E. always, late

___4. The adjectives in the sentence are _____ and _____.
A. apologized, arriving B. either, or C. practices, games
D. always, late E. team, league

___5. The verbs in the sentence are _____ and _____.
A. arriving, practices B. always, late C. apologized, was arriving
D. practices, games E. apologized, practices

___6. The adverbs in the sentence are _____ and _____.
A. Although, always B. always, late C. team, league
D. arriving, practices E. either, late

___7. The preposition in the sentence is _____.
A. for B. and C. or
D. either E. their

___8. The coordinating conjunction in the sentence is _____.
A. late B. or C. either
D. for E. and

___9. The subordinating conjunction in the sentence is _____.
A. either B. for C. Although
D. or E. and

___10. The correlative conjunctions in the sentence _____ and _____.
A. Although, either B. either, for C. or, for
D. either, or E. for, and

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment

Directions: Place the letter in the space to the left of the number that best matches or completes each sentence.

___11. Identify the simple subject in this sentence: She watched the movie three times.
A. She B. watched C. movie
D. three E. times

___12. Identify the compound subjects in this sentence: The train and ship arrived at noon.
A. The train B. ship C. noon
D. at noon E. train and ship

___13. Identify the simple predicate in this sentence: The clown was smiling at the children.
A. was B. clown was C. children
D. smiling E. was smiling

___14. Identify the compound predicates in this sentence: Marie sat down and crossed her legs.
A. sat down B. crossed C. sat, crossed
D. sat, and E. down and crossed

___15. Mr. Nelson looked at the photograph. This is a _____ sentence.
A. simple declarative B. compound interrogative C. simple imperative
D. complex imperative E. compound-complex exclamatory

___16. She failed the test twice, but she passed it the third time. This is a _____ sentence.
A. simple B. complex C. compound
D. run-on E. compound-complex

___17. Carla went to the store after she watched the television show. This is a _____ sentence.
A. simple B. complex C. compound
D. run-on E. compound-complex

___18. Although it may be dated, *Tom Sawyer* is still an enjoyable book, and its humor stands the test of time. This is a _____ sentence.
A. simple B. compound C. complex
D. run-on E. compound-complex

___19. Identify the best way to fix this sentence problem: While we waited in line for our lunch and the principal spoke to us.
A. While we waited in line the principal spoke to us for our lunch.
B. The principal speaking to us while we waited in line for our lunch.
C. While the principal spoke to us and we waited in line for our lunch.
D. The principal spoke to us while we waited in line for our lunch.
E. While we waited for our lunch our principal spoke in line to us.

___20. Identify the best way to fix this sentence problem: That was a great movie, I really enjoyed the popcorn.
A. That was a great movie I really enjoyed the popcorn.
B. A great movie that was, I really enjoyed the popcorn.
C. That was a great movie, and I really enjoyed the popcorn.
D. That was a great movie, because I really enjoyed the popcorn.
E. I really enjoyed the popcorn, that was a great movie.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment

Directions: Place the letter in the space to the left of the number that best matches or completes each sentence.

___21. The students who got into trouble are _____.
A. them B. those C. I and he
D. they E. me and she

___22. The teacher yelled at two students, Rachel and _____.
A. I B. me C. it
D. he E. us

___23. They _____ had never sailed a boat by _____.
A. themself; them B. themselves; themselves C. theirselves; theirself
D. them; theirself E. theirselves; theirselves

___24. He stirred the sauce, and then let John taste _____.
A. them B. this C. it
D. these E. that

___25. That movie _____we watched was entertaining.
A. who B. whose C. it
D. which E. that

___26. _____who wants to try out for the team can do so, but not _____ is chosen.
A. Anyone; everybody B. Everyone; both C. Someone; one
D. Everyone; others E. Others; neither

___27. _____of the candy is on the counter, though _____ is free.
A. Some; fewer B. Plenty; little C. Many; nothing
D. All; none E. A large amount; few

___28. She should _____ for her school pictures.
A. have smiled B. is smiling C. had smiled
D. smiled E. has smiled

___29. Jamie _____ three miles around the track for the fundraiser.
A. walk B. has walk C. is walking
D. walking E. had walking

___30. The cat played with its stuffed mouse, and _____ went outside to chase birds.
A. it B. then it C. then they
D. it then E. then the cat

___31. Compared to her happy sister, she is _____.
A. happier B. most happy C. happiest
D. more happier E. most happiest

___32. Of all the happy people, he was _____.
A. happier B. most happy C. happiest
D. more happier E. most happiest

___33. Compared to last time, this work is definitely _____.
A. most difficult B. more difficulter C. difficultest
D. more difficult E. difficulter

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment

Directions: Place the letter in the space to the left of the number that best matches or completes each sentence.

___34. He is the _____ student in his class.
A. most intelligent B. more intelligent C. intelligentest
D. more intelligent E. intelligenter

___35. Dennis _____ ready and he _____ prepared well.
A. seem; has B. seems; have C. seems; has
D. seems; was E. seem; is

___36. She _____ passed the test, but she didn't study.
A. did have B. could have C. should of
D. did might E. would of

___37. She _____ hard for the test last night.
A. studied B. did studied C. study
D. had studying E. have studied

___38. She _____ hard for the test last night when she fell asleep.
A. studied B. was studied C. was studying
D. studying E. have studied

___39. She _____ for two hours when I called.
A. will have been studying B. will study C. study
D. had studied E. studied

___40. She always _____ hard for tests.
A. study B. will studied C. studies
D. are studied E. will be studied

___41. Today she _____ hard for the test
A. will have been studying B. had studied C. study
D. is studied E. is studying

___42. This whole morning she _____ hard for the test
A. will have studied B. has studied C. had studied
D. is studied E. have studying

___43. We _____ more later this afternoon.
A. will have been studying B. will study C. study
D. are studied E. have studied

___44. She _____ for the test the whole night.
A. will have studying B. will be studying C. have studied
D. are studied E. have studying

___45. By the time the clock strikes three, we _____ for four long hours.
A. have studied B. will study C. study
D. are studied E. will have studied

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment Answers

Directions: If the student misses an item, mark a / in the same number column on the Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment Mastery Matrix.

1. C	16. C	31. A
2. B	17. B	32. C
3. A	18. E	33. D
4. E	19. D	34. A
5. C	20. C	35. C
6. B	21. D	36. B
7. A	22. B	37. A
8. E	23. B	38. C
9. C	24. C	39. D
10. D	25. D	40. C
11. A	26. A	41. E
12. E	27. D	42. B
13. E	28. A	43. E
14. C	29. C	44. B
15. A	30. E	45. E

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Mechanics Assessment
Directions for Preparation, Administration, Correction, and Recording the Data

The purpose of this whole class assessment is to determine which of the previous Common Core grade-level mechanics Standards have and have not been mastered.

Preparation

This two-page assessment should be copied back-to-back for each student.

Administration

Inform students that this is a test on punctuation and capitalization. Tell them to read each set of directions as they take the test–especially the **boldface** directions. Read the first set of directions aloud to get them started. Remind students to print neatly.

The assessment is given "whole class" and is un-timed. Most students finish in 10–15 minutes.

Correction

Grade the assessment according to the directions on the Diagnostic Mechanics Assessment Answers page.

Recording the Data

Write the names of your students in alphabetical order on the matrix. Record the mechanics deficits for each student in numerical order on the Diagnostic Mechanics Assessment Mastery Matrix. Mark a / for each error in the student's row on the matrix and assign that Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet for remediation. Ignore errors unrelated to the targeted assessment items.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Mechanics Assessment

Directions: Rewrite each of the following with correct punctuation and capitalization. Do not add, remove, or switch around any words. Carefully proofread your work when finished.

1. a friend named john said I am glad I dont need any help on my homework

_____

_____

2. that new student paula is from south africa she told me she had never seen the star wars movie in that country **Note: Don't place a comma or a period after "africa."**

_____

_____

_____

3. she saw pictures of the costumes robots and ship models in the newsweek article the one that featured space camp **Note: Don't place a comma or colon after "article."**

_____

_____

_____

4. yes you should listen to that song called the one monsters howl sometime before halloween

_____

_____

5. bring both girls best dresses to atlanta georgia to see the play titled fiddler on the roof

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Mechanics Assessment

Directions: Rewrite each of the following with correct punctuation and capitalization. Do not add, remove, or switch around any words. Carefully proofread your work when finished.

6. joe please read these chapters knots and cooking to prepare for the boy scouts meeting tonight

_____

_____

7. mr wong put on his glasses and then he read the magazine article titled my dog spoke english

_____

_____

8. dear mary

what a complete surprise no one had read the short story titled yankees and rebels about the civil war the whole messy story was sad depressing and true

yours truly

amy

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Mechanics Assessment Answers

Directions: Each problem has the numbered diagnostic items in enlarged **boldface**. If the student misses an item, mark a / in the same number column on the TLS Diagnostic Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Assessment Mastery Matrix.

55 **46** **69 (needs both)** **70**

1. a friend named **J**ohn said**,** **"**I am glad I don**'**t need any help on my homework**"**

47 (needs both) **56 (needs both)** **71** **62**

2. that new student**,** paula**,** is from **S**outh **A**frica**;** she told me she had never seen the star wars movie in that country

48 (needs both) **63**

3. she saw pictures of the costumes**,** robots**,** and ship models in the newsweek article

72 (needs both) **57 (needs both)**

(the one that featured **S**pace **C**amp**)**

49 **64 (needs both)** **73** **58**

4. yes**,** you should listen to that song called **"**the one monster**'**s howl**"** before **H**alloween

74 **50** **65**

5. bring both girls**'** best dresses to atlanta**,** georgia to see the play titled fiddler on the roof

51 **75** **66 (needs both sets)** **59 (needs both)**

6. joe**,** please read these chapters**:** **"**knots**"** and **"**cooking**"** to prepare for the **B**oy **S**couts meeting tonight

76 **52** **67 (needs both)**

7. mr**.** wong put on his glasses**,** and then he read the magazine article titled **"**my dog spoke **60**

English**"**

53 (needs both greeting and closing)

8. dear mary**,** **77** **68 (needs both)**

what a complete surprise**!** no one had read the short story titled **"**yankees and **54 (no commas with whole messy story; needs both commas with sad, depressing,)**

61 (needs both)

rebels**"** about the **C**ivil **W**ar the whole messy story was sad**,** depressing**,** and true

yours truly**,**

amy

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment Mastery Matrix

Categories:	Parts of Speech										Sentence Structure										Pronouns		
Worksheet #s	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
Teacher _____ **Class** _____ **Student Names**	Proper Nouns	Common Nouns	Pronouns	Adjectives	Verbs	Adverbs	Prepositional Phrases	Coordinating Conjunctions	Subordinating Conjunctions	Correlative Conjunctions	Simple and Complete Subjects	Compound Subjects	Simple and Complete Predicates	Compound Predicates	Simple Sentences / Types of Sentences	Compound Sentences	Complex Sentences	Compound-Complex Sentences	Fixing Fragments	Fixing Run-Ons	Subject Case Pronouns	Object Case Pronouns	Intensive and Reflexive Pronouns
Totals																							

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment Mastery Matrix

Categories:	Pronouns				Modifiers							Verb Tenses and Forms									
Worksheet #s	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**	**31**	**32**	**33**	**34**	**35**	**36**	**37**	**38**	**39**	**40**	**41**	**42**	**43**	**44**	**45**
Teacher _____ **Class** _____ **Student Names**	**Pronoun–Antecedents**	**Who, Whose, Whom, That, Which**	**Indefinite People Pronouns**	**Indefinite Size or Amount Pronouns**	**Past Participles**	**Present Participles**	**Dangling / Misplaced Modifiers**	**Short Comparative Modifiers**	**Short Superlative Modifiers**	**Long Comparative Modifiers**	**Long Superlative Modifiers**	**Linking and Helping Verbs**	**Modals**	**Past Tense Verbs**	**Past Progressive Verbs**	**Past Perfect Verbs**	**Present Tense Verbs**	**Present Progressive Verbs**	**Present Perfect Verbs**	**Future Tense Verbs**	**Future Progressive Verbs**	**Future Perfect Verbs**
Totals																						

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment Mastery Matrix

Categories:						Commas								Capitalization		
Worksheet #s	**46**	**47**	**48**	**49**	**50**	**51**	**52**	**53**	**54**	**55**	**56**	**57**	**58**	**59**	**60**	**61**
Teacher _____ **Class** _____ **Student Names**	**Speaker Tags**	**Appositives**	**Series**	**Introductions**	**Geography**	**Nouns of Direct Address**	**Conjunctions**	**Letters**	**Coordinate Adjectives**	**People / Characters**	**Places**	**Things**	**Holidays/Dates**	**Organizations / Businesses**	**Languages / People Groups**	**Events / Historical Periods**
Totals																

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Diagnostic Grammar and Usage Assessment Mastery Matrix

Categories:	Underlining (Italics) / Quotation Marks								Other Punctuation							
Worksheet #s	**62**	**63**	**64**	**65**	**66**	**67**	**68**	**69**	**70**	**71**	**72**	**73**	**74**	**75**	**76**	**77**
Teacher _____ **Class** _____ **Student Names**	**Movie / Television Titles**	**Magazine / Website / Book / Newspaper Titles**	**Play / Work of Art Titles**	**Song / Poem Titles**	**Book Chapter Titles**	**Article Titles**	**Short Story / Document Titles**	**Direct Quotations**	**Apostrophes** (Contractions)	**Semicolons**	**Parentheses / Dashes**	**Apostrophes** (Singular Possessives)	**Apostrophes** (Plural Possessives)	**Colons**	**Periods** (Abbreviations / Initials / Acronyms)	**Exclamation Points**
Totals																

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Teaching Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics ©2014, 2017, 2020 Pennington Publishing

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheets

The Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheets are designed for independent practice of the Language Conventions Standards found in the Common Core Language Strand L.1, L.2, and the Language Progressive Skills Standards. Each worksheet includes concise definitions of the rule, skill, or concept with examples, a writing application, a practice section, and a brief formative assessment. Grammar, usage, and mechanics definitions, rules, and skills complement those found in the Language Conventions lessons.

Preparation

Display one of the Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheets to introduce the instructional components and explain the directions to your students. Students first read the **FOCUS** and **CONNECT TO WRITING** sections and then complete the **PRACTICE** section. Tell them *not* to complete the **WRITE** section (the formative assessment) until they have self-corrected and revised the **PRACTICE** section, so that they can learn from their mistakes before completing the last section. The formative assessment determines whether the student has or has not mastered the grammar, usage, or mechanics content, rule, or skill.

Step by Step Directions

1. When a student has completed all sections of the Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet, except for the ending **WRITE** section (the formative assessment), the student uses the "Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers" to self-correct and revise. Tell students that you do not award a grade for this practice, so there would be no benefit from looking at the answers first. Remind students that they will often learn from their mistakes, especially when they identify and correct them.

2. Next, the student completes the **WRITE** section and shares the worksheet with you or comes up to your desk to mini-conference with you for thirty seconds to review the worksheet.

3. If the student did not master the rule, skill, or concept on the formative assessment, re-teach during the mini-conference.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheets

Parts of Speech	#1	Proper Nouns
	#2	Common Nouns
	#3	Pronouns
	#4	Adjectives
	#5	Verbs
	#6	Adverbs
	#7	Prepositional Phrases
	#8	Coordinating Conjunctions
	#9	Subordinating Conjunctions
	#10	Correlative Conjunctions
Sentence Structure	#11	Simple and Complete Subjects
	#12	Compound Subjects
	#13	Simple and Complete Predicates
	#14	Compound Predicates
	#15	Simple Sentences / Types of Sentences
	#16	Compound Sentences
	#17	Complex Sentences
	#18	Compound-Complex Sentences
	#19	Fragments
	#20	Run-Ons
Pronouns	#21	Subject Case Pronouns
	#22	Object Case Pronouns
	#23	Intensive and Reflexive Pronouns
	#24	Pronoun Antecedents
	#25	Who, Whose, Whom, That, Which
	#26	Indefinite People Pronouns
	#27	Indefinite Size or Amount Pronouns
Modifiers	#28	Past Participles
	#29	Present Participles
	#30	Dangling / Misplaced Modifiers
	#31	Short Comparative Modifiers
	#32	Short Superlative Modifiers
	#33	Long and "__ly" Comparative Modifiers
	#34	Long and "__ly" Superlative Modifiers

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheets

Verb Tenses and Forms	#35	Linking and Helping Verbs
	#36	Modals
	#37	Past Tense Verbs
	#38	Past Progressive Verbs
	#39	Past Perfect Verbs
	#40	Present Tense Verbs
	#41	Present Progressive Verbs
	#42	Present Perfect Verbs
	#43	Future Tense Verbs
	#44	Future Progressive Verbs
	#45	Future Perfect Verbs
Commas	#46	Commas with Speaker Tags
	#47	Commas with Appositives
	#48	Commas within Series
	#49	Commas with Introductions
	#50	Commas with Geography
	#51	Commas with Nouns of Direct Speech
	#52	Commas with Conjunctions
	#53	Commas in Letters
	#54	Commas with Coordinate Adjectives
Capitalization	#55	Capitalization of People / Characters
	#56	Capitalization of Places
	#57	Capitalization of Things
	#58	Capitalization of Holidays and Dates
	#59	Capitalization of Organizations and Businesses
	#60	Capitalization of Language and People Groups
	#61	Capitalization of Events and Historical Periods
Quotation Marks / Underlining (Italics)	#62	Movie and Television Show Titles
	#63	Book / Magazine / Newspaper / Website Titles
	#64	Song / Poem Titles
	#65	Play / Work of Art Titles
	#66	Book Chapter Titles
	#67	Article Titles
	#68	Short Story / Document Titles
	#69	Direct Quotations
Additional Punctuation	#70	Apostrophes (Contractions)
	#71	Semicolons
	#72	Parentheses / Dashes
	#73	Apostrophes (Singular Possessives)
	#74	Apostrophes (Plural Possessives)
	#75	Colons
	#76	Periods with Abbreviations / Initials / Acronyms
	#77	Exclamation Points

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #1

FOCUS Proper Nouns

A **proper noun** is the name of a person, place, or thing. It can be acted upon and is capitalized.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Whenever possible, use specific proper nouns rather than common nouns. A proper noun may be a single word, a group of words (with or without abbreviations), or a hyphenated word. Capitalize all words that make up proper nouns, except articles (*a*, *an*, and *the*), prepositions, such as *of*, *to*, and *from*, and conjunctions, such as *and*, *or*, and *but*.

Examples:	*Josh* was honored	person
	at *U.S. Memorial Auditorium*	place
	with the *Smith-Lee Award*.	thing

PRACTICE

Highlight the proper nouns in the following story.

John Francis left his home in Beatrice, Nebraska in 1941, shortly before the start of World War II. Traveling first by bus to Chicago, he then boarded the *Southwestern Chief* to ride to Los Angeles. At Grand Central Station, John met his sister, Jane, and immediately began looking for part-time work and an apartment. He found employment at Blix Hardware on Western Avenue and a room to rent in nearby South Hollywood.

When war was declared, John enlisted in the army and was stationed at Fort Ord. He played trumpet in the Army Band and was promoted to the rank of Staff Sergeant. The United States was fortunate to have so many young men, like John, serving their country.

After the war in 1945, John enrolled in the University of Southern California, paying his tuition with money from the G.I. Bill. Graduating Cum Laude with degrees in Business and Social Science, he continued to play trumpet in clubs all over Southern California. Upon marrying Janice Jones, he took a job at California Federal Savings and Loan and was promoted to Senior Vice-President. He and his wife raised two children, Mark and Robin.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with person, place, and thing proper nouns.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #2

FOCUS Common Nouns

A **common noun** is an idea, person, place, or thing.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Whenever possible, use specific common nouns rather than general common nouns. A common noun can be a single word, a group of words, or a hyphenated word and is capitalized only at the start of a sentence.

Examples:		
	It takes *self-control*	idea
	for a *teenager*	person
	to drive to *school*	place
	in a *sports car*.	thing

PRACTICE

Sort the following common nouns as an idea, person, place, or thing in the correct columns:

mountain, friendship, teacher, neighborhood, food, self-image, freedom, toy, fire-fighter, cousin, rock, country, lamp stand, football stadium, police officer, self-confidence, grandfather clock, family room, brother-in-law, world peace

IDEA	PERSON	PLACE	THING
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

WRITE

Compose four sentences, using a common noun from each category. Use none of the common nouns listed on this worksheet. Be as specific as possible.

idea _____

person _____

place _____

thing _____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #3

FOCUS Pronouns

A **pronoun** is a word used in place of a proper noun or common noun.
Examples: *Ted* is ready. *He* is never late.
The *game* has already started. Ted will watch *it* at home.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Pronouns are used to avoid repeating the same noun over and over again. Pronouns are used in the *first person*, *second person*, or *third person* points of view. Avoid *first* and *second person* pronouns in essays designed to inform or convince your reader.

The *first person* pronoun stands for the one speaking.
Examples: Singular I, me, my, mine, myself
Plural we, us, our, ours, ourselves

The *second person* pronoun stands for the person to whom one is speaking.
Examples: Singular you, your, yours, yourself
Plural you, your, yours, yourselves

The *third person* pronoun stands for the one spoken about.
Examples: Singular he, she, it, him, her, its, his, hers, himself, herself, itself
Plural they, them, their, theirs, themselves

PRACTICE

Highlight the pronouns in this phone conversation.

"Hello," said Susan.

"Is this the owner of the car for sale?" the caller asks.

"It, is I," replies Susan. "Who is calling?"

"The one paying you full price for your car. My name is Marcy. What's yours?"

"Susan," she says. "But let me get my husband. Actually, he is selling his car, not mine.

"Suit yourself, says Marcy. Put him on the phone."

WRITE

Finish the rest of this phone conversation, using at least two different pronouns.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #4

FOCUS Adjectives

An **adjective** modifies a proper noun, a common noun, or a pronoun and answers Which one? How many? or What kind?

CONNECT TO WRITING

Adjectives usually are placed before nouns and pronouns. Whenever possible, use specific, rather than general adjectives. For example, adjectives such as *interesting*, *nice*, and *exciting* are general adjectives.

Examples:	**Type of Adjective**	**Too General**	**Specific**
	Which One?	*That* park	*That city* park
	How Many?	had *some* playgrounds	had *two* playgrounds
	What Kind?	*swimming* pools	*huge swimming* pools.

PRACTICE

Sort the following *italicized* adjectives into the correct columns:

twenty-story building, *most* sports, *juicier* hamburgers, *these* games, *that* bright color, a *dozen* flowers, the *muddy* Missouri River, *few* announcements, *this* idea, *those* desserts, *navel* orange, *thousands* of islands, *spicy* pizza, *certain* groups, *loud* rap music

Which One?	**How Many?**	**What Kind?**
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

WRITE

Compose three sentences, using an adjective from each category. Use none of the adjectives listed on this worksheet. Be as specific as possible.

Which One? _____

How Many? _____

What Kind? _____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #5

FOCUS Verbs

A **verb** completes three types of actions:

- A verb can mentally act. **Examples**: think, like, wonder, know
- A verb can physically act. **Examples**: run, talk, eat
- A verb can also link a noun or pronoun to another word or words in the sentence. These are knows as *state of being* verbs.
  Examples: is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been, appear, become, feel, grow, keep, look, remain, seem, smell, sound, seem, stay, taste

CONNECT TO WRITING

A verb can be singular or plural and must match the noun or pronoun it acts upon or modifies. Singular nouns often match verbs ending in *s*. Plural nouns often use verbs that don't end in *s*.
Examples: Amanda walks. They walk.

Some verbs add a helping verb in front of the verb. Helping verbs include the "to be" verbs: *is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*; the "to do" verbs: *do, does, did;* the "to have" verbs: *has*, *have*, *had*; and the modals: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, and *would*.
Examples: Tim was thinking. He did not need her help, but she had offered, and he might need assistance later.

PRACTICE

Identify each type of verb action in the parentheses following each verb (mental, physical, state of being). Then underline each of the helping verbs.

I know (_____) that he had run (_____)

a full mile before, but he might be (_____) too tired right now. He

did walk (_____) a mile yesterday.

WRITE

Compose three of your own sentences with the three types of verb actions. Include at least one singular and plural verb plus at least one helping verb.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #6

FOCUS Adverbs

An **adverb** describes a verb, an adjective, or an adverb and answers What degree? How? Where? or When? The adverb may be found before or after the word that it modifies.

Examples: Trey walked *more carefully* — What degree?
late at night — When?
there at the docks. — Where?

CONNECT TO WRITING

As a matter of good writing style, place shorter adverbial phrases in front of longer ones.
Example: The family walks *around the block after every Thanksgiving Dinner*.
Explanation: The shorter adverbial phrase *around the block* is properly placed before the longer *after every Thanksgiving Dinner*.

As a matter of good writing style, place specific adverbs before general ones.
Example: It should be *exactly where* I said, *next to her*, or *somewhere over there*.
Explanation: The more specific adverbs *exactly where* and *next* are properly placed before the more general *somewhere over there*.

PRACTICE

Sort these adverbs into the following categories: often, everywhere, slowly, one o'clock, mostly, carefully, nearby, later, here, less, easily, mainly

What Degree	How	Where	When
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

WRITE

Compose four sentences with adverbs from each category. Use none of the adverbs listed on this worksheet.

What Degree _____

How _____

Where _____

When _____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #7

FOCUS Prepositional Phrases

A **preposition** is a word that shows some relationship to an object (a proper noun, a common noun, or a pronoun). The preposition is always part of a phrase. A phrase is a group of related words without a noun and connected verb. The preposition asks "What?" and the object follows with the answer. A preposition tells *when*, *where*, or *how* something happens.

Examples:

When it happens:	Our teacher reviewed *before* the test.	*before* what?	…the test
Where it happens:	*Under* the bed the cat hid.	*Under* what?	…the bed
How it happens:	We travelled *by* bus.	*by* what?	…bus

CONNECT TO WRITING

We often end spoken sentences with a preposition, but avoid this in your writing.
Example: Spoken sentence–"Who will you go *to*?" Written sentence–"*To whom* will you go?"

Here is a list of commonly-used prepositions. Memorizing this list will help you notice prepositions in your reading and use them in your writing.

aboard, *about*, *above*, *according to*, *across*, *after*, *against*, *along*, *among*, *around*, *as*, *as to*, *at*, *before*, *behind*, *below*, *beneath*, *beside*, *between*, *beyond*, *but*, *by*, *despite*, *down*, *during*, *except*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *inside*, *instead of*, *into*, *in place of*, *in spite of*, *like*, *near*, *next*, *of*, *off*, *on*, *onto*, *outside*, *out of*, *over*, *past*, *regardless of*, *since*, *than*, *through*, *throughout*, *to*, *toward*, *under*, *underneath*, *unlike*, *until*, *up*, *upon*, *with*, *within*, *without*

PRACTICE

Highlight the prepositional phrases in "The Pledge of Allegiance."

"I pledge allegiance to the flag of the United States of America and to the republic for which it stands: one nation under God, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all." These words are spoken in schools throughout America each day. The right hand is placed over the heart and eyes are focused on the flag. Children stand to say the pledge and give respect to our country.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence or two with three different prepositional phrases.

_____

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #8

FOCUS Coordinating Conjunctions

A **conjunction** joins words, phrases, or clauses together.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A **coordinating conjunction** connects words, phrases, or clauses with related meanings. The memory trick FANBOYS (For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So) may help you remember the common two or three-letter coordinating conjunctions.
Example: Two desserts are fine, *but* three are better.

PRACTICE

Read the following short story and fill in the blanks with the correct coordinating conjunctions.

Liz _____ Pam both wanted to see the new scary movie, _____ they were afraid. The friends did not want to go alone, _____ did they want to go with their parents. The girls decided to get more friends to go, _____ they bought a dozen tickets _____ treated ten of their friends to a free movie. Liz planned on buying popcorn, _____ not drinks for her friends. Pam did not have much money, _____ she decided to buy candy for all of her friends.

The movie was scary, _____ it was fun to see it with lots of friends. Both Liz _____ Pam say that their friends will have to pay their own way the next time. They would like to always treat their friends but they can't, _____ it would just be too expensive.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence or two using two or more coordinating conjunctions.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #9

FOCUS Subordinating Conjunctions

A **subordinating conjunction** begins a dependent clause.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A **subordinating conjunction** begins a dependent clause. A dependent clause is a noun and connected verb that does not express a complete thought. It *depends* upon connecting to a complete thought to form a sentence.
Example: Although my friends had already seen it, they saw the show a second time.

This memory trick will help you remember the common subordinating conjunctions:
Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW

Bud: Before, **u**nless, **d**espite (in spite of); **is: i**n order that, since,
wise: while, **i**f, **s**ince, **e**ven though (if); **but: b**ecause, **u**ntil, that; **hot**: **h**ow, **o**nce, **t**han!
AAA: After; **A**lthough (though); **A**s (As if, As long as, As much as, As soon as, As though)
WWW: Whether; **W**hen (Whenever); **W**here (Wherever)

PRACTICE

Read the following short story and fill in the blanks with the correct subordinating conjunctions.

_____ Salma went to bed, she set her alarm to wake up early. The next day was going to be an important one for Salma _____ she was meeting with the principal to receive a special citizenship award. She woke up _____ she heard the alarm and crept downstairs to make her breakfast. _____ she was up early, her dad had already eaten his breakfast and had left for work. _____ her dad knew that Salma would be short on time that morning, he packed a lunch for his daughter and put it on the table _____ she would be sure to see it. _____ her father's help, Salma did leave the house a bit late.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence beginning with a subordinating conjunction.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #10

FOCUS Correlative Conjunctions

C**orrelative conjunctions** join words, phrases, or clauses together.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions used in the same sentence that indicate a certain relationship. Common correlative conjunctions include the following:
both…and either…or whether…or neither…nor
Example: *Either* we work together, *or* we will fail together.

PRACTICE

Read the following short story and fill in the blanks with the correct correlative conjunctions.

Both Taylor _____ I love to play basketball. After school we are _____ playing one-on-one out on the playground _____ talking about our next league game. It's great to be on the same team as my best friend, even though our team has only won one game this season. Our coach always tells us, "It's not _____ you win _____ lose that matters; it's how you play the game." _____ Taylor _____ I are the best players on our team, but we are getting better with each game. _____ Taylor and I plan to practice a lot over the summer. Hopefully, we will be on the same team again next year.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence or two with two pairs of correlative conjunctions.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #11

FOCUS Simple and Complete Subjects

The **simple subject** is the common noun, proper noun, or pronoun that the verb acts upon. The subject is the "do-er" of the sentence.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The simple subject tells whom or what the sentence is about. When additional words help name or describe the simple subject, this is known as a **complete subject**.

Examples: A *nurse* assisted the patient. Simple Subject
The police officer helped prevent the accident. Complete Subject

The simple subject is usually found at the start of a declarative sentence. To find the simple subject of the sentence, look for the main verb and the common noun, proper noun, or pronoun that the verb acts upon. The simple subject is never part of a prepositional phrase.

PRACTICE

Highlight the simple subjects found in the story below.

Vacationing in Mexico, an experienced traveler will visit three famous cities. Tasco, known as the "Silver City" because of its rich silver mines, welcomes thousands of tourists each summer to see its timeless architecture. The cathedral impresses visitors from around the world. A second city, Guadalajara, shows off its rich colonial heritage. Having one of the most beautiful town squares, this city gives any traveler a complete history of Mexico. If given the opportunity, no one should hesitate to visit the capital. Mexico City has many sites of archeological importance, including pyramids of the Aztec Empire. A trip to Mexico connects the traveler with his or her historical roots.

What is the complete subject in the first sentence of the above story?

_____

WRITE

Compose a sentence with a simple subject and then one with a complete subject.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #12

FOCUS Compound Subjects

The **compound subject** has two or more connected common nouns, proper nouns, or pronouns that one verb acts upon. The words "and," "or," or "nor" connect them. The compound subject is the "do-er" of the sentence. It tells whom or what the sentence is about.

Examples: The *girl* and her *mother* walked to the store.
Running quickly down the slope were *Suzanne*, *Becky*, and *Carson*.

When additional words help name or describe the compound subject, this is known as a **complete compound subject**.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The compound subject is usually found at the start of a declarative sentence. To find the compound subject of the sentence, first identify any prepositional. The compound subject is not part of a prepositional phrase.

PRACTICE

Highlight the complete compound subjects in the article below.

In terms of difficulty, running 28 miles is quite an accomplishment, and the marathon always fills the stadium or arena with an eager audience. Track fans and casual spectators enjoy the competition of this oldest Olympic event. Basketball and ice-hockey also get high television ratings. The "Dream Team," composed of the best National Basketball Association players, or the United States hockey team, composed of professional hockey all-stars, always entertains the Olympic audience. These two popular events, as well as the track-and-field contests, highlight the Winter or Summer Olympics for most sports fans.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a compound subject.

_____

_____

_____

In the sentence above, identify the complete compound subject.

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #13

FOCUS Simple and Complete Predicates

The **simple predicate** is the verb that acts upon the subject of the sentence. It does the work of the "do-er" of the sentence. When additional words help describe the simple predicate, this is known as a **complete predicate**. The complete predicate consists of the rest of the sentence other than the subject.

Examples:

Michael *hurt* his hand.	Simple Predicates
She *had become* a young lady.	
They *should have listened* to me.	
An angry man *tried to run me off the road*.	Complete Predicate

CONNECT TO WRITING

To find the simple predicate, first identify the subject and ask "What?" The answer to this question should be the predicate. The simple predicate usually follows the subject in a sentence. However, it can be placed before the subject in a question (*Was it your mother's purse?)*. The subject can also be suggested, but not stated in the sentence (*Look out!)*. Often, the suggested subject is *you*.

PRACTICE

Highlight the simple subjects and [bracket] the simple predicates found in the story below.

Ice cream always has pleased young and old alike as a favorite summertime dessert. One ice cream that pleases many is Neapolitan. This treat has chocolate, strawberry, and vanilla all in one. Rocky Road delights children of all ages with small bits of marshmallows and nuts in a rich chocolate ice cream. For some, the nuts or marshmallows may cause an allergic reaction. A creamy double scoop on a sugar or waffle cone tastes great. Eating too much ice cream can be an addictive behavior.

WRITE

Compose a sentence with a simple predicate and then one with a complete predicate. Underline the subjects and bracket the simple and complete predicates.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #14

FOCUS Compound Predicates

The **compound predicate** has two or more connected verbs that act upon the same subject of the sentence. These verbs do the work of the "do-er" of the sentence.
Examples: Michael *fell* and *hurt* his hand. She *had become* and still *remained* a young lady.

CONNECT TO WRITING

To find the compound predicate, first identify the subject and ask "What?" The answer to this question should be the predicate. A connecting word such as "and," "or," or "but" is usually placed between the verbs. When additional words help describe the compound predicate, this is known as a **complete compound predicate**.

Use compound predicates to make your writing more concise (brief), clear, and readable.
Examples: Instead of the following: Rob studied the textbook for the test. Then, he practiced the vocabulary for the test. After practicing the vocabulary, he memorized the poem–all to prepare for the test. Try a compound predicate such as in this sentence: Rob studied the textbook, practiced the vocabulary, and memorized the poem to prepare for the test.

PRACTICE

Use two colors to highlight the simple subjects and the compound predicates in the story below.

Of all the books by Mark Twain, two works stand out and are remembered as his best. Twain's description of life as a riverboat captain in *Life on the Mississippi* both entertains and informs. After reading this book, one will learn and will understand what the phrase "Mark Twain" means. A second novel, *Huckleberry Finn*, teaches and preaches about how badly people can treat each other. Huck Finn struggles with and triumphs over the evils of slavery.

Re-write the following sentences into one sentence with a compound predicate:
Debbie walked into the room. Next, she sat down in the chair. And, she heaved a sigh of relief.

_____

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a compound predicate.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #15

FOCUS Simple Sentences / Types of Sentences

A **simple sentence** has one independent clause, but no dependent clause. An independent clause has a noun connected to a verb that expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause has a noun connected to a verb that does not express a complete thought.
Examples: Jim left class (independent clause) before he finished the project (dependent clause).

CONNECT TO WRITING

Complete sentences can be identified by their purposes.
A **declarative** sentence makes a statement and has a period as ending punctuation.
Example: Joanna went shopping at the mall.
An **interrogative** sentence asks a question and has a question mark as ending punctuation.
Example: Would you mind cooking your own dinner tonight?
An **imperative** sentence gives a command or makes a request and has a period as ending punctuation. Frequently, the *you* is implied (suggested, but not stated).
Examples: Don't tell me what to do (command). Mother, sing a song for us (request).
An **exclamatory** sentence expresses surprise or strong emotions and has an exclamation point as ending punctuation.
Example: I can't believe you said that!

Remember: A complete sentence–
1. Tells a complete thought.
2. Has both a subject and a predicate.
3. Has the voice drop down at the end of a statement and the voice go up at the end of a question.

PRACTICE

Identify the following simple sentences as declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory in the space provided. The ending punctuation has been omitted.

1. Look at me when I talk to you _____

2. That answer really shocked me _____

3. Why should I have to wait _____

4. Tom asked me a question _____

WRITE

Compose an interrogative sentence. Then answer with a simple declarative sentence.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #16

FOCUS Compound Sentences

A **compound sentence** has two or more independent clauses but no dependent clauses. An independent clause has a noun connected to a verb that tells a complete thought. A dependent clause has a noun connected to a verb that does not tell a complete thought.
Example: Ken asked his teacher for his homework, but he didn't follow her advice.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The independent clauses are joined by a semicolon or a comma followed by a coordinating conjunction (FANBOYS: *for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so*).

Compound sentences must have a clear relationship between the independent clauses. Having a variety of sentence lengths is a mark of good writing. Avoid placing two compound sentences next to each other in the same paragraph.

PRACTICE

Use the coordinating conjunctions (FANBOYS) to join the following independent clauses in the spaces provided. The ending punctuation has been omitted.

1. I enjoy watching old television shows the new ones are better

_____

2. Do you want vanilla do you want strawberry

_____

Use a semicolon to join the following independent clauses in the spaces provided below each pair. The ending punctuation has been omitted.

3. No one really wants to go they just feel like they must attend

_____

4. This route takes too long there must be another way

_____

WRITE

Write your own compound sentence.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #17

FOCUS Complex Sentences

A **complex sentence** has an independent clause and at least one dependent clause. An independent clause has a noun connected to a verb that expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause has a noun connected to a verb that does not express a complete thought.
Example: Ty finished his work (independent clause) + before he ate lunch (dependent clause) = Ty finished his work before he ate lunch. (complex sentence)

CONNECT TO WRITING

Complex sentences can help explain the relationship between complicated ideas. If starting a sentence with one of these dependent clauses, follow the clause with a comma:

Adjectival Clauses modify nouns or pronouns. These pronouns begin many adjectival clauses: *who, whose, on (for, of) whom* to refer to people; *that* refers to people or things; and *which* refers only to things.
Example: John, <u>whose work is well-known</u>, won the prize.

Adverbial Clauses modify a verb or another adverb. Subordinating conjunctions begin adverbial clauses. This memory trick will help you remember the common subordinating conjunctions:
Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW

Bud: Before, **u**nless, **d**espite (in spite of); **is: i**n order that, **s**ince;
wise: while, **i**f, **s**ince, **e**ven though (if); **but:** because, **u**ntil, **t**hat; **hot**: **h**ow, **o**nce, **t**han!
AAA: After; **A**lthough (though); **A**s (As if, As long as, As much as, As soon as, As though)
WWW: Whether; **W**hen (Whenever); **W**here (Wherever)
Example: <u>As long as she can wait</u>, they will wait.

PRACTICE

Re-write the following simple sentences into complex sentences in the spaces below.

1. he will be able to go outside to play the boy practices his trombone as soon as

_____

2. whose tonight we celebrate a special young lady, achievement is special

_____

WRITE

Write your own complex sentence.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #18

FOCUS Compound-Complex Sentences

A **compound-complex sentence** has two or more independent clauses and at least one dependent (subordinate) clause. An independent clause has a noun connected to a verb that expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause has a noun connected to a verb that does not express a complete thought.
Example: Before he ate his lunch (dependent clause) +
Ty completed all his chores (independent clause) +
and he read the newspaper (independent clause) =
Before he ate his lunch, Ty completed all his chores and he read the newspaper.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Dependent clauses can be placed at the start, in the middle, or at the end of sentences.

PRACTICE

Rearrange the following independent clauses and dependent clauses into compound-complex sentences in the spaces below. You may need to switch around the order, add, or delete words.

and then John told a campfire story the campers roasted marshmallows after the sun set

_____

_____

he knew the sailor but the sailor did not recognize him since the captain had a beard

_____

_____

although he knew better she just would not listen because he could not teach her

_____

_____

WRITE

Compose your own compound-complex sentence.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #19

FOCUS Fixing Fragments

A **sentence fragment** is only part of a complete sentence. It does not tell a complete thought. The fragment may be a dependent clause (a noun and a connected verb that does not tell a complete thought) or a phrase (a group of related words without a noun and connected verb).

CONNECT TO WRITING

To change sentence fragments into complete sentences, try the following:

- Connect the fragment to the sentence before or after the fragment.
  Example: On the icy roads. The cars skidded. Fragment
  On the icy roads the cars skidded. Complete
- Change the fragment into a complete thought.
  Example: Eaten by the monkey the banana. Fragment
  The banana was eaten by the monkey. Complete
- Remove subordinating conjunctions.
  Example: Although she found out where the boys were. Fragment
  She found out where the boys were. Complete

Remember: A complete sentence–
1. Tells a complete thought.
2. Has both a subject and a predicate.
3. Has the voice drop down at the end of a statement and the voice go up at the end of a question.

PRACTICE

Revise the following sentence fragments into complete sentences in the spaces provided.

Running down the hill to my friend, I saw her.

_____

Finally, the reason he left.

_____

Because the playground seems wet with ice.

_____

WRITE

Add to this dependent clause to form a complete sentence: Whenever I need help in math

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #20

FOCUS Fixing Run-Ons

A **sentence run-on** has two independent clauses connected together as if they were one sentence. An independent clause has a noun connected to a verb that tells a complete thought.

CONNECT TO WRITING

To change sentence run-ons into complete sentences, try the following:

- Separate the run-on into two or more sentences.
  Example: Luis told his brother he told his sister, too. — Run-On
  Luis told his brother. He told his sister, too. — Complete
- Add a semicolon between the clauses.
  Example: Mary let him have it, she knew what she was doing. — Run-On
  Mary let him have it; she knew what she was doing. — Complete
- Add a comma and then a conjunction after the first sentence.
  Example: I like her, she doesn't like me. — Run-On
  I like her, <u>but</u> she doesn't like me. — Complete
- Add a subordinating conjunction to one of the clauses.
  Example: Max was injured, he was still the best. — Run-On
  <u>Even though</u> Max was injured, he was still the best. — Complete
- Change the second clause to a phrase starting with an "__ing" word.
  Example: They went to school, they looked for him. — Run-On
  They went to school, <u>looking</u> for him. — Complete

PRACTICE

Revise the following sentence run-ons into complete sentences.

Separate the run-on into two or more sentences:
Jonathan seemed very selfish he never shared with the other children.

_____

Use a comma and then a coordinating conjunction after the first sentence or a semicolon:
Ms. Clements always prepared well for her lesson plans the results paid off.

_____

Change the second clause to a phrase starting with an "__ing" word:
Nicco enjoyed video games, he played only after completing his chores.

_____

WRITE

Revise the first **PRACTICE** sentence, using the subordinating conjunction *because*.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #21

FOCUS Subject Case Pronouns

Pronouns are in the **subject case** when they are used as the sentence subject or when they identify or refer to the subject. These are the subject case pronouns:
Singular–*I, you, he, she, it* Plural–*we, you, they*

CONNECT TO WRITING

Pronouns take the subject case in three grammatical forms:

- If the pronoun is the sentence subject. The sentence subject is the "do-er" of the sentence.
  Example: *She* and *I* attended the concert.
- If the pronoun is a predicate nominative. A predicate nominative follows a "to be" verb (*is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been)* and identifies or refers to the subject.
  Example: The students who got into trouble are *they*.
- If the pronoun is part of an appositive, such as after *than* or *as*. An appositive is a noun or pronoun placed next to another noun or pronoun to identify or explain it.
  Example: Marty is smarter than *I*.

To test whether the pronoun is in the subject case, try these tricks:

- Rephrase to check if the pronoun sounds right.
  Example: The last one to arrive was *he*. Rephrase–*He* was the last one to arrive.
- Drop other nouns or pronouns in a compound subject or object to check if the remaining pronoun sounds right. Remember that English is a polite language; the first person pronouns *(I, me, ours, mine)* are placed last in compound subjects or objects.
  Example: John and *I* play video games. Drop and check–*I* play video games.

PRACTICE

Fill in the blanks to identify the subject case pronouns: S for a sentence subject, PN for a predicate nominative, or an A for an appositive.

The women in the clown costumes must be she ___ and her mother. We ___ didn't recognize

them at first, but I ___ asked, "Who were they ___ ?" Sue and he ___ arrived at the party

earlier than I ____, but no one came as early as she ____.

WRITE

Compose your own sentences, using a pronoun as a sentence subject, a pronoun as a predicate nominative, and a pronoun as an appositive.

_____

_____

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #22

FOCUS Object Case Pronouns

Pronouns are in the **object case** when they are used as direct objects, indirect objects of verbs, and as objects of prepositions. These are the object case pronouns:
Singular–*me, you, him, her, it* Plural–*us, you, them*

CONNECT TO WRITING

Pronouns take the object case in three grammatical forms:

- If the pronoun is the direct object. The direct object receives the action of the verb.
  Example: The challenge excited *him*.
- If the pronoun is an indirect object of a verb. The indirect object is placed between a verb and its direct object. It tells to what, to whom, for what, or for whom.
  Example: Robert gave *him* a king-size candy bar.
- If the pronoun is an object of a preposition. A preposition shows some relationship or position between a proper noun, a common noun, or a pronoun and its object. The preposition asks "What?" and the object provides the answer.
  Example: The fly buzzed around *her* and past *them* by *me*.
- If the pronoun connects to an infinitive. An infinitive has a *to* + the base form of a verb.
  Example: I want *him* to give the speech.

To test whether the pronoun is in the object case, try these tricks:

- Rephrase to check if the pronoun sounds right.
  Example: Joe smiled at all of *them*. Rephrase–At all of *them* Joe smiled.
- Drop other nouns or pronouns when there is a compound subject and check if the remaining pronoun sounds right. Remember that English is a polite language; the first person pronouns *(I, me, ours, mine)* are placed last in compound subjects or objects.
  Example: She gave Kathy and *me* a gift. Drop and check–She gave *me* a gift.

PRACTICE

Identify which grammatical form the objective case pronouns take in the following sentences. Fill in the blanks with a DO for a direct object, an IO for an indirect object, an OP for an object of the preposition, or an I for a pronoun connected to an infinitive.

He told them ____ after him ____. He wanted him ____ to tell us ____, but when he came to see me ____, I said he should tell him ____ the news before me ____. He gave it ____ some thought.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with two types of object case pronouns.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #23

FOCUS Intensive and Reflexive Pronouns

Pronouns ending in "self" or "selves" are called **intensive** or **reflexive pronouns**. These are the intensive and reflexive pronouns: *myself*, o*urselves*, *yourself*, *yourselves*, *himself (not hisself)*, *herself*, *itself*, and *themselves*.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Intensive pronouns end in "self" (singular) or "selves" (plural) and are used to emphasize other nouns or pronouns in the sentence. Removing the intensive pronoun does not change the meaning of the sentence. Intensive pronouns generally follow nouns or pronouns in the sentence and are not separated by commas.
Examples: I myself thought that they themselves would have been more honest.

Reflexive pronouns also end in "self" or "selves," but are necessary to the meaning of the sentence and usually follow verbs or prepositions.
Examples: Lynn gave herself a compliment and took an extra piece of pie for herself.

PRACTICE

Write IP to identify intensive pronouns and RP to identify reflexive pronouns in the spaces provided.

I told them myself ____ because Patty would not tell them herself ____. Patty never thought of anyone but herself ____. When Patty first asked me herself ____, I said, "You should tell them what you did before they find out themselves ____." Patty never apologized herself ____ for what she did.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence or two with an intensive pronoun and a reflexive pronoun.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #24

FOCUS Pronoun–Antecedents

A pronoun usually refers to an antecedent. An antecedent is a common noun, proper noun, or pronoun that comes before it. The antecedent can be a word, phrase, or a clause. The pronoun which refers to the antecedent must clearly match to avoid **pronoun–antecedent** confusion.

CONNECT TO WRITING

- Make sure a singular pronoun matches a singular antecedent and a plural pronoun matches a plural antecedent.
  Example: When Bob asked for help, they did help.
  Problem–Who is *they*? Fix–When Bob asked his teachers for help, they did help.
- Make sure that the pronoun does *not* refer to the object in a prepositional phrase.
  Example: In Twain's *The Celebrated Frog of Calaveras County*, he uses political humor.
  Problem–Who, or what, is *he*? Fix– In Twain's *The Celebrated Frog of Calaveras County*, the author uses political humor.
- Make sure that the singular pronouns *this* and *that* and the plural pronouns *these* and *those* clearly refer to specific nouns or pronouns.
  Example: He made an egg, put the dog food in a bowl, and put this on his toast to eat.
  Problem–What is *this*? Fix–He made an egg and put it on his toast to eat. Then he put the dog food in its bowl.

PRACTICE

Write the capital letter in the space provided that best describes these pronoun–antecedent errors: PN for a pronoun–antecedent number problem; OP for a pronoun using the object of the preposition as its antecedent; and T for an unclear *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those* antecedent.

____1. She ate a cookie and took an apple, and I want it back.

____2. Around Yolanda and her, she always acts strangely.

____3. There are lots of ribbons and bows. Do we need all of those?

____4. If they leave sooner than Don, he should phone his parents.

____5. The girls liked on hats and new shoes and asked the boys if they liked these.

WRITE

Re-write one of the sentences in the PRACTICE section with clear pronoun antecedents.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #25

FOCUS Who, Whose, Whom, That, Which

When to use **who**, **whose**, **whom**, **what**, and **which** can be tricky in a sentence.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Is it *who*, *whose*, or *whom*?
The pronoun *who* is a subject case pronoun. The pronoun *who* refers to a "do-er" in the sentence.
Example: *Who* is the best teacher?
Trick–Try substituting *he* for *who* and rephrase, if necessary. If it sounds right, use *who*.
The pronoun *whose* is a possessive case pronoun. The pronoun *whose* shows ownership and refers to a noun or pronoun before it.
Example: The teacher, whose classroom is at the back of the school, always locks her door.
The pronoun *whom* is an object case pronoun. It receives the action of a "do-er" in the sentence.
Examples: *Whom* did Joan love?
I like *whom* you gave the award. To *whom* does this letter concern?
Trick–Try substituting *him* for *whom* and rephrase, if necessary. If it sounds right, use *whom*.

Is it *that* or *which*?
The pronoun *that* can refer to people or things; the pronoun *which* can only refer to things.
Use the pronoun *that* when the clause is needed to understand the rest of the sentence.
Example: The movie *that* we watched was entertaining.
Use the pronoun *which* in clauses that provide additional, but not necessary information.
Example: That dog, which is friendly, was easy to train.

PRACTICE

Fill in the blanks with the following pronouns: *who, whose*, *whom, that,* or *which*

1. Joni Eareckson Tata, _____ is both an artist and singer, can't use her hands nor legs.

2. Bobby and James, _____ family lives next door to me, are twins.

3. Josh showed her some pants _____ she purchased at the store.

4. "Blowin' in the Wind," _____ is a protest song, has been recorded frequently.

5. _____ did his sister meet at the party?

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a *who* or *whom*, a *whose*, and a *that* or a *which.*

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #26

FOCUS Indefinite People Pronouns

An **indefinite people pronoun** does not refer to a specific noun.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Remember that a pronoun takes the place of a noun. Pronouns must match their verbs. Singular pronouns often use verbs ending in *s*. Plural pronouns often use verbs that don't end in *s*. An indefinite people pronoun does not identify a specific person.

- Some indefinite people pronouns take singular verbs.
  Examples: *anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, nobody, no one, one, someone,* and *somebody*.
- Other indefinite people pronouns take plural verbs.
  Examples: *both* and *others*
- Some indefinite people pronouns may be singular or plural depending upon the surrounding word clues.
  Examples: *either* and *neither*

PRACTICE

Write the correct verb forms to match the indefinite people pronouns in the spaces provided.

1. Each watch her own television show. _____

2. Everyone except James and Pete help me on the work project. _____

3. Both of them is ready for a vacation. _____

4. After they go to the movies, several goes out for dessert. _____

5. Neither give us much hope that our team will win the league this year. _____

6. I know others wants to be involved in this decision. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with indefinite singular and indefinite plural people pronouns.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #27

FOCUS Indefinite Size or Amount Pronouns

An **indefinite amount or measurement pronoun** does not refer to a specific noun.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Remember that a pronoun takes the place of a noun. Pronouns must match their verbs. Singular pronouns often use verbs ending in *s*. Plural pronouns often use verbs that don't end in *s*. An indefinite amount or measurement pronoun does not identify a specific place or thing.

- Some indefinite amount or measurement pronouns take singular verbs.
  Examples: *a great deal*, *a large amount*, *a lot*, *nothing*, *little*, *less*, *much*, *enough*, *every*, and *each*
- Other indefinite amount or measurement pronouns take plural verbs.
  Examples: *a large number*, *few*, *fewer*, *many*, *several*, *lots*, and *plenty*
- Some indefinite amount or measurement pronouns may be singular or plural depending upon the surrounding word clues.
  Examples: *all*, *any*, *half*, *more*, *most*, *none*, *other*, and *some*

PRACTICE

Write the correct verb forms to match the indefinite size or amount pronouns in the spaces provided.

1. Few of the actors remembers their lines. _____

2. A great deal are known about television actors. _____

3. Fewer vegetables is better than many. _____

4. Some of candies tastes like they are stale. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with indefinite singular and indefinite plural size or amount pronouns.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #28

FOCUS Past Participles

A **past participle** is a modifier that defines, describes, or limits another word or words.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A past participle uses a helping verb (be– *is, am, are, was, were*), or (have– *has, have, had*) + a "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "__en" added onto the base form of a verb to describe an action that happened in the past before another action. To avoid confusion, don't put too many words between a past participle and the word or words it modifies. The helping verb shows past, present, or future actions.
Examples: I *was defeated* by a stronger opponent. I *have defeated* my opponent.

When used as an adjective, the past participle describes a condition in the past.
Example: *Depressed*, the child needed someone to listen to him.

Many of the common past participle forms are irregular and don't use the "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "__en" ending.
Example: The cat *had caught* a mouse (not *catched* or *caughten*).

PRACTICE

Highlight the helping verbs and past participles in the sentences below.

1. He has carefully listed his reasons for his purchase.

2. Paid a large amount for her services, the woman was happy to help.

3. Built by Native Americans, the caves were interesting.

4. They have never tried to sell any of their artwork.

WRITE

Write a sentence with a past participle acting as a verb and another sentence with a past participle acting as an adjective.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #29

FOCUS Present Participles

A **present participle** is a modifier that defines, describes, or limits another word or words.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A present participle adds an "__ing" onto the base form of a verb. To avoid confusion, don't put too many words between a present participle and the word or words it modifies.

When used as a verb, the present participle shows a continuous action and begins with a linking verb. Linking verbs include the "to be" verbs: *is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been*. The linking verb shows past, present, or future actions.

Examples: She *was* watching the show.
She *is* watching the show.
She *will be* watching the show.

When used as an adjective, the present participle shows a continuous condition, but does not usually begin with a linking verb.

Example: Walking, the boy caught up with his friend.

PRACTICE

Highlight the linking verbs and present participles in the sentences below.

1. Waiting for the train, the young man paced impatiently.

2. He was expecting the train to arrive on time.

3. After calling his parents, the boy decided to cancel the ticket and come home.

4. He will be mostly, but not always, travelling by jet from now on.

WRITE

Compose a sentence with a present participle serving as a verb and another sentence with a present participle serving as an adjective.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #30

FOCUS **Dangling / Misplaced Modifiers**

A **dangling modifier** or a **misplaced modifier** does not clearly modify what the writer intends to modify.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A dangling modifier is an adjective or adverb that does not have a clear connection to the word, phrase, or clause to which it refers. A dangling modifier usually takes the form of a present participle ("__ing"), a past participle ("__d," "__t," "__ed," "__ en"), or an infinitive (*to* + the base form of a verb). To eliminate the dangling modifier, place the "do-er" of the sentence as the subject of the independent clause or combine the phrase and independent clause.
Example: Removed from her desk, Paula put the backpack on the floor. (Her backpack was removed from the desk; not *Paula*.)

A misplaced modifier does not modify what the writer intends because of where it is placed in the sentence. To eliminate misplaced modifiers, place them close to the words that they modify.
Examples: I only ate the fresh vegetables. In this sentence only is the modifier. (The writer does not mean that the *only* thing she does with fresh vegetables is to eat them.)

PRACTICE

Re-write the two example sentences above by revising the dangling or misplaced modifiers.

_____

_____

_____

_____

WRITE

Re-write these sentences by revising the dangling or misplaced modifiers.

After reading the comic book, the movie was not nearly as exciting as I had hoped.

_____

_____

Debra almost spent $100 for that new pair of shoes. In fact, she spent exactly $99.99.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #31

FOCUS Short Comparative Modifiers

A **short comparative modifier** uses "__er" for a one-syllable modifier to compare two things.
Example: big–bigg*er*

CONNECT TO WRITING

A modifier describes the meaning of another word or words and makes it more specific or limits its meaning or meanings.
Example: I ate the *big* piece. The word *big* is a modifier, making *piece* more specific.

Some two-syllable comparative modifiers use "__er" and some use *more (less)*. If adding "__er" sounds strange, use *more (less)* instead.

These comparative modifiers are irregular.

Single Modifier	**Comparative**
good/well	better
bad/badly	worse (not *worser*)
much/many	more

PRACTICE

Write the correct comparative modifiers in the spaces provided.

1. Earth is close to the sun than is Mars. _____

2. Sammy works more hard than any club member. _____

3. He dresses in his uniform most often than the members of his troop. _____

4. Of my brother and my sister, my brother acts worser. _____

5. She is sadder than I, but she is happiest than my brother. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with a one-syllable "__er" comparative modifier and a second sentence with a two-syllable *more* comparative modifier. Don't use any modifiers from this worksheet.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #32

FOCUS Short Superlative Modifiers

A **short superlative modifier** uses "__est" for a one-syllable modifier to compare three or more things.
Example: big–bigg*est*

CONNECT TO WRITING

A modifier describes the meaning of another word or words and makes it more specific or limits its meaning or meanings.
Example: I ate the *big* piece. The word *big* is a modifier, making *piece* more specific.
Use "__est" for a one-syllable modifier to compare three or more things.

Some two-syllable superlative modifiers use "__est" and some use *most (least)*. If adding "__est" sounds strange, use *most (least)* instead.
Examples: easy–easi*est* or gracious–*most* or *least* gracious

Avoid the common mistake of using superlative adjectives to compare only two things.
Example: Problem–Of the two basketball players, James is the *most* improved.
Solution–Of the two basketball players, James is the *more* improved

These superlative modifiers are irregular.

Single Modifier	Comparative	Superlative
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst (not *worstest*)
much/many	more	most

PRACTICE

Write the correct superlative modifiers in the spaces provided.

1. The quicker sprinter of the three was Carl Lewis. _____

2. Comparing the red and green apples, the red ones are the most desired. _____

3. He chose the bigger piece of the whole cherry pie. _____

4. Among Reba, Jim, and Antoinette, Reba is the better student. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with an "__est" modifier. Use no modifiers found on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #33

FOCUS Long and "__ly" Comparative Modifiers

Both **long** and **"__ly" comparative modifiers** use *more (less)* for a three-syllable or longer modifier to compare two things.
Example: delicious–*more* or *less* delicious

CONNECT TO WRITING

A modifier describes the meaning of another word or words and makes it more specific or limits its meaning or meanings.
Example: I ate the *delicious* cake. The word *delicious* is a modifier, making *cake* more specific.

Some long comparative modifiers are adjectives. Adjectives modify a proper noun, a common noun, or a pronoun and answer Which one? How many? or What kind?
Example: intelligent–The *intelligent* man was *more intelligent* than his father.

Some long comparative modifiers are adverbs. Adverbs modify a verb or another adverb and answer What degree? How? Where? or When? Use *more* or *less* for adverbs ending in "__ly."
Example: angrily–She argued *angrily*–even *more angrily* than her mother.

PRACTICE

Write the correct comparative modifiers in the spaces provided.

1. Geometry seems difficulter than algebra. _____

2. Tina did an outstandinger job than she had predicted. _____

3. Saying which one was the most incredible of the two was hard. _____

4. That behavior is most ridiculous than ever. _____

5. Of the two girls not here, the first one is least suspiciously absent. _____

6. The detective most suspected the man, rather than the woman. _____

7. She acted least nervously than the other athlete. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with a three-syllable *more* modifier. Don't use any modifiers found on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #34

FOCUS Long and "__ly" Superlative Modifiers

Both **long** and **"__ly" superlative modifiers** use *most (least)* for a three-syllable or longer modifier to compare three or more things.
Example: wonderful–*most* or *least* wonderful

CONNECT TO WRITING

A modifier describes the meaning of another word or words and makes it more specific or limits its meaning or meanings.
Example: I ate the *delicious* cake. The word *delicious* is a modifier, making *cake* more specific.

Some long superlative modifiers are adjectives. Some long comparative modifiers are adjectives. Adjectives modify a proper noun, a common noun, or a pronoun and answer Which one? How many? or What kind?
Example: intelligent–Of the many *intelligent* men in the group, he was the *most intelligent*.

Some long comparative modifiers are adverbs. Adverbs modify a verb or another adverb and answer What degree? How? Where? or When? Use *more* or *less* for adverbs ending in "__ly."
Example: angrily–Of the three arguing *angrily*–she argued *most angrily*.

PRACTICE

Write the correct comparative modifiers in the spaces provided.
If the sentence is correctly written, leave as is.

1. This boy is the more considerate one in the group. _____

2. That is the less specifically planned stop of our whole vacation. _____

3. Of all the pilots, he more carefully practiced his take-offs. _____

4. You more understood the problem than any student in the class. _____

5. Of the four possible backpack treks, this is the simpliest planned hike. _____

6. That airline is the less frequently on-time airline of all U.S. airlines. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with a three-syllable *most* modifier. Use no modifiers found on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #35

FOCUS Linking and Helping Verbs

A **linking verb** is a mental action or state of being. A **helping verb** shows time, number, or modifies the meaning of a verb.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A linking verb renames or describes the subject of the sentence with another word or words.
Each "to be" verb can be a linking verb: *is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*
Examples: Mrs. Patterson <u>was</u> here. My friends <u>are</u> so nice.
Verbs that use the five senses: *look, sound, smell, feel, taste* and others: *appear, seem, become, grow, turn, prove, remain* can also be used as linking verbs.
Examples: Charlie <u>feels</u> awful. The children <u>became</u> tired.

Helping verbs are placed before the base form of the verb and any verb endings. More than one helping verb can be used in a sentence. Sometimes a word such as *not* separates the helping verb from the base form of the verb. A helping verb can also be placed before a linking verb to modify its meaning. English has 23 helping verbs:

is, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *be*, *being*, *been*, *has*, *have*, *had*, *do*, *does*, *did*, *will*, *shall*, *should*, *would*, *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*

PRACTICE

Write LV to identify linking verbs and HV to identify helping verbs in the spaces provided.

Lydia was ____ sure that she saw both friends at the mall. Her friends had ____ told her that

they were ____ going to the library, but that did ____ not turn ____ out to be ____ true.

Good friends would not have ____ lied to her. Why they felt ____ like they had ____ to lie

would ____ be ____ anyone's guess. It seems ____ like Lydia should ____ find new friends.

WRITE

Write a sentence with both linking and helping verbs.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #36

FOCUS Modals

Modals are helping verbs that describe different conditional states of a verb.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Modals show these conditions for their verbs: need, advice, ability, expectation, requirement, permission, or possibility. Modals are placed before verbs to form verb phrases. English regularly uses eight modals: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *should*, *will*, and *would*; two are rarely used: *ought to* and *shall*.
Examples: Dennis can eat a lot of pie. (ability) Shelly might become a doctor. (possibility) Toby could use some exercise. (need)

Never use the word *of* after a modal.
Example: Use "must have," not "must of."

PRACTICE

In the spaces provided following each sentence, list which of these conditions best matches the modals: need, advice, ability, expectation, requirement, permission, or possibility

1. Yes, you may go to the restroom. _____
2. I could have tried harder on my science project. _____
3. If we decide to go, we must leave by three o'clock. _____
4. We would have to use more glue to make it stick. _____
5. You definitely should have written a thank-you card. _____
6. Melvin can help you if you want. _____
7. Students must learn to use modals properly. _____

WRITE

Write a sentence or two, using two modal helping verbs to describe two different conditions.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #37

FOCUS Past Tense Verbs

The **past verb tense** is a physical or mental action or a state of being that took place at a specific time. For the past verb tense, add an "__ed" onto the base form of regular verbs.
Examples: Ismelda *wasted* a lot of my time yesterday.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Usually use the past verb tense when the words *before* or *after* appear in a sentence.
Example: She *attended* St. John's Academy *after* third grade.

Another way to state the past tense is to place *did* before the base form of the word.
Example: work–did work

About 50 of the most common verbs have irregular past tenses, including these: do–did, go–went, have–had, see–saw, run–ran, and be–was, were.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the past tense.

1. Penny helps at the senior center after school.

_____

2. Cowboys rope and brand their cattle.

_____

3. That radio station will play all of my favorite songs.

_____

4. Tamesia touches her left cheek every time she raises her hand in class.

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with two past tense verbs.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #38

FOCUS **Past Progressive Verbs**

The **past progressive verb tense** is used to show an ongoing action in the past.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The past progressive verb tense shows an action that took place over a period of time in the past or a past action which was happening when another action took place. The past progressive uses *was* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" to match singular nouns and pronouns and *were* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" to match plural nouns and pronouns.
Examples: She *was hoping* I would change my mind. Prudence and Leanne *were cooking* brownies when their friend, Marci, knocked on the door.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the past progressive tense.

1. Larry enjoyed the beautiful sunsets at the beach.

_____

2. They expect a lot of money for their used car.

_____

3. Her friends slept in the living room when the fire alarm sounded.

_____

4. Rosie will go to the movies.

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with the past progressive verb tense.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #39

FOCUS Past Perfect Verbs

The **past perfect verb tense** is a physical or mental action or a state of being that happened before another action or a specific time in the past.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The past perfect verb tense is formed with *had* + the past participle (a verb ending in "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "__en" for regular verbs).

Examples:

I had promised her that I would visit before I learned about the accident.
She had already found her watch when I started looking for it.
Timothy had built another fort by the time I came out to help.
They had given me another chance when they saw how hard I tried.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the past perfect tense.

1. The class was already started when the student walked in tardy.

_____

2. I knew by Tuesday that last weekend's game would be canceled.

_____

3. They had been sharing their feelings about riding skateboards without helmets.

_____

4. By the time I arrived, Louis had already begun painting the back of the house.

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with the past perfect verb tense.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #40

FOCUS Present Tense Verbs

The **present tense verb** is a physical or mental action or a state of being happening or existing now.

Examples: Matthew *walks* slowly around the block. Singular Subject
Oralia and Rosa *walk* slowly around the block. Plural Subject

CONNECT TO WRITING

The present verb tense can describe a physical or mental action that happens over and over again
Example: He *plays* the game like it is a matter of life or death.

The present verb tense is used to discuss literature, art, movies, theater, and music–even if the content is set in the past
Example: Thomas Jefferson *states* that "all men are created equal."

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the present tense.

1. We tried to find the best deals on the Internet.

_____

2. He should have listened to what his parents have to say.

_____

3. Carl Sandberg said, "Fog creeps in on little cat feet, and then slowly moves on."

_____

4. I always wanted my own personal size pizza.

_____

WRITE

Write a sentence to discuss a movie with two or more present tense verbs.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #41

FOCUS **Present Progressive Verbs**

The **present progressive verb tense** is used to show an ongoing action in the present.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The present progressive verb tense shows an action that takes place over a period of time in the present or an action taking place at the same time the statement is written. The present progressive uses *I am* + the base form of the verb + "__ing," *is* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" to match singular nouns and pronouns and *are* + the base form of the verb + "__ing" to match plural nouns and pronouns.
Examples: I *am swimming* every morning this summer. Our teachers *are starting* a new reading program at school.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the present progressive tense.

1. Phoebe listened to the teacher as she works.

_____

2. I run down the street to the end of the block when I see my friend.

_____

3. Nina and Berta give money to help those in need during the holiday season.

_____

4. Our teammates practice a lot for the first game of our season.

_____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with the present progressive verb tense.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #42

FOCUS Present Perfect Verbs

The **present perfect verb tense** is a physical or mental action or a state of being happening or existing before the present. The present perfect is formed with *has* or *have* + the past participle (a verb ending in "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "_en" for regular verbs).
Example: He *has* already *started* his science project.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The present perfect verb tense has the following uses:

- To describe an action that took place at some unidentified time in the past that relates to the present
  Example: The students *have studied* hard for today's test.
- To describe an action that began in the past but continues to the present
  Example: The teachers *have taught* these standards for five years.
- To describe the length of time an action has been in progress up to the present time
  This verb form is known as the present perfect progressive tense. It is formed with *has* or *have been* and the _*ing* form of the verb.
  Example: The students *have been writing* for over an hour.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the present perfect tense.

1. Esmerelda developed a fantastic web site.

_____

2. The ladies have been reuniting in the same place to continue their friendship once every year.

_____

3. The storm was threatening to strike since last night.

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with the present perfect verb tense.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #43

FOCUS Future Tense Verbs

The **future verb tense** is an action or state of being that will take place in the future. To form the future verb tense, use *will* + the base form of the verb.
Example: Mr. Thomas *will go* to the meeting tomorrow.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Some teachers still require students to use *shall* + the base form of the verb to form the future tense for the first person singular *I* and plural *we*.
Examples: I *shall visit* you tomorrow. We *shall enjoy* each other's company.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences in the spaces provided, changing each verb to the future tense.

1. I leave school at two o'clock for a dentist appointment.

_____

2. I talked to my friends, but they just won't listen.

_____

3. You had been asking for the movie star's autograph.

_____

4. Computer games grow more and more important to kids.

_____

5. We had been hoping that the vacation can continue.

_____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with two or more future tense verbs.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #44

FOCUS Future Progressive Verbs

The **future progressive verb tense** is used to show an ongoing action in the future.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The future progressive verb tense shows an an ongoing action that will be completed over a period of time.
Example: Dante *will be watching* the playoff game tonight.

The future progressive verb tense can also show a repeated action that *will not* be completed.
The future progressive uses *will be* + the base form of the verb + "-ing" to match both singular and plural nouns and pronouns.
Example: They *will be trying* some new ideas in the classroom.

PRACTICE

Change the verbs in the following sentences to the future progressive verb tense in the spaces provided.

1. We will run the mile in P.E. today.

_____

2. I thought of you as you celebrate your birthday.

_____

3. Danya and Darla have watched the movie tonight.

_____

4. They had been volunteering every weekend at the shelter.

_____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with the future progressive verb tense.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #45

FOCUS Future Perfect Verbs

The **future perfect verb tense** refers to a physical or mental action or a state of being that will be completed before a specific time in the future. The future perfect is formed with a helping verb such as the modals: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, and *would* + *has* or *have* + with *had* + the past participle (a verb ending in "__ed," "__d," "__t," or "__en" for regular verbs).
Example: We *will have walked* six miles by three-o'clock this afternoon.

CONNECT TO WRITING

The future perfect verb tense either states or implies (suggests without stating) a specific time in the future.

PRACTICE

Write the future perfect tense of each verb in these sentences in the spaces provided.

–A physical or mental action or a state of being that will be completed before a specific time in the future

1. We ride bikes until our legs begin to ache. _____

2. We had seen three busses pass our house in ten more minutes. _____

3. You will tell three stories to the class by the end of this year. _____

–The length of time an action will be in progress up to a specific time in the future

4. They are sleeping for ten hours by this noon. _____

5. Mom gave twenty dollars every month for twenty years by this summer.

_____

6. Not one animal will perform by the time we get to the circus. _____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with the future perfect verb tense.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #46

FOCUS **Commas with Speaker Tags**

Speaker tags are the words used to identify the speaker in dialogue and describe exactly how the speaker communicates that dialogue.
Example: Tom (the speaker) shouted (how communicated), "Watch out!"

CONNECT TO WRITING

In dialogue sentences, place commas 1. After a beginning speaker tag to the left of the quotation marks 2. Before and after a middle speaker tag to the left of both quotation marks
3. Before an ending speaker tag to the left of the quotation marks.
Examples:

Beginning	She said, "Leave home at once."	Note capitalization of the sentence quotation in the middle of the sentence.
Middle	"Leave home," she said, "at once."	Note placement of the quotation marks outside of the punctuation.
End	"Leave home at once," she said.	Note how speaker tag placement changes the meaning of the sentence.

Use a variety of speaker tags such as *said*, *replied*, *shouted*, and *explained* in dialogue to show the speaker's exact meaning and tone of voice. Avoid over-using *said*.

When writing dialogue, begin a new paragraph each time you change speakers. Don't start a new paragraph to continue dialogue by the same speaker.

PRACTICE

Re-write the following quotation sentences with proper punctuation in the spaces provided:

1. She said I usually do chores after school _____

2. They left town I said in a shiny new car _____

3. I can't believe it he exclaimed _____

WRITE

Write a three sentence dialogue with three different placements of speaker tags.

_____

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #47

FOCUS Commas with Appositives

Use commas to set apart appositives and appositive phrases that are not necessary to understand the sentence. Don't use commas when the appositive or appositive phrase is essential.

CONNECT TO WRITING

An appositive is a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase that identifies or explains another noun or pronoun before or after it.
Examples: The man, the one with the hat, ordered dessert. My friend, Sam, left early.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Joe and Mandy our debate leaders thought we had a good chance.

_____

2. Johnny Mingo the Australian cowboy rode his horse off into the sunset.

_____

3. Searching for answers, Louis Pasteur the famous scientist carried on.

_____

4. Jim the butler served their last meal.

Fill in the blanks with appositives from the list below and properly punctuate.

5. _____ our two friends left the concert early.

6. The wonderful teacher _____ shared the slides with her students.

7. The author has just completed his latest book _____.

8. That song _____ lasts six minutes.

Ms. So "The Swan" The End Kim and Tom

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with an appositive word and an appositive phrase.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #48

FOCUS Commas within Series

Use commas after each item, phrase, or clause in a series (except the last). A series is a list.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Newspapers and some magazines delete the last comma; however, most style manuals still require the last comma.

Examples: John, Jan, and Jose arrived early.
If crazy Mary, unpredictable Bobby, or silly Joe were up to something, I would know about it. The crowd hushed, the lights dimmed, and the fireworks began.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Jane Mike and Ray pulled the car off to the side.

_____

2. Along the road an old car two broomsticks and a funny green-eyed monster stood guard.

_____

3. Take a hike smell the flowers and enjoy life for the rest of the afternoon.

_____

4. Joan counted one two three four five.

_____

Fill in the blanks with the word groups listed below and properly punctuate.

5. _____ are my favorite colors.

6. They ordered _____ for breakfast.

7. Mr. Burt called on one of the following students: _____.

Jaime Marta or Frank blue green and yellow eggs bacon and wheat toast

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with commas after each phrase in a list (except the last).

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #49

FOCUS Commas with Introductions

Generally, use commas after introductory words, phrases, and clauses if they are emphasized or longer than four words.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Introductory Words
Commas are not needed after an introductory word in short sentences unless it is emphasized.
Examples: Now go home. However, they were wrong.

Introductory Phrases
Don't use a comma after short introductory prepositional phrases of four words or less.
Example: Under the table the dog hid.
Use a comma after long introductory prepositional phrases of five words or more.
Example: Behind the dining room cabinet, he found the missing watch.
Use a comma following an introductory participial phrase which modifies a noun or pronoun following the phrase.
Example: Disguised as an old man, the burglar gained entry into the warehouse.

Introductory Clauses
Use comma following an introductory dependent clause. A dependent clause has a noun connected to a verb that does not express a complete thought.
Example: Even though the temperatures rose, the snow continued to fall.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Whenever the girls called he went outside to see what they wanted.

_____

2. Around the block she rode the bicycle.

_____

3. Next ask about the directions to the factory.

_____

4. Interested they called the player to check his availability.

_____

WRITE

Compose three of your own sentences with an introductory word, phrase, and clause.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #50

FOCUS Commas with Geography

Use commas between geographical place names.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Use commas between the name of a city or town and the name of its state or country.

Examples: It all happened May 3, 1999 in Tampa, Florida.
On April 13th of 2000, the wind was blown out of his sails upon arriving in Virginia Beach, Virginia.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Lawton Nevada is my hometown.

_____

2. Olympia Washington is a beautiful capital.

_____

3. Bogota Colombia seems like a fascinating city.

_____

4. I live at 3442 Spring Street in Irvine South Carolina.

_____

5. Amador City California has post office boxes for its residents.

_____

6. St. Petersburg Russia used to be the capital of that country.

_____

7. When did Juneau Alaska reach a population of 10,000?

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with geographical places and commas between them. Use none of the geographical place names on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #51

FOCUS Commas with Nouns of Direct Speech

Use commas before or after nouns of direct speech.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Nouns of direct speech refer to special persons who are spoken to in a sentence. They can be placed at the start of the sentence, in the middle of the sentence, or at the end of the sentence.

Examples:

Sentence Beginning	Kristen, leave some for your sister.
Sentence Middle	If you do that, James and Myra, you will be playing with fire.
	Commas come before and after the noun or nouns of direct speech.
Sentence End	Don't ever listen to him, brother.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Listen to me Barbara and then make up your own mind.

_____

2. That's a dangerous thought you've shared Bud.

_____

3. Look Jane it's going to be hard at first.

_____

4. Sitting by the sofa, she said, "Henry get over here."

_____

5. I just don't know Bobby.

_____

WRITE

Compose your own three-sentence dialogue with nouns of direct speech placed at the beginning, middle, and end.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #52

FOCUS Commas with Conjunctions

Use commas before conjunctions to join two clauses.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A comma is placed before the **coordinating conjunction** if it joins two or more independent clauses unless one or both of the clauses are short. The acronym, FANBOYS (For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So), may help you remember the common two or three-letter coordinating conjunctions.
Examples: I liked everything about her, and she also liked me. I liked her and she liked me.

A comma is placed before the second of paired **correlative conjunctions**, if the conjunction begins an independent clause. Don't use a comma to separate correlative conjunctions if they are used within the same phrase or clause. Correlative conjunctions include the following:
both…and either…or whether…or neither…nor
Example: Either she should ask for help, or she should read the directions again.

A comma is placed after the adverbial clause, which begins with a subordinating conjunction, if the clause does not end the sentence. This memory trick may help you remember the common subordinating conjunctions: **Bud is wise, but hot! AAA WWW**

Before **u**nless **d**espite (in spite of) **i**n order that **s**ince **w**hile **i**f **s**ince **e**ven though (if), **b**ecause **u**ntil **t**hat **h**ow **o**nce **t**han! **A**fter **A**lthough (though) **A**s (As if, As long as, As much as, As soon as, As though) **W**hether **W**hen (Whenever) **W**here (Wherever)
Example: As much as I liked her company, she eventually became tiresome.

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Neither he wanted to face the problem nor did she want to deal with that challenge.

2. In order that all people would have the same chance they decided to draw numbers.

3. Raymond sent a message to his cousin but the message was returned unopened.

WRITE

Compose three of your own sentences: a compound sentence with a coordinating conjunction; a sentence with a pair of correlative conjunctions; and a sentence with a subordinating conjunction.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #53

FOCUS Commas in Letters

Use commas after greetings in personal letters and closings in personal and business letters.

CONNECT TO WRITING

In a personal letter or note, place a comma following the greeting.
Example: Dear Tracy,
Also place a comma following the closing.
Examples: Yours truly, Love,

In a business letter or memo, place a colon following the greeting.
Example: To Whom It May Concern:
Place a comma following the closing.
Examples: Sincerely, Thank you for your consideration,

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct punctuation.

Dear Ralph

Let's meet on Friday.
It will be fun as always.

Yours truly

Mark

To Whom It May Concern

Please cancel my order and refund my credit card on file.

Sincerely

Jaime Sanchez

WRITE

Write your own brief personal note with a greeting and closing.

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #54

FOCUS Commas with Coordinate Adjectives

Use commas between coordinate adjectives.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Coordinate adjectives work equally to modify a noun. Unlike hierarchical adjectives, which build upon each other with different levels or degrees to modify the same noun, coordinate adjectives must be separated with commas.

To determine if adjectives are coordinate adjectives, try placing the word *and* between the adjectives. Second, try reversing them. If, the phrases sound fine both ways, the adjectives are coordinate adjectives and require commas between each.
Example: A tall, scary man

PRACTICE

Re-write these sentences with correct comma placement in the spaces provided.

1. Around the corner she ran into a large angry dog.

_____

2. If I didn't know better, I would guess that the tired old woman was not going to leave her house.

_____

3. The funny green character said, "I am crazy silly and full of energy."

_____

4. Unless I'm mistaken, the usual cloudy gray morning will change to afternoon sun and wind.

_____

5. The book is creative surprising delightful and completely entertaining.

_____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with three coordinate adjectives.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #55

FOCUS **Capitalization of People / Characters**

Capitalize the names of people or characters.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A named person or character is a proper noun and must be capitalized. Initials, abbreviations, titles, nicknames, and proper adjectives that are attached to the named person are also capitalized. Adjectives answer Which one? How many? or What Kind? However, don't capitalize articles (*a*, *an*, or *the*) in the middle of names.

Examples: E.B. White was a great poet.
Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr. helped lead the Civil Rights Movement.
I've read some of the work by Justice Oliver Wendall Holmes.
Mrs. *Janet Nelson* is a kind woman.
George Herman "Babe" Ruth was the homerun king of baseball.
The magician, Miraculous Merlin, would have admired Peter the Great.
I know that Mother loved to watch Donald Duck cartoons.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. She told Uncle Charles that I went to see d.r.s. l. thoms. _____

2. Will Mrs. James come to visit Aunt Robin and "bubba" Peterson? _____

3. The army's captain Schneider reviewed the rules with P.F.C. Johns. _____

4. Roy told my dad that sis and I would get together at Mom's work. _____

5. Officer Bob Benton issued a speed citation to mom and her brother. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with an adjective that is attached to a named person and another sentence with a named character.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #56

FOCUS Capitalization of Places

Capitalize named places.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A named placed is a proper noun and must be capitalized. The complete name of a geographical location is capitalized, including proper adjectives that are attached to the named place. Adjectives answer Which one? How many? or What Kind? However, don't capitalize the compass directions unless they are part of a place name.

Examples: The state of North Dakota is west of Minnesota.
Ryan headed north to Los Angeles to see the Holocaust Museum.
The Sierra Nevada Mountains are in Nevada and California.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. I love to go see Broadway plays in New York city. _____

2. Some beautiful scenery is found in Douglas county in Nevada. _____

3. The girls said they lived at 123 Oak avenue in Paris, North Carolina._____

4. In southern Mississippi they still grow cotton. _____

5. The borough of long island has millions of people. _____

6. The Spanish often vacation at Santiago lake in Portugal. _____

7. They travelled out west to see the Grand canyon. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with two named places that have a relationship to each other.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #57

FOCUS Capitalization of Things

Capitalize named things.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A named thing is a proper noun and must be capitalized, including proper adjectives that are attached to the named thing. Adjectives answer Which one? How many? or What Kind? Words like *building*, *church*, *club*, *company*, *corporation*, *hall*, *hotel*, *middle school*, *motel*, *theater*, *university* are capitalized when part of the title of a special thing. Don't capitalize articles (*a*, *an*, or *the*) in the middle of named things.

Examples: The *Liberty Bell* is well-worth seeing.
The Greatest Show on Earth is a circus.
The *University of Southern California* is one of the finest universities.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. I hear that the Alex theater has been completely remodeled. _____

2. Bill Gates helped invent the windows Operating System. _____

3. Ryan once climbed the stairs to the top of the sears tower. _____

4. Have you vacationed in Yosemite National park? _____

5. Mr. Newton was appointed sponsor of the french club. _____

6. I attended first Presbyterian church for three years. _____

7. Did you kiss the Blarney stone when you went to Ireland? _____

8. Kenny walked across the Golden Gate bridge. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with an adjective as part of a title of a special thing.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #58

FOCUS Capitalization of Holidays and Dates

Capitalize names of holidays and names of dates.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Names of holidays and dates, including the names of months and days of the week are capitalized. Names of the seasons are not capitalized.
Examples: Last Easter on March 27, 2005 my dad gave up smoking. Unfortunately, this fall he began the habit once again.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. On the first thanksgiving, Pilgrims and Native Americans had a feast. _____

2. I'm sure that February 19th is Presidents day this year. _____

3. Will we have cherry pie at the 4th of july party? _____

4. The Rose parade is the granddaddy of all New Year's Day parades. _____

5. She knows that Martin Luther king, jr. holiday is a vacation day. _____

6. If thursday will not work for you, how about Wednesday? _____

7. I got married on flag day, which is on June 14th. _____

8. The Chinese say that this is the year of the dog. _____

9. The feast of Unleavened Bread is a Jewish holiday. _____

10. Does Santa really come down the chimney on Christmas eve? _____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a holiday name not listed on this worksheet. Include the day of the week and month of the holiday.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #59

FOCUS **Capitalization of Organizations and Businesses**

Capitalize the names of organizations and businesses.

CONNECT TO WRITING

An organization is any group of people established for a special purpose. A business is the name of a company that provides products or services and also employment for its employees. Don't capitalize articles (*a*, *an*, or *the*) in the middle of named things.

Examples: The school P.T.A. and McDonald's helped sponsor the community event.
Campfire Girls of America is a great organization.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. I know that Microsoft corporation is a profitable business. _____
2. Watching the Sacramento kings win was exciting. _____
3. She was a member of the daughters of the American Revolution. _____
4. I heard that general Motors is headquartered in Detroit. _____
5. Does the Atlas Window company donate money? _____
6. In the boy scouts of America, I learned outdoor skills. _____
7. The Boys and Girls clubs of America serve youth. _____
8. The organization, big Brothers, helps many. _____
9. The teachers belong to the national Educational Association. _____
10. The Los Angeles dodgers draws millions of fans. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence in which you mention both an organization and a business not listed on this worksheet.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #60

FOCUS Capitalization of Languages and People Groups

Capitalize the names of languages and people groups.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Many names of peoples and languages are one in the same.
Examples: The English and Spanish are separated by the Bay of Biscay.

People groups and languages include those belonging to a certain country or region and those belonging to a certain ethnic group.
Examples: The Egyptians met with a group of Native-Americans.
That terrific Chinese restaurant specialized in Cantonese cooking, even though the employees all spoke Mandarin.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. Many asians live in urban areas of the United States. _____
2. The african-American women attended church. _____
3. Many brazilians have never seen the Amazon River. _____
4. I think that she speaks portuguese. _____
5. The Afrikaner language is based on dutch and English. _____
6. The Swedish language has similarities to the german language. _____
7. Many swiss speak three or four languages. _____
8. When french is spoken well, it is a very romantic language. _____
9. Can Matt speak and write japanese? _____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence, naming a language and people group not listed on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #61

FOCUS Capitalization of Events and Historical Periods

Capitalize named events and historical periods.

CONNECT TO WRITING

An event can be a show, a program, a fair, a concert, a fundraiser, a natural disaster, a natural display, a game, or something similar. An historical period refers to the name given to a certain period of time. Don't capitalize articles (*a*, *an*, or *the*) in the middle of named events and historical periods.

Examples: My favorite period of history has to be the Middle Ages.
Each year we celebrate the American Revolution with a fireworks display.

PRACTICE

Write the proper nouns which should be capitalized in the spaces provided.

1. The **recreational vehicle show** will take place at the fairgrounds this weekend. _____

2. Many say that the wounds of the Civil war have never healed. _____

3. The Amador County fair draws thousands of families each year. _____

4. My favorite period of history has to be the renaissance. _____

5. If the Palm Springs Desert classic is a golf tournament. _____

6. President Monroe's era of Good Feelings was in the early 1800s. _____

7. I have heard that the Folsom rodeo is world-famous. _____

8. The end of world war II in 1945 created different alliances. _____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with named event.

_____

_____

Write your own sentence with an historical period.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #62

FOCUS **Punctuation of Movie and Television Shows**

Underline or italicize movie and television shows.

CONNECT TO WRITING

We underline titles when we write, but italicize titles when we type. Although television shows are underlined or italicized, specific episodes of the shows are placed in quotation marks.
Example: The television show, MASH, was based upon the movie titled MASH.

PRACTICE

For the movie and television titles which are *not* properly punctuated, write UI if they should be *underlined* or *italicized* and QM if they should be in *quotation marks* in the spaces provided.

1. My favorite episode from Little House on the Prairie is when Laura befriends the Indians. ____

2. Jaws III was not as good as the original Jaws. ____

3. Clint Eastwood's Hang 'Em High is a perfect example of a "Spaghetti Western." ____

4. The Bonanza episode with the pancake-eating contest was titled The Flapjack Contest. ____

5. The repeats of Everybody Loves Raymond now twice nightly on the local station. ____

6. How many years did Modern Family run in prime time? ____

7. I'm pretty sure that The Late Show will be renewed for another year. ____

8. The episode of I Love Lucy titled Lucy Goes to the Hospital was highly rated. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence in which you mention both a movie and television show. Do not use any of the movies or television shows mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #63

FOCUS **Punctuation of Book / Magazine / Newspaper / Website Titles**

Underline or italicize book, magazine, newspaper, and website titles.

CONNECT TO WRITING

We underline titles when we write, but italicize titles when we type. Sometimes the word *magazine* is part of the magazine's name. Names of journals, newsletters, and newspapers are all underlined.

Examples: I read about the book, titled Islands in Paradise, in Newsweek magazine.
The author wrote an article about The New England Journal of Medicine in the *Los Angeles Times* and on his website, *Medical News in Review*.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. The new book by J.K. Rowling was reviewed in Weekly Reader magazine. ____
2. Was *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* a best seller? ____
3. My children look forward to receiving their copies of *Highlights* every month. ____
4. Some parents in this class have a subscription to "The Wall Street Journal. ____
5. The New York Times crossword is one of most challenging crosswords. ____
6. If you read the Newsela magazine regularly, you will notice the change in its format. ____
7. Are children still reading *Roll of Thunder, Hear My Cry?* ____
8. I looked everywhere, but could not find that quote in the "The Last Dance." ____
9. Tolkien's classic, The Fellowship of the Ring won an Academy Award. ____

WRITE

Write your own sentence in which you mention both a book and magazine title. Do not use any of the books or magazines mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #64

FOCUS Punctuation of Song / Poem Titles

Use quotation marks before and after song and poem titles.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Place quotation marks before and after the titles of songs and poems.
Examples: Billie Eilish won Best Song for "Bad Guy" in 2020. She claims that the poet Richard Blanco's "My Father in English" inspired her writing.

Song medleys (collections of songs combined) and long poems, such as odes, are underlined.
Examples: I think that Paul Simon's song, "America," was influenced by the poem "Leaves of Grass."
Homer's long poem, The Illiad, is one that everyone should read.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. My great-grandfather wrote "In the Shade of the Old Apple Tree" for his wife. ____
2. I know I have heard "Dance" of the "Sugarplum Fairies" before. ____
3. Beyoncé once recorded a cover-version of "America the Beautiful." ____
4. "Joyce Kilmer's Trees" still delights and inspires young poets. ____
5. Did Elvis record "Heartbreak Hotel" when he was signed with "Sun Records?" ____
6. Madonna hasn't had a good song since "True Colors" went platinum. ____
7. The scariest poem I know is Edgar Allan Poe's The "Raven." ____
8. Lewis Carroll wrote *"Jabberwocky"* to play with the sounds of the English language. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence in which you mention both a song and poem title. Do not use any of the songs or poems mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #65

FOCUS Punctuation of Play / Work of Art Titles

Underline or italicize plays and works of art titles.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Title of plays, musicals, operas, sculptures, photographs, paintings, and other works of art are underlined when written and italicized when typed.

Examples: The wonderful play, Oklahoma, had the painting Oklahoma Skies in the first scene.
I recently read the play, Romeo and Juliet, and I just found the artist Jo Mar's painting titled Two Children on the Internet.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. William Shakespeare wrote many comedies, including: The Tempest, Twelfth Night, A Midsummer-Night's Dream, and As You Like It. ____
2. He also wrote tragedies, including the famous *Julius Caesar.* ____
3. Tennessee William's play, The Death of a Salesman, is still widely read. ____
4. "Of Michelangelo's sculptures, The *Pieta* stands out as his best," claimed Bunny. ____
5. His David was sculpted from lesser quality marble. ____
6. Have you ever seen a photograph of Whistler's Mother? ____
7. "The photograph, *Sunrise*, Sunset, is one of the most memorable examples of time-lapse photography," said Melvin. ____
8. Did his *Breakfast of Champions* sell at the art exhibit? ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence in which you mention both a play and work of art title. Do not use any of the plays or works of art mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #66

FOCUS **Punctuation of Book Chapter Titles**

Use quotation marks before and after book chapter titles.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Remember that books titles are underlined when written and italicized when typed, but book chapters have quotation marks before and after the chapter titles.

Examples: The best chapter in the book was titled "The Final Act."
The book, Black Beauty, is an American classic–especially the chapter titled "An Old War Horse."

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. Rudyard Kipling's "Captains Courageous" tells the tale of a bored and lonely son a of a millionaire who is rescued on the high seas by a small fishing boat. ____
2. The most exciting chapter has to the first one, "Boy Overboard." ____
3. The chapter titled A Changed Toad ends Kenneth Grahame's *The Wind in the Willows.* ____
4. "One for All and All for One" is the battle cry of the three French musketeers in Alexandre Dumas's classic, "The Three Musketeers." ____
5. In the chapter titled "Three Duels," three exciting sword fights are described in detail. ____
6. *The Merry Adventures of Robin Hood*, by Howard Pyle, tells the tales of Robin Hood, Maid Marion, the Sheriff of Nottingham, Little John, Will Stutely, and Friar Tuck. ____
7. These characters are introduced in the chapter, *"Robin Hood Meets Little John."* ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a book name and chapter title. Do not use any of the books or book chapters mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #67

FOCUS **Punctuation of Article Titles**

Use quotation marks before and after magazine, newspaper, or Internet article titles.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Remember that magazine, newspaper, and website titles are underlined when written and italicized when typed, but articles have quotation marks before and after the article titles.

Examples: Did you read the article, "Why We Continue," in The New Yorker?
I read her *Education Weekly* blog most every week. The recent article titled "Children in Crisis" was well-researched.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. My wife read "Why Getting Hitched Is Healthy" in last month's Ladies Home Journal. ____
2. I loved reading "Humor in Uniform" every month in Reader's Digest. ____
3. This month's issue of California Educator features an article titled Tuning up the Idea. ____
4. Last week's *Time* had an article about Lady Gaga titled "Gaga on Top of the World." ____
5. In the latest edition of *Science*, I read an article titled *Underneath the World*. ____
6. Her blog had a fascinating article titled "A Dime a Dozen." ____
7. Putnam's research article was featured in the "Wall Street Journal." ____
8. On her most recent podcast, "Three Blind Mice," Miley talks about three friends. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence, listing a magazine name and article in that magazine. Do not use any of the magazines or articles mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #68

FOCUS **Punctuation of Short Story / Document Titles**

Use quotation marks before and after short story, document, and report titles.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Familiar documents such as the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution require no punctuation.

Examples: I think that his short story, "He Never Lies," may have been based on the secret government document known as "The Pentagon Papers."
The short story, "Flowers," is one of the best. I read about it in the report titled "Best Short Stories of 2004."

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. In *Twice-Told Tales*, Nathaniel Hawthorne tells many short stories such as "The Great Carbuncle," "The Gray Champion," "The Wedding Knell," and "The May-Pole of Merry Mount." ____

2. Richard Adams has a wonderful collection of his favorite animal stories including his own "The Rabbit's Ghost Story." ____

3. James Herriot's short story *Monty the Bull* tells the entertaining story of a bull that gets the best of a veterinarian. ____

4. Doris Summers finished her "Lake Tahoe Water Conditions" report last week. ____

5. The school board prepared a document titled "State of the District" and printed 200 copies. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a short story title or a document title. Do not use any of the short stories or documents mentioned on this worksheet.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #69

FOCUS Punctuation of Direct Quotations

Use quotation marks before and after direct quotations.

CONNECT TO WRITING

A direct quotation includes the spoken or written words exactly as they appear in speech or text.

- Place double quotation marks around speech or text that belong to someone else. If the speaker changes, begin a new paragraph. Always place quotation marks outside periods.
- Use single quotation marks for a quotation inside a quotation. Put a question mark, exclamation point, semicolon, or colon that belongs to your writing, not the quote, outside the closing quotation marks.
  Example: He said, "I agree with Lincoln. However, was our nation really 'dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal'"?
- Do not use quotation marks for indirect quotations. An indirect quotation summarizes what someone has said.
  Example: He said that she had never seen Thomas before.
- When a quoted sentence is interrupted by comments, and is then continued in the same sentence, begin the rest of the quotation with a lower case letter.
  Example: "When," asked Mavis, "will you finish your lunch?"

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. "I'm anxious to leave, commented Zelda." ____

2. "What just took place? asked Robert." ____

3. "What a terrific ending to that story!" exclaimed Anthony. ____

4. "Did you hear the speaker say," things will never be the same asked Billy? ____

5. "I know," replied Max, "but do you really want to make a big deal out of this?" ____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with a quotation within a quotation.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #70

FOCUS Apostrophes (Contractions)

A **contraction** is a shortened form of one or two words (one of which is usually a verb). In a contraction, the apostrophe takes the place of the missing letter or letters.

CONNECT TO WRITING+

Contractions may be used in informal writing; however, avoid using contractions in formal essay writing. These are the most common contractions:

is (she's, it's, there's, where's, here's) *are* (they're, we're, you're) *am* (I'm) *us* (let's)
had (I'd, he'd, they'd, we'd) *have* (could've, they've, might've, should've)
will (I'll, they'll, we'll, she'll, it'll) *not* (isn't, can't, shouldn't, wouldn't, hasn't, doesn't, aren't, won't)

Examples: They could've asked, but they've always wondered if they'll find out anyway.
They should've known that they didn't have a chance.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

For all of their talk, they've rarely come to see who's playing at the club. ____

They havent shown up in weeks, and so they cant really comment on what they dont know. ____

I will say they're in for a treat when they do come. There's a band that isn't half-bad. ____

They didn't hold back during their set Friday night and they wont tonight. ____

Change each of the underlined words to contractions in the parentheses which follow.

1. <u>It is</u> (_____) a shame that they never listen to their parents.

2. <u>You are</u> (_____) sure that <u>you have</u> (_____) never seen them?

3. <u>Where is</u> (_____) she going? <u>They are</u> (_____) not exactly saying.

4. <u>She is</u> (_____) happy that <u>they had</u> (_____) left directions.

WRITE

Compose your own sentence or two with at least two contractions.

_____

_____

pennington publishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #71

FOCUS Semicolons

Use **semicolons** to join phrases and clauses without conjunctions.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Semicolons can be used instead of commas to combine phrases or dependent clauses that have commas in very long sentences. The best way to think about a **s**emi**c**olon is that it **s**ubstitutes for a **c**omma-conjunction. Make sure that the semicolon connects phrases or clauses that have some relationship. For example, *He went to town; she ran a barbershop* has no relationship between the clauses.

Examples: Anna showed up late; Louise didn't at all.
His disguise was picture-perfect; no one could recognize him.

Semicolons are placed to the left of (inside) ending quotation marks.

Example: Three poems amaze me: the crazy "Bloom;" the mournful "Left;" and "No."

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. Samuel went shopping; then he went out to dinner. ____
2. The album includes these songs: the heart-throbbing rhythm and blues "Sawmill"; the surprisingly speedy, yet soulful "Ol' Dog Blues;" and "Mama's Return." ____
3. I was taught Spanish at home; by a tutor that's how I learned the language. ____
4. The Revolutionary War was fought against the British; the War of 1812 was also fought against them. ____
5. Many died in the Civil War; it was a horrible tragedy. ____
6. Ellen did not prepare at all; she appeared not to care what would happen as a result. ____
7. Through many long days of looking; after many attempts and failures; despite many questions left unanswered; they finally decided to buy a home of their own. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a semicolon.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #72

FOCUS Parentheses / Dashes

Use **parentheses or dashes** before and after words or ideas to explain or define the words or ideas. A dash (–) is longer than a hyphen (-).

CONNECT TO WRITING

Information within a set of parentheses or dashes gives explanation or definition, but is not needed to understand the sentence. The information within the parentheses or dashes can be a word or a phrase.

Examples: Explanation The colors (green and blue) seemed perfect.
Definition The protocol–rules to be followed–was to save such tricks only for a real dog fight.

If the added information is a complete thought, it should be written as a sentence with the period inside of an ending parenthesis.

Example: Sentence Their plan was incomplete. (They really did not think it through.)

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. Jackie Smith 1845-1910 worked in the women's rights movement. You should read some of her descriptive letters the ones to Charlene. ____

2. That new Bed and Breakfast (it was once a barn) is a popular rental with visitors. ____

3. The Nile River–the longest river in the world flows 4,000 miles in Africa. ____

4. The daisy *Chrysanthemum leucanthemum* can make a beautiful spring bouquet. ____

5. Thomas Jefferson (author of the Declaration of Independence) seemed confused: he spoke out against the evils of slavery, but he himself owned slaves. ____

6. As you turn right, you will notice a yellow house–the one with a picket fence–and and its remarkable front porch. ____

WRITE

Write your own sentence with parentheses.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #73

FOCUS **Apostrophes (Singular Possessives)**

Use **apostrophes for singular possessives**.

CONNECT TO WRITING

For a singular possessive noun (a noun showing ownership), place an apostrophe at the end of the noun and add an *s*.

- If the noun ends in an *s* and the *s* has a *z* sound, you may choose to make it a possessive by adding an apostrophe, then an *s*, or simply end with an apostrophe.
  Example: Charles's friend or Charles' friend
- Do not use an apostrophe before the *s* in a simple plural noun.
- Do not use an apostrophe with a possessive pronoun (*yours*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *its*, *theirs*)
  Examples: Joe's skill is amazing, and so is Chris's, but Miles' (or Miles's) skill is tops.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each line.

There once was a child's horse named Skittish. ____
Its upbringing definitely British. ____
The poor horses' tail was once yanked by some male ____
from Londons own Twickingdelfittish. ____
There once was a rose's bright bloom ____
Whose fragrance invaded Mom's room ____
Natures petal's will fall, and at the end of it all, ____
Lifes' beauty swept out by a broom. ____

WRITE

Write two sentences with two singular possessives.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #74

FOCUS Apostrophes (Plural Possessives)

Use **apostrophes for plural possessives**.

CONNECT TO WRITING

For most plural possessive nouns (a noun showing ownership), place the comma after the *s*.
Example: boys' cups

Some plural possessives place the apostrophe before the *s*, if the plural is spelled differently than the singular.

Examples:	**Singular**	**Singular Possessive**	**Plural**	**Plural Possessive**
	woman	woman's	women	women's
	child	child's	children	children's

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. Will the Firemens' Ball be held on the same weekend as last year? ____
2. The Smith's house is perfect for our graduation party. ____
3. Will the puppie's food change over the next month? ____
4. I think that the women's group meets every other Tuesday at the clubhouse. ____
5. The Children's Crusade was led by Nicholas in response to a dream. ____
6. Let's watch the girls' basketball game before we go miniature golfing. ____
7. Have the boys' asked to borrow their parents cars for the night? ____
8. The county restaurants' plans to offer left-over food to the homeless were ambitious. ____
9. There is no doubt that worker's rights to health have not been fulfilled. ____
10. That Thompsons' front yard needs some major clean-up if you ask me. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a plural possessive.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #75

FOCUS Colons

Use **colons** to show a relationship between numbers. Also use a colon to show a relationship of ideas within titles or between sentences. Colons are also used at the end of an independent clause to introduce information to explain the clause. An independent clause has a noun connected to a verb that tells a complete thought.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Colons have the following uses:

- Relationship between Numbers
  Examples: Time (8:02 P.M.), Ratio (3:1), Chapter-Verse (Genesis 32:1-13)
- Relationship between Ideas
  Example: *Teaching: The Lost Art*
- Explanation of the Independent Clause (Don't place colons after verbs.)

-List	**Example:**	Order this food: bananas, potato chips, and hamburgers.
-Quotation	**Example:**	The teacher offered this advice: Work smarter, not harder.
-Explanation	**Example:**	She did a wonderful thing: She let him do what he wanted.
-Rule	**Example:**	This is the most important rule: Keep your hands to yourself.

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. I need the following items: toothpaste, a toothbrush, a comb, and soap. ____
2. The magician performed a trick: It was more of a miracle. ____
3. The philosopher Santayana commented upon the value of history, Those who fail to learn from history: are doomed to repeat it. ____
4. I play these works: "Aria and Fugue," "Suite in D Major," and "The 3rd Symphony." ____
5. Only one fact remains true: things never happen as planned. ____
6. She knew the Golden Rule; Do unto others as you would have them do unto you. ____
7. The principal's rules were posted: Be Kind, Share with Others, Don't Touch. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with a colon to introduce a list.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com
View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #76

FOCUS Periods with Abbreviations / Initials / Acronyms

Use **periods for abbreviations, initials, and acronyms**.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Periods have a variety of uses other than ending sentences.

- Use periods in abbreviations. Avoid using abbreviations in formal essay writing.
  Examples: The U.S. Constitution, 300 B.C.
- Use periods for initials, names, and titles
  Example: Mr. R.J. Jenkins, Jr.
- Use periods in most acronyms. Acronyms are words formed from the first letters or groups of letters of words. Acronyms are pronounced as words. It is becoming common practice to drop periods in well-known acronyms.
  Examples: Do you know your Z.I.P. code? ZIP code

PRACTICE

Fill in the blanks with the correct initials, abbreviations, or acronyms.

1. The abbreviation for time Before Christ is written as _____.

2. The time after noon is called Post Meridian and is written as _____.

3. Additional information at a letter's end is called a postscript and is written as _____.

4. The National Aeronautics and Space Administration is an acronym known as _____.

5. _____ divers use a **s**elf-**c**ontained **u**nderwater **b**reathing **a**pparatus.

6. When Ms. Bean married Mr. Jones, she took on his last name and became _____ Jones.

7. The abbreviation for *exempli gratia* is _____, which means *for example*.

8. The abbreviation for *et cetera* is _____, which means *and so forth*.

9. Five and one-half written as a decimal would be _____.

WRITE

Write your own sentence with an abbreviation, initials, and an acronym.

_____

_____

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #77

FOCUS Exclamation Points

Use exclamation points to show strong emotion or surprise.

CONNECT TO WRITING

Exclamation points should be used sparingly, especially in formal essay writing. Use specific nouns and vivid verbs to build emotion or surprise. Only use one exclamation point. They may be placed at the end of exclamatory sentences or after words, phrases, or clauses.

Examples: Exclamatory Sentence — The decision really shocked me!
Word / Phrase / Clause — Wow! How amazing! If she only knew!

PRACTICE

Label **C** if the punctuation is *correct* or **W** if it is *wrong* in the space at the end of each sentence.

1. Run some. Don't walk! ____
2. She helps a lot! What a treasure! ____
3. He is very talented. Such amazing creativity! ____
4. How shocked he was! I guess he didn't know. ____
5. What excitement! If you don't like that you don't like N.B.A. basketball! ____
6. Did he do it? I can't believe it!!! ____
7. How surprising! When did Tom find out? ____
8. And no one knew about it? How crazy! ____
9. Stop in the name of the law. You have the right to remain silent! ____
10. How awful! No one has the right to act that way. ____
11. He came out of retirement to play one more year! Imagine that. ____

WRITE

Compose your own sentence with an exclamation point.

_____

_____

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #1 Practice Answers

John Francis, Beatrice, Nebraska, World War II, Chicago, *Southwestern Chief*, Los Angeles, Grand Central Station, John, Jane, Blix Hardware, Western Avenue, South Hollywood, John, Fort Ord, Army Band, Staff Sergeant, United States, John, John, University of Southern California, G.I. Bill, Cum Laude, Business, Social Science, Southern California, Janice Jones, California Federal Savings and Loan, Senior Vice-President, Mark, Robin

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #2 Practice Answers

idea: friendship, self-image, freedom, self-confidence, world peace
person: teacher, fire-fighter, cousin, police officer, brother-in-law
place: mountain, neighborhood, country, football stadium, family room
thing: food, toy, rock, lamp stand, grandfather clock

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #3 Practice Answers

"Hello," said Susan.
"Is this the owner of the car for sale?" the caller asks.
"It, is I," replies Susan. "Who is calling?"
"The one paying you full price for your car. My name is Marcy. What's yours?"
"Susan," she says. "But let me get my husband. Actually, he is selling his car, not mine.
"Suit yourself, says Marcy. Put him on the phone."

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #4 Practice Answers

Which One? these, that, this, those, certain
How Many? twenty-story, most, dozen, few, thousands
What Kind? juicier, muddy, navel, spicy, loud

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #5 Practice Answers

I know (mental) that he had run (physical) a full mile before, but he might be (state of being) too tired right now. He did walk (physical) a mile yesterday.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #6 Practice Answers

What Degree: mostly, less, mainly
How: slowly, carefully, easily
Where: everywhere, nearby, here
When: often, one o'clock, later

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #7 Practice Answers

to [flag], of [United States], of [America], to [republic], for [which], under [God], with [liberty], for [all], in [schools], throughout [America], over [heart], on [flag], to [country]

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #8 Practice Answers

and, but, yet, so, and, but, yet, but (yet), and, for

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #9 Practice Answers

Before, because (since, as), when, Although (Even though), Since (Because), where, Despite (In spite of)

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #10 Practice Answers

and, either, or, whether, or, Neither, nor, Both

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #11 Practice Answers

traveler, Tasco, cathedral, Guadalajara, city, one, Mexico City, trip, an experienced traveler

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #12 Practice Answers

running 28 miles + the marathon, Track fans + casual spectators, Basketball + ice-hockey, The "Dream Team" + the United States hockey team, These two popular events + the track-and-field contests

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #13 Practice Answers

Ice cream + [has pleased], ice cream + [is], treat + [has], Rocky Road + [delights], nuts + marshmallows +[may cause], double-scoop +[tastes], Eating ice cream + [can be]

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #14 Practice Answers

works +[stand] + [are remembered], description + [entertains] + [informs], one + [will learn] + [will understand], novel +[teaches] + [preaches], hero + [struggles] + [triumphs], Debbie walked into the room, sat down in the chair, and heaved a sigh of relief.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #15 Practice Answers
1. imperative 2. exclamatory 3. interrogative 4. declarative

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #16 Practice Answers

1. I enjoy watching old television shows, but (yet) the new ones are better.
2. Do you want vanilla, or (and) do you want strawberry?
3. No one really wants to go; they just feel like they must attend.
4. This route takes too long; there must be another way.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #17 Practice Answers

1. As soon as the boy practices his trombone, he will be able to go outside to play.
2. Tonight we celebrate a special young lady, whose achievement is special.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #18 Practice Answers

After the sun set, the campers roasted marshmallows, and John then told a campfire story.
Since the captain had a beard, he knew the sailor, and the sailor did not recognize him.
Although he knew better, he could not teach her, because she just would not listen.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #19 Practice Answers

Options: Running down the hill, I saw her. I saw her running down the hill.
Finally, (any subject then predicate) the reason he left.
The playground seems to be covered with ice.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #20 Practice Answers

1. Jonathan seemed very selfish. He never shared with the other children.
2. Ms. Clements always prepared well for her lesson plans, and (so) the results paid off.
Option: Ms. Clements always prepared well for her lesson plans; the results paid off.
3. Nicco enjoyed video games, playing only after completing his chores.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #21 Practice Answers

The women in the clown costumes must be she PN and her mother. We S didn't recognize them at first, but at least I S asked, "Who were they PN?" Sue and he S arrived at the party earlier than I A, but no one came as early as she A.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #22 Practice Answers

He told them DO after him OP. He wanted him DO to tell us I, but when he came to see me I, I said he should tell him IO the news before me OP. He gave it IO some thought.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #23 Practice Answers

I told them myself IP because Patty would not tell them herself IP. Patty never thought of anyone but herself RP. When Patty first asked me herself IP, I said, "You should tell them what you did before they find out themselves RP." Patty never apologized herself IP for what she did.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #24 Practice Answers

1. PN 2. OP 3. T 4. PN 5. T

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #25 Practice Answers

1. who 2. whose 3. that 4. which 5. Whom

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #26 Practice Answers

1. Each watches her own television show. 2. Everyone except James and Pete helps me on the work project. 3. Both of them are ready for a vacation. 4. After they go to the movies, several go out for dessert. 5. Neither gives us much hope that our team will win the league this year. 6. I know others want to be involved in this decision.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #27 Practice Answers

1. Few of the actors remember their lines. 2. A great deal is known about television actors. 3. Fewer vegetables are better than many. 4. Some of candies taste like they are stale.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #28 Practice Answers

1. He has carefully listed his reasons for the purchase. 2. Paid a large amount for her services, the woman was happy to help. 3. Built by Native Americans, the caves were interesting. 4. They have never tried to sell any of their artwork.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #29 Practice Answers

1. Waiting for the train, the young man paced impatiently. 2. He was expecting the train to arrive on time. 3. After calling his parents, the boy decided to cancel the ticket and come home. 4. Mostly, but not always, he will be travelling by jet from now on.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #30 Practice Answers

1. Paula removed the backpack from her desk. She placed the backpack on the floor. (From her desk Paula removed the backpack and placed it on the floor.) 2. I ate only the fresh vegetables.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #31 Practice Answers

1. closer 2. harder 3. more 4. worse 5. happier

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #32 Practice Answers

1. quickest 2. more 3. biggest 4. best

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #33 Practice Answers

1. more (less) difficult 2. more outstanding 3. more (less) incredible
4. more ridiculous 5. more (less) suspiciously 6. more (less) suspected 7. more (less) nervously

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #34 Practice Answers

1. most considerate 2. least specifically 3. most carefully 4. most understood
5. most simply 6. least frequently

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #35 Practice Answers

was LV; had HV told; were HV going; did HV not turn LV; to be LV; would HV not have HV lied; felt LV; had HV; would HV be LV; seems LV; should HV find

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #36 Practice Answers

1. permission 2. possibility 3. requirement 4. need 5. expectation 6. ability
7. advice

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #37 Practice Answers

1. Penny helped at the senior center after school. 2. Cowboys roped and branded their cattle.
3. That radio station played all of my favorite songs. 4. Tamesia touched her left cheek every time she raised her hand in class.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #38 Practice Answers

1. Larry was enjoying the beautiful sunsets at the beach. 2. They were expecting a lot of money for their used car. 3. Her friends were sleeping in the living room when the fire alarm sounded.
4. Rosie was going to the movies.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #39 Practice Answers

1. The class had already started when the student walked in tardy.
2. I had known by Tuesday that last weekend's game would be canceled.
3. They had shared their feelings about riding skateboards without helmets.
4. By the time I had arrived, Louis had already begun painting the back of the house.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #40 Practice Answers

1. We try to find the best deals on the Internet.
2. He should listen to what his parents have to say.
3. Carl Sandberg says, "Fog creeps in on little cat feet, and then slowly moves on."
4. I always want my own personal size pizza.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #41 Practice Answers

1. Phoebe is listening to the teacher as she works.
2. I am running down the street to the end of the block when I see my friend.
3. Nina and Berta are giving money to help those in need during the holiday season.
4. Our teammates are practicing a lot for the first game of our season.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #42 Practice Answers

1. Esmerelda has developed a fantastic web site.
2. The ladies have reunited in the same place to continue their friendship once every year.
3. *The storm has threatened to strike since last night.*

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #43 Practice Answers

1. I will leave school at two o'clock for a dentist appointment.
2. I will talk to my friends, but they just won't listen.
3. You will ask for the movie star's autograph.
4. Computer games will grow more and more important to kids.
5. We will hope that the vacation can continue.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #44 Practice Answers

1. We will be running the mile in P.E. today.
2. I will be thinking of you as you celebrate your birthday.
3. Danya and Darla will be watching the movie tonight.
4. They will be volunteering every weekend at the shelter.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #45 Practice Answers

1. will have ridden 2. will have seen 3. will have told 4. will have slept
5. will have given 6. will have performed

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #46 Practice Answers

1. She said, "I usually do chores after school."
2. "They left town," I said, "in a shiny new car."
3. "I can't believe it!" he exclaimed.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #47 Practice Answers

1. Joe and Mandy, our debate leaders, thought we had a good chance.
2. Johnny Mingo, the Australian cowboy, rode his horse off into the sunset.
3. Searching for answers, Louis Pasteur, the famous scientist, carried on.
4. Jim, the butler, served their last meal.
5. Kim and Tom, our two friends, left the concert early.
6. The wonderful teacher, Ms. So, shared the slides with her students.
7. The author has just completed his latest book, The End.
8. That song, "The Swan," lasts six minutes.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #48 Practice Answers

1. Jane, Mike, and Ray pulled the car off to the side.
2. Along the road an old car, two broomsticks, and a funny green-eyed monster stood guard.
3. Take a hike, smell the flowers, and enjoy life for the rest of the afternoon.
4. Joan counted one, two, three, four, five.
5. Blue, green, and yellow are my favorite colors.
6. They ordered eggs, bacon, and wheat toast for breakfast.
7. Mr. Burt called on one of the following students: Jaime, Marta, or Frank.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #49 Practice Answers

1. Whenever the girls called, he went outside to see what they wanted.
2. Around the block she rode the bicycle.
3. Next, ask about the directions to the factory.
4. Interested, they called the player to check his availability.

pennigtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #50 Practice Answers

1. Lawton, Nevada is my hometown.
2. Olympia, Washington is a beautiful capital.
3. Bogota, Colombia seems like a fascinating city.
4. I live at 3442 Spring Street in Irvine, South Carolina.
5. Amador City, California has post office boxes for its residents.
6. St. Petersburg, Russia used to be the capital of that country.
7. When did Juneau, Alaska reach a population of 10,000?

Slides Only:

4. Glendale, Texas is a nice place to visit, but I wouldn't want to live there.
6. I wrote a letter addressed to: Mo Lawson 34 North Main St., Columbus, Ohio.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #51 Practice Answers

1. Listen to me, Barbara, and then make up your own mind.
2. That's a dangerous thought you've shared, Bud.
3. Look, Jane, it's going to be hard at first.
4. Sitting by the sofa, she said, "Henry, get over here."
5. I just don't know, Bobby.

Slides Only:

6. Tawny, watch where you're going.
7. If you notice, Peter and Kris, none of that will be on the test.
8. Look, Paul, and see here, Julie, you both have missed the main point.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #52 Practice Answers

1. Neither he wanted to face the problem, nor did she want to deal with that challenge.
2. In order that all people would have the same chance, they decided to draw numbers.
3. Raymond sent a message to his cousin, but the message was returned unopened.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #53 Practice Answers

Left Letter–Dear Ralph: …Yours truly
Right Letter–To Whom It May Concern: …Sincerely,

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #54 Practice Answers

1. Around the corner she ran into a large, angry dog.
2. If I didn't know better, I would guess that the tired, old woman was not going to leave her house.
3. The funny green character said, "I'm crazy, silly, and full of energy."
4. Unless I'm mistaken, the usual cloudy, gray morning will change to afternoon sun and wind.
5. The book is creative, surprising, delightful, and completely entertaining.

Google Slides:

6. The girls are cheerful, helpful, and careful to mind their manners.
7. I left the yucky blue and white board in the stinky dirty garage. (No commas required.)

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #55 Practice Answers

1. She told Uncle Charles that I went to see **Dr. S. L. Thomas**.

Google Slide: **She** told **Uncle Charles** that I went to see **Dr. S. L. Thompson**.

2. Will Mrs. James come to visit Aunt Robin and **"Bubba"** Peterson?

Google Slide: Will **Mrs. James** come to visit **Aunt Robin** and **"Bubba" Peterson**?

3. The army's **Captain** Schneider reviewed the rules with P.F.C. Johns.

Google Slide: The army's **Captain Schneider** reviewed the rules with **P.F.C. Johns**.

4. Roy told my dad that **Sis** and I would get together at **Mom's** work.

Google Slide: **Roy** told my dad that **Sis** and I would get together at **Mom's** work.

5. Officer Bob Benton issued a speed citation to **Mom** and her brother.

Google Slide: **Officer Bob Benton** issued a speed citation to **Mom** and her brother.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #56 Practice Answers

1. I love to go see Broadway plays in New York **City**.
2. Some beautiful scenery is found in Douglas **County** in Nevada.
3. The girls said they lived at 123 Oak **Avenue** in Paris, North Carolina.
4. In **Southern** Mississippi they still grow cotton.
5. The borough of **Long Island** has millions of people.
6. The Spanish often vacation at Santiago **Lake** in Portugal.

Google Slide: The Spanish own the **Canary Islands** off the coast of **Portugal**.

7. They travelled out west to see the Grand **Canyon**.

Google Slide: I have heard that there is an **American** naval base on **Diego Garcia** in the **Indian Ocean**.

Google Slides:

8. Her house is located at 342 **Twenty-Seventh Street**.
9. For years, voters in the **Deep South** solidly supported the **Democratic Party**.

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #57 Practice Answers

1. I hear that the Alex **Theater** has been completely remodeled.
2. Bill Gates helped invent the **Windows** Operating System.
3. Ryan once climbed the stairs to the top of the **Sears Tower**.
4. Have you vacationed in Yosemite National **Park**?
5. Mr. Newton was appointed sponsor of the **French Club**.
6. I attended first Presbyterian **Church** for three years.
7. Did you kiss the Blarney **Stone** when you went to Ireland?
8. Kenny walked across the Golden Gate **Bridge**.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #58 Practice Answers

1. On the first **Thanksgiving**, Pilgrims and Native Americans had a feast.
Google Slide: On the first **Thanksgiving Day**, Pilgrims and Native Americans shared a feast.
2. I'm sure that February 19th is Presidents **Day** this year.
3. Will we have cherry pie at the 4th of **July** party?
4. The Rose **Parade** is the granddaddy of all New Year's Day parades.
5. She knows that Martin Luther **King, Jr.** holiday is celebrated only in the United States.
6. If **Thursday** will not work for you, how about Wednesday?
7. I got married on **Flag Day**, which is on June 14th.
8. The Chinese say that this is the Year of the **Dog**.
9. The **Feast** of Unleavened Bread is a Jewish holiday.
10. Does Santa really come down the chimney on Christmas **Eve**?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #59 Practice Answers

1. I know that Microsoft **Corporation** is a profitable business.
Google Slide: I know that **Microsoft Corporation** is one of the most successful businesses in the world.
2. Watching the Sacramento **Kings** win was exciting.
Google Slide: Watching the **Sacramento Kings** win the game was exciting.
3. She was a member of the **Daughters** of the American Revolution.
Google Slide: Members of the **Daughters** of the **American Revolution** do important historical research.
4. I heard that General **Motors** is headquartered in Detroit.
Google Slide: I heard that **General Motors Corporation** makes more money in a year than most countries.
5. Does the Atlas Window **Company** donate money?
Google Slide: Does the **Atlas Window Company** donate money to the community?
6. In the **Boy Scouts** of America, I learned outdoor skills.
Google Slide: In the **Boy Scouts** of **America**, young men learn outdoor skills.
7. The Boys and Girls **Clubs** of America serve youth.
Google Slide: In urban areas, the **Boys** and **Girls Clubs** of **America** serve youth after school.
8. The organization, **Big** Brothers, helps many.
Google Slide: The organization, **Big Brothers** and **Big Sisters**, is well-worth your support.
9. The teachers belong to the **National** Educational Association.
Google Slide: The teachers belong to the **National Educational Association.**
10. The Los Angeles **Dodgers** draws millions of fans.
Google Slide: As one of the best baseball teams, the **Los Angeles Dodgers**, draws millions.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #60 Practice Answers

1. Many **Asians** live in urban areas of the United States.
2. The **African**-American women attended church.
3. Many **Brazilians** have never seen the Amazon River.
4. I think that she speaks **Portuguese**.
5. The Afrikaner language is based on **Dutch** and English.
6. The Swedish language has similarities to the **German** language.
7. Many **Swiss** speak three or four languages.
8. When **French** is spoken well, it is a very romantic language.
9. Can Matt speak and write **Japanese**?

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #61 Practice Answers

1. The **Recreational Vehicle Show** will take place at the fairgrounds this weekend.
2. Many say that the wounds of the Civil **War** have never healed.
3. The Amador County **Fair** draws thousands of families each year.
4. My favorite period of history has to be the **Renaissance**.
5. If the Palm Springs Desert **Classic** is a golf tournament.
6. President Monroe's **Era** of Good Feelings was in the early 1800s.
7. I have heard that the Folsom **Rodeo** is world-famous.
8. The end of **World War** II in 1945 created different alliances.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #62 Practice Answers

1. My favorite episode from "Little House on the Prairie" is when Laura befriends the Indians. **QM**
2. Jaws III was not as good as the original Jaws. **UI**
3. Clint Eastwood's Hang 'Em High is a perfect example of a "Spaghetti Western." **UI**
4. The Bonanza episode with the pancake-eating contest was titled "The Flapjack Contest." **QM**
5. The repeats of Everybody Loves Raymond now run twice nightly on the local station. **UI**
6. How many years did Modern Family run in prime time? **UI**
7. I'm pretty sure that The Late Show will be renewed for another year. **UI**
8. The episode of I Love Lucy titled "Lucy Goes to the Hospital" was highly rated. **QM**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #63 Practice Answers

1. The new book by J.K. Rowling was reviewed in Weekly Reader Magazine. **W**
2. Was *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* a best seller? **C**
3. My children look forward to receiving their copies of *Highlights* every month. **C**
4. Some parents in this class have a subscription to The Wall Street Journal. **W**
5. The New York Times crossword is one of the most challenging crosswords. **C**
6. If you read the Newsela magazine regularly, you will notice the change in its format. **W**
7. Are children still reading *Roll of Thunder, Hear My Cry*? **C**
8. I looked everywhere, but could not find that quote in the The Last Dance. **W**
9. Tolkien's classic, The Fellowship of the Ring, won an Academy Award. **W**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #64 Practice Answers

1. My great-grandfather wrote "In the Shade of the Old Apple Tree" for his wife. **C**
2. I know I have heard "Dance of the Sugarplum Fairies" before. **W**
3. Beyoncé once recorded a cover-version of "America the Beautiful." **C**
4. Joyce Kilmer's "Trees" still delights and inspires young poets. **W**
5. Did Elvis record "Heartbreak Hotel" when he was signed with Sun Records?
6. Madonna hasn't had a good song since "True Colors" went platinum. **C**
7. The scariest poem I know is Edgar Allan Poe's "The Raven." **W**
8. Lewis Carroll wrote "Jabber

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #65 Practice Answers

1. William Shakespeare wrote many comedies, including: The Tempest, Twelfth Night, **C**
A Midsummer-Night's Dream, and As You Like It. **W**
2. He also wrote tragedies, including the famous *Julius Caesar*. **W**
3. Tennessee Williams's play, The Death of a Salesman, is still widely read. **W**
4. "Of Michelangelo's sculptures, *The Pieta* stands out as his best," claimed Sunny. **W**
5. His David was sculpted from lesser quality marble. **C**
6. Have you ever seen a photograph of *Whistler's Mother*? **C**
7. "The photograph, Sunrise, Sunset, is one of the most memorable examples of time-lapse **W**
photography," said Melvin.
8. Did his *Breakfast of Champions* sell at the art exhibit? **W**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #66 Practice Answers

1. Rudyard Kipling's *Captains Courageous* tells the tale of a bored and lonely son a of a **W**
millionaire who is rescued on the high seas by a small fishing boat.
2. The most exciting chapter has to the first one, "Boy Overboard." **C**
3. The chapter titled "A Changed Toad" ends Kenneth Grahame's *The Wind in the Willows*. **W**
4. "One for All and All for One" is the battle cry of the three French musketeers in **W**
Alexandre Dumas's classic, *The Three Musketeers*.
5. In the chapter titled "Three Duels," three exciting sword fights are described in detail. **C**
6. *The Merry Adventures of Robin Hood*, by Howard Pyle, tells the tales of Robin Hood, **C**
Maid Marion, the Sheriff of Nottingham, Little John, Will Stutely, and Friar Tuck.
7. These characters are introduced in the chapter, "Robin Hood Meets Little John." **W**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #67 Practice Answers

1. My wife read "Why Getting Kitched Is Healthy" in last month's *Ladies Home Journal*. **W**
2. I love reading "Humor in Uniform" every month in Reader's Digest. **C**
3. This month's issue of California Educator features an article titled "Tuning up the Idea." **W**
4. Last week's *Time* had an article about Lady Gaga titled "Gaga on Top of the World." **C**
5. In the latest edition of *Science*, I read an article titled *Underneath the World*. **C**
6. Her blog had a fascinating article titled "A Dime a Dozen." **C**
7. Putnam's research article was featured in the *Wall Street Journal*. **W**
8. On her most recent podcast, "Three Blind Mice," Miley talks about three friends. **C**

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #68 Practice Answers

1. In *Twice-Told Tales*, Nathaniel Hawthorne tells many short stories such as "The Great Carbuncle," "The Gray Champion," "The Wedding Knell," and "The May-Pole of Merry Mount." **C**
2. Richard Adams has a wonderful collection of his favorite animal stories including his own "The Rabbit's Ghost Story." **C**
3. James Herriot's short story, "Monty the Bull," tells the entertaining story of a bull that gets the best of a veterinarian. **W**
4. Doris Summers finished her "Lake Tahoe Water Conditions" report last week. **W**
5. The school board prepared a document titled "State of the District" and printed 200 copies. **C**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #69 Practice Answers

1. "I'm anxious to leave," commented Zelda. **W**
2. "What just took place?" asked Robert. **W**
3. "What a terrific ending to that story!" exclaimed Anthony. **C**
4. "Did you hear the speaker say, 'things will never be the same?'" asked Billy. **W**
5. "I know," replied Max, "but do you really want to make a big deal out of this?" **C**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #70 Practice Answers

For all of their talk, they've rarely come to see who's playing at the club. **C**
They haven't shown up in weeks, and so they can't really comment on what they don't know. **W**
I will say they're in for a treat when they do come. There's a band that isn't half-bad. **C**
They didn't hold back during their set Friday night and they won't tonight. **W**

1. It is (It's) a shame that they never listen to their parents.
2. You are (You're) sure that you have (you've) never seen them?
3. Where is (Where's) she going? They are not (They're) not exactly saying.
4. She is (she's) happy that they had (they'd) left directions.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #71 Practice Answers

1. Samuel went shopping, then he went out to dinner. **C**
2. The album includes these songs: the heart-throbbing rhythm and blues "Sawmill;" the surprisingly speedy yet soulful "Ol' Dog Blues;" and "Mama's Return." **W**
3. I was taught Spanish at home by a tutor; that's how I learned the language. **W**
4. The Revolutionary War was fought against the British; the War of 1812 was also fought against them. **C**
5. Many died in the Civil War; it was a horrible tragedy. **W**
6. Ellen did not prepare at all; she appeared not to care what would happen as a result. **C**
7. Through many long days of looking; after many attempts and failures; despite many questions left unanswered, they **C**

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #72 Practice Answers

1. Jackie Smith (1845–1910) worked in the women's rights movement. You should read **W** some of her descriptive letters (the ones to Charlene).
2. That new Bed and Breakfast (it was once a barn) is a popular rental with visitors. **C**
3. The Nile River–the longest river in the world–flows 4,000 miles through Africa. **W**
4. The daisy (*Chrysanthemum leucanthemum*) can make a beautiful spring bouquet. **C**
5. Thomas Jefferson (author of the Declaration of Independence) seemed confused: **C** he spoke out against the evils of slavery, but he himself owned slaves.
6. As you turn right, you will notice a yellow house–the one with a picket fence–and **C** its remarkable front porch.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #73 Practice Answers

There once was a child's horse named Skittish, **C**
Its upbringing definitely British. **C**
The poor horse's tail was once yanked by some male **W**
from London's own Twickingdelfittish. **W**

There once was a rose's bright bloom **C**
Whose fragrance invaded Mom's room **C**
Nature's petals will fall, and at the end of it all, **W**
Life's beauty swept out by a broom. **W**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #74 Practice Answers

1. Will the Firemen's Ball be held on the same weekend as last year? **W**
2. The Smiths' house is perfect for our graduation party. **W**
3. Will the puppies' food change over the next month? **W**
4. I think that the women's group meets every other Tuesday at the clubhouse. **C**
5. The Children's Crusade was led by Nicholas in response to a dream. **C**
6. Let's watch the girls' basketball game before we go miniature golfing. **C**
7. Have the boys asked to borrow their parents' cars for the night? **W**
8. The county restaurants' plans to offer left-over food to the homeless were ambitious. **C**
9. There is no doubt that workers' rights to health have not been fulfilled. **W**
10. That Thompsons' front yard needs some major clean-up if you ask me. **C**

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet Answers

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #75 Practice Answers

1. I need the following items: toothpaste, a toothbrush, a comb, and soap. **C**
2. The magician performed a trick: It was more of a miracle. **C**
3. The philosopher Santayana commented upon the value of history: Those who fail **W** to learn from history are doomed to repeat it.
4. I play these works: "Aria and Fugue," "Suite in D Major," and "The 3rd Symphony." **C**
5. Only one fact remains true: Things never happen as planned. **W**
6. She knew the Golden Rule: Do unto others as you would have them do unto you. **W**
7. The principal's rules were posted: Be Kind, Share with Others, Don't Touch. **C**

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #76 Practice Answers

1. B.C.
2. p.m.
3. P.S.
4. N.A.S.A.
5. S.C.U.B.A.
6. Mrs.
7. e.g.
8. etc.
9. 5.5

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Worksheet #77 Practice Answers

1. Run! Don't walk. **W**
2. She helps a lot. What a treasure! **W**
3. He is very talented. Such amazing creativity! **C**
4. How shocked he was! I guess he didn't know. **C**
5. What excitement! If you don't like that, you don't like N.B.A. basketball! **C**
6. Did he do it? I can't believe it! **W**
7. How surprising! When did Tom find out? **C**
8. And no one knew about it. How crazy! **C**
9. Stop in the name of the law! You have the right to remain silent. **W**
10. How awful! No one has the right to act that way. **C**
11. He came out of retirement to play one more year. Imagine that! **W**

penningtonpublishing.com

View/Purchase High School Grammar